

Cornell University
Library

The original of this book is in
the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in
the United States on the use of the text.

Cornell University Library
RC 341.W58 1913

Outlines of psychiatry,



3 1924 012 422 063

clin

Nervous and Mental Disease Monograph Series No. 1

Outlines of Psychiatry

By

WILLIAM A. WHITE, M.D.

Washington, D. C.

Fourth Edition

New York

1913

ANNOUNCEMENT



THE Nervous and Mental Disease Monograph Series will consist of short monographs, translations, and minor text-books, on subjects related to these specialties. It is purposed to issue them from time to time as the material becomes available. The editors will be pleased to consider the availability of manuscripts for the series.

Nervous and Mental Disease—Monograph Series

Editors

SMITH ELY JELLIFFE, M.D.

WM. A. WHITE, M.D.

- No. 1. Outlines of Psychiatry. (Fourth Edition, 1913.) Price, \$3.00
By WM. A. WHITE, M.D.
- No. 2. Studies in Paranoia. (Out of Print.)
- No. 3. Psychology of Dementia Præcox. (Out of Print.)
- No. 4. Selected Papers on Hysteria and Other Psycho-
neuroses. (Second Edition, 1912.) Price, \$2.50
By PROF. SIGMUND FREUD, M.D.
- No. 5. The Wassermann Serum Reaction in Psychiatry, Price, \$2.00
By FELIX PLAUT, M.D.
- No. 6. Epidemic Poliomyelitis. (Out of Print.)
- No. 7. Three Contributions to Sexual Theory Price, \$2.00
By PROF. SIGMUND FREUD.
- No. 8. Mental Mechanisms Price, \$2.00
By WM. A. WHITE, M.D.
- No. 9. Studies in Psychiatry Price, \$2.00
By Members of the New York Psychiatric Society
- No. 10. Methods of Mental Examination. Price, \$2.00.
By SHEPHERD IVORY FRANZ, Ph.D.
- No. 11. The Theory of Schizophrenic Negativism. . . Price, \$.60.
By PROFESSOR E. BLEULER.
(Ready)
- No. 12. Cerebellar Functions Price, \$3.00
By DR. ANDRÉ-THOMAS
(Ready)
- No. 13. History of the Prison Psychoses Price, \$1.25
By DRS. P. NITSCHKE and K. WILMANN'S
(Ready)

Address all communications to JOURNAL OF NERVOUS AND MENTAL DISEASE, 64 West Fifty-Sixth Street, New York.

OUTLINES
OF
PSYCHIATRY

BY

WILLIAM A. WHITE, M.D.

AUTHOR OF "MENTAL MECHANISMS"

SUPERINTENDENT GOVERNMENT HOSPITAL FOR THE INSANE, WASHINGTON, D.C.; FIRST LIEUTENANT, MEDICAL RESERVE CORPS, UNITED STATES ARMY; PROFESSOR OF NERVOUS AND MENTAL DISEASES, GEORGETOWN UNIVERSITY, WASHINGTON, D. C.; PROFESSOR OF NERVOUS AND MENTAL DISEASES, GEORGE WASHINGTON UNIVERSITY, WASHINGTON, D. C., AND LECTURER ON INSANITY, U. S. ARMY AND U. S. NAVY MEDICAL SCHOOLS

FOURTH EDITION

REVISED AND ENLARGED

NEW YORK
THE JOURNAL OF NERVOUS AND MENTAL DISEASE
PUBLISHING COMPANY

1913

NERVOUS AND MENTAL DISEASE

MONOGRAPH SERIES

Edited by

Drs. SMITH ELY JELLIFFE and WM. A. WHITE

Numbers Issued

1. Outlines of Psychiatry. By Wm. A. White, M.D.
2. Studies in Paranoia.
By Drs. N. Gierlich and M. Friedman
3. The Psychology of Dementia Praecox.
By Dr. C. G. Jung.
4. Selected Papers on Hysteria and other Psycho-neuroses.
By Prof. Sigmund Freud.
5. The Wassermann Serum Diagnosis in Psychiatry.
By Dr. Felix Plant.
6. Epidemic Poliomyelitis. New York Epidemic, 1907.
7. Three Contributions to Sexual Theory.
By Prof. Sigmund Freud.
8. Mental Mechanisms.
By Wm. A. White, M.D.
9. Studies in Psychiatry.
New York Psychiatrial Society.
10. Handbook of Mental Examination Methods.
By Shepherd Ivory Frenz.
11. The Theory of Schizophrenic Negativism.
By Professor E. Bleuler.
12. Cerebellar Functions.
By Dr. André-Thomas.
13. History of Prison Psychoses.
By Drs. P. Nitsche and K. Wilmanns.

Copyright 1912

By WILLIAM A. WHITE

PRESS OF
THE NEW ERA PRINTING COMPANY
LANCASTER, PA.

PREFACE TO THE FOURTH EDITION.

The gross changes in this edition have been for the most part by way of elaboration and addition of new matter. Most of the new matter has been added in the chapters devoted to the description of the psychoses except that a chapter has been given to the Binet-Simon Scale for Measuring Intelligence. Numerous smaller changes have been made throughout so as to better express contemporaneous thought and in many instances illustrative extracts from case histories have been introduced. Whereas in previous editions this quotation from case records has been avoided, further experience in teaching convinces me that this sort of word-picture illustration is very helpful in aiding the reader to form a correct idea of a given psychosis. It is the only way a work on psychiatry can be illustrated and seems to be the best substitute for the actual case that can be offered.

W. A. W.

GOVERNMENT HOSPITAL FOR THE INSANE,
WASHINGTON, D. C.
January 1, 1913.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER.	PAGE.
PREFACE	iii
I. PSYCHOLOGICAL INTRODUCTION	I
II. THE NATURE OF MENTAL DISORDER	7
III. CLASSIFICATION OF THE MENTAL DISORDERS	15
IV. CAUSES OF MENTAL DISORDER	20
V. TREATMENT	30
VI. GENERAL SYMPTOMATOLOGY	42
VII. PARANOIA AND PARANOID STATES	75
VIII. MANIC-DEPRESSIVE PSYCHOSES	98
IX. PARESIS	116
X. DEMENTIA PRECOX	140
XI. INVOLUTION MELANCHOLIA	171
XII. THE SENILE PSYCHOSES	179
XIII. THE INFECTION-EXHAUSTION PSYCHOSES	189
XIV. THE TOXIC PSYCHOSES	195
XV. PSYCHOSES ASSOCIATED WITH ORGANIC DISEASES AND INJURY OF THE BRAIN	219
XVI. THE SYMPTOMATIC PSYCHOSES	230
XVII. BORDERLAND AND EPISODIC STATES	235
XVIII. IDIOCY AND IMBECILITY	252
XIX. PRINCIPLES AND METHODS OF EXAMINATION	258
XX. A MINIMUM MENTAL EXAMINATION	290
XXI. THE BINET-SIMON SCALE	297

OUTLINES OF PSYCHIATRY

CHAPTER I.

PSYCHOLOGICAL INTRODUCTION.

Insanity has been defined as an absence of sanity! This is rather an evasion than a definition. The difficulty is simply once removed and it becomes necessary to define sanity. An attempt to do this would demonstrate much the same difficulties that we would have in attempting to define insanity. However, a material advance towards both ends, or at least towards understanding both conditions can, I think, be made by describing briefly the fundamental processes of the normal mind. Before doing this, however, a few preliminary considerations are necessary.

The body is made up of a great number of organs each one of which has a definite purpose: The kidney to secrete urine, the lungs to carry on respiration, the heart to force blood through the vessels, the stomach and intestines to digest and absorb nutrient. Definite as is the function of each of these organs its action must be timed in response to certain conditions and in relation to the other organs of the body or it does not serve its purpose in the individual economy. The stomach must secrete its juices when food is introduced, the bladder contract when there is urine to be expelled, the active brain must be supplied with an increased amount of blood, the kidneys and the skin must act harmoniously together to excrete certain substances, the respirations increase on physical exertion and so on indefinitely. Now it is the duty of the nervous system to see that the functions of the several organs are rightly timed and properly adjusted in relation to one another. This is the function of the lower nerve centers. ✓

The highest nerve centers of the cerebral cortex that constitute the physical basis of mind have quite a different func-

tion. Their duty is to so regulate and control the actions of the individual as to best serve his interests in his relations with his environment.

In order to do this the mind must obtain knowledge of the environment through the sense organs, assimilate this knowledge, and then act in accordance with it. To illustrate: A man standing in the middle of the street sees a runaway team dashing towards him. His sense organs take the information to his mind of the presence of the runaway team, its distance from him, the distance to the sidewalk from where he stands and many other things. His mind assimilates all these facts and by a process of reasoning reaches the conclusion that safety lies in his immediately gaining the sidewalk which is in front of him. The necessary volitional processes are initiated and thus the actions of the individual are so related to the conditions in his environment as to conserve his best interests: in this case to save his life.

In order that the adjustment of the individual to his environment could take place three things were necessary: (1) A knowledge of the environment must be gained. (2) This knowledge must be associated and brought into relation with previous experiences. (3) It must be transformed into the appropriate actions. The *sensorium* subserves the first of these functions, the *intellect* the second, and the *motorium* the third. The function of the sensorium is *perception*, of the intellect *thinking*, and of the ~~motorium volition~~. (See Fig. 1.)

With this broad view of the function of consciousness to guide us we may now describe the separate processes more in detail.

As we have seen all our information of the environment must come through our sense organs it follows of necessity that sensations play an important part in making up the content of consciousness. These *sensations* are the result of the stimulation of the sensory nerves, usually their terminals in the specialized end organs, and in the last analysis comprise the unanalyzable material out of which consciousness is composed much as the atom in the Daltonian conception of matter was supposed to be the unanalyzable unit which by combination with others both similar and dissimilar went to form masses of matter as we know them. So the eye gives us sensations of light of different colors and intensities, the ear sensations of sound of varying qualities

and loudness and so on in each sensory realm the sensations received being variable both qualitatively and quantitatively.

If we will stop and consider for a moment, however, we will see at once that these elemental sense experiences, like atoms, cannot exist alone and uncombined: That sensations of light, sound, pain, coldness, can never as such go to make up a conscious state. In front of me as I write is something which produces the sensation of a variously shaded, round patch of yellow,

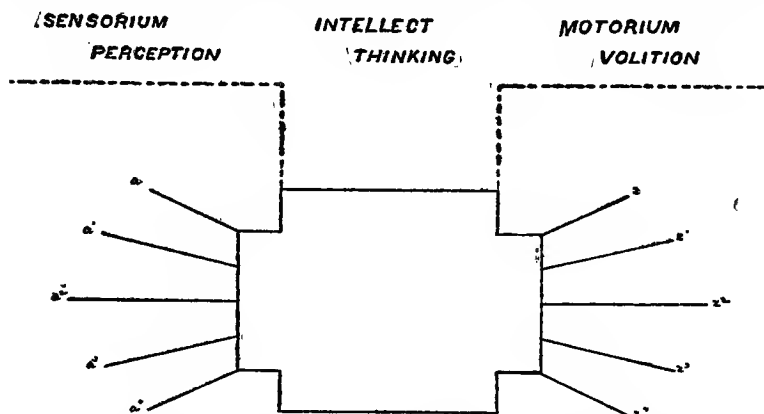


FIG. 1. a, a^1, a^2, a^3, a^4 , represents the afferent peripheral nervous system, the avenues for conveying sensory impulses inward to the mind. z, z^1, z^2, z^3, z^4 , represents the efferent peripheral nervous system, the avenues through which motor responses travel.

but even while looking at it I know much more of it than simply that it is a patch of yellow: I recognize it as an orange. What has been added to the visual sensations of roundness and yellowness to produce this result? Just this. Many times in the past have I had the same sort of sensations of roundness and yellowness impressed on my consciousness and many times in connection with these sensations have been others of touch, taste, and smell and to their combination I have in the past given the name orange. So now when the sensations of roundness and yellowness are received they call up in consciousness those other sensory elements of touch, taste, and smell, which have occurred before. The association of the previous with the present sensory elements causes me to recognize the round patch of yellow—not solely as a

patch of yellow—but as an orange. To this process of forming an image in the mind of an object presented to the senses is given the name *perception*.

It is this process of perception which furnishes to the individual the knowledge of his environment which by association with the knowledge gained in the past leads to appropriate *actions*. This process of association is an association with *ideas* which may be said to be images of objects formed in the mind but not presented to the senses at the time. The only difference then between percepts and ideas is the presence in the former of sensory elements.

The process of the relation of percept to ideas and the association of ideas one with another or in general terms this process of the assimilation and rearrangement of the materials of knowledge furnished by the senses with the materials already present in consciousness is the process of *thinking*. Now when from the association of two or more ideas there issues forth a new and different idea the process which produces this result is the process of *reasoning* and the new idea is known as a *judgment*.

Having received information of the environment by the process of perception and having assimilated the various percepts, reasoned regarding them and reached certain judgments, the next thing in the order of events is the initiating of appropriate actions. If the reasoning is at all complicated there are usually several judgments formed, each one of which may tend to express itself in an appropriate action, the strongest one finally, however, succeeding in expressing itself. This conflict of tendencies has been described as the "battle of motives" by ZIEHEN who gives the following illustration:

"I see a rose in a strange garden (stimulus and sensation). A long series of ideas is aroused by the stimulus and the visual sensation of the flower (idea-association). For instance, the memory of the rose's fragrance comes to mind, then I think how well it would look in my room, that it is the property of another, that plucking it would be punishable, and so on. Only after the whole series of presentations has passed before the mind does action follow, and whether I pluck the flower or go my way without it will depend upon the strength and intensity of the conquering idea."

The conscious realization in action of the strongest motive is the process of *volition* and is accompanied by a feeling of freedom to choose which motive shall dominate. The sum total of the actions of the individual is known as *conduct*.

All of these various processes which have been described must of course be conceived of as taking place in conjunction with certain physiological processes in the cells and fibers of the highest nerve centers. These physiological processes, here as elsewhere, involve changes in the energy and the material substance of cells and fibers and so when a certain mental process has occurred once accompanied by its correlative physiological process the changes in nerve cells and fibers will have left such an impress that a subsequent process of this sort will occur more readily. In other words a mental process having once occurred tends to recur in the same way when the same conditions are repeated. This tendency is the physiological basis of *memory*, which psychologically may be said to be the recurrence to consciousness of a previous experience and the recognition of it as having occurred before.

All mental processes, besides these special qualities which characterize them, are accompanied by certain general conditions of consciousness known as *affects* which are pleasant or unpleasant, pleasurable or painful, agreeable or disagreeable, and like sensations are unanalyzable, elemental, constituents of consciousness. These pleasurable or painful conscious states arise as the result of the interaction between the individual and the environment and are known as *feelings* when this interaction is relatively simple and direct, *i. e.*, a shrill whistle may be accompanied by a feeling that is disagreeable to the point of being actually painful. When the interaction is relatively more complex and indirect there may result the state of consciousness known as an *emotion*, *i. e.*, the bell of a locomotive and the hiss of an air brake is heard coupled with screams and cries of pain. The mind at once pictures to itself an accident and the emotion of fear arises in consciousness. If the interaction is still more complex and indirect *sentiments* arise such as honor, patriotism, etc.

An intense emotion of relatively short duration is spoken of as a *passion*, such as anger, terror, revenge, despair, triumph. A moderate emotion of relatively long duration is spoken of as a

mood, such as despondent, optimistic, contented, blaséness. When the mood is continuous and dominates the personality it becomes the quality which we call *temperament*. Thus we speak of sanguine, pessimistic, suspicious temperaments.

From this description of the processes of the mind it will be seen that they are most intimately connected, in fact that they are not separate and distinct in any sense, but only parts of a large whole. The old psychology conceived of mind as composed of a number of cubby holes in each one of which was pigeon-holed a special faculty, feeling, thinking, volition, each one of which was quite as distinct from the others as this illustration implies. Now, however, all that is changed. The "faculty concepts"¹ are conceived of as what they really are, "class designations of certain departments of the inner experience," and not "forces, by whose means the various phenomena are produced." "Objectively, we can regard the individual mental processes only as inseparable elements of interconnected wholes." Mental processes, from their incidence in sensations to the release of the motor responses constituting conduct are conceived to have as their physical substratum a continuous neural process. The process, although differently named in different parts of its course for convenience of designation, is a continuous one.

¹Wundt, Wilhelm: Principles of Physiological Psychology. Translated by Edward Bradford Titchener, Vol. I. New York, The Macmillan Co., 1904.

CHAPTER II.

THE NATURE OF MENTAL DISORDER.

It will be well at this point to dilate somewhat upon the general functions of mind as outlined in the last chapter with a view to gaining some insight into its nature. We have seen that the function of the mind, in the most general terms, is to adapt the individual to his environment. It may therefore be considered as an adaptive mechanism. Bearing this characterization in mind we can best approach our subject by drawing a comparison between the problems of the internist on the one hand and the psychiatrist on the other. This comparison is very well put by MERCIER:¹

“When the student of medicine passes to the study of insanity, he crosses a scientific frontier, and enters an entirely new province of knowledge. Hitherto his purview has been limited to the processes that go on within the body and whatever references he had to make beyond that field were indirect and of secondary import. He needs to know the structure and functions of the several organs of the body, and, when any function is disordered, his calling is to take measures to readjust the bodily processes to one another so that they may work in harmony again. He has, in short, to maintain the organism in a fit state to do its work, whatever that may be, but with the doing of the work he has no concern. What the work may be, and with what efficiency it may be performed, is no concern of his, except in so far as these things may affect the general capacity of the organism to continue its existence. His position towards the patient is the position of the shipwright and the engineer towards the vessel on which they are engaged. Like them, he must be thoroughly acquainted with the structure and function of every part, and, like them, he must be upon the watch to repair the structure and correct the function, when the one is damaged or the other is at fault; but with the ship’s course he has nothing to do. That is a matter altogether beyond his province. When the student over-

¹ Mercier, Charles: *A Text-Book of Insanity*. New York, The Macmillan Co., 1902.

steps the bounds of medicine to enter upon the study of insanity he leaves the engine-room for the quarter-deck. He is no longer directly concerned with the integrity of the structure or the efficiency of the engines. His function now is to set the ship's course, to note the way in which she comports herself in wind and weather, to study charts and tides, stars and clouds, to watch the barometer and to sound the lead, and generally to relinquish the observation of the ship herself, and to take up that of her relation to the world in which she moves. This is the function of the student of insanity—to study the individual, not *per se*, or *simpliciter*, but in relation to the world in which he exists, and in which he has to maintain his existence.

This illustration shows admirably the two different view-points. Like most such distinctions, however, the two positions must not be considered as mutually exclusive. It is true that the navigator is not primarily interested in the condition of the machinery yet if a break-down occurs he cannot direct the ship. Similarly the engineer is not primarily interested in the course of the ship yet if she go upon the rocks his machinery may be hopelessly smashed. And so with the internist and psychiatrist. The psychiatrist is not primarily interested in the condition of the several organs yet an uremia from Bright's disease will produce most profound mental symptoms. The internist is not primarily interested in the mental adaptations yet they may fail so hopelessly as to result in organic disease.

The influence of the state of the different organs, particularly when diseased, upon the mind is a commonplace, while PAWLOW² has recently shown most beautifully by his experiments upon the salivary functions in dogs the influence of the mind upon bodily functions. He showed that the physiological processes, the flow of saliva, could be brought about reflexly by stimuli of sight, sound, touch, variation of temperature, odor, provided only the stimulus had been applied in association with the giving of food. Having applied the stimulus originally thus associated the flow of saliva took place later although this association was left out. The physiological process had become organically linked with the nervous stimulus.

² Yerkes and Morgulis: The Method of Pawlow in Animal Psychology, Psych. Bulletin, August 15, 1909.

Here we touch upon the much vexed question of the relation of mind to body. Emancipation from theory and an appeal to facts would seem to indicate that the individual reacts to his milieu by the development of mechanisms that may include as parts the crass physical at one end, the refined psychic at the other. In these experiments of Pawlow, for example, a mechanism was created which acted as a whole. Like a watch, the parts were so intimately related that no portion could be set in motion without setting the whole going.

Even when a portion of the mechanism is destroyed the rest often still operates. The decerebrate dog turns and growls and bites at the fingers that hold his hind foot too roughly. Here there cannot be any possibility of the psychic state of anger, as SHERRINGTON³ says, "The action occurs, and plays the pantomime of feeling; but no feeling comes to pass."

The action of a complex mechanism as a whole is shown exceptionally well in a case reported by PRINCE.⁴ The patient was subject to hay fever in a very severe form when exposed to roses. On one occasion a bunch of roses was unexpectedly produced from behind a screen. A severe attack followed with lachrymation, congestion of the mucosa, dyspnoea, etc., although the roses, unknown to the patient, were but paper. Here a pure psychic fact at one end of the scale produces a set of reactions which at the other gives rise to sensory, motor, vaso-motor, and secretory disturbances which can hardly be conceived to be even remotely psychic. The important fact is that from the one to the other is an uninterrupted chain of associations.

I have shown by these illustrations (and in Chapter I) that the function of the mind was to adjust the individual as a whole—mental and physical—to the environment. Of course in general such an adjustment constitutes life itself, which as defined by SPENCER is "the continuous adjustment of internal relations to external relations." With the human mind, however, the conditions are more complex. The adjustment is not limited in the passive way implied thus far. The individual assumes an active part towards his environment and endeavors to shape it in accord

³ Sherrington: *The Integrative Action of the Nervous System*. London, Archibald Constable & Co., 1906.

⁴ Prince: *The Unconscious*, *Jour. of Abnormal Psych.*, Vol. III, Nos. 4, 5 and 6; Vol. IV, No. 1.

with a pattern he has in mind. He tries to mold the world of phenomena to suit his desires. Thus we find the individual not only acted upon by the environment and molded thereby but the environment reacted upon by the individual who endeavors to shape it to his needs.

It therefore follows that the most complete mental life is that which best adjusts the individual, both passively and actively in the sense above described, to the conditions of his environment: the best mind, that which is capable of the greatest latitude of adjustment, that enables the possessor to fill any position in life in which he may be placed. And conversely, the poor mind, the narrow mind, permits only a limited adjustment, either limited in the particular position of life occupied by the individual or limited as to its possibilities of scope, or both. The mental life is carried on within relatively narrow limits.

Whatever may be the limits of adjustability for the individual, any disorder of the mental processes must necessarily interfere with it. But as we have no absolute standard of comparison, but are forced to compare the individual's present condition with his condition in the past, with his usual condition, so here all degrees of adjustability are found in different people and the most limited may, for the individual concerned, be normal. The interference with the adjustment of the individual with his environment is therefore a disorder in so far as it is a departure from his previous, his usual condition.

It is in this region of adjustment that the so-called functional psychoses arise. They come about as a result of conflicts and failure.

From the standpoint of disordered function, a psychosis is then the expression on the part of the individual of his *type of reaction* to the conditions of his environment. The mental symptoms of the psychoses cannot be spoken of as a disease any more than hyperchlorhydria; they are but symptoms—a type of reaction, the result of an effort on the part of the individual to meet conditions. It is true that some disease process may be at the bottom of this disturbance of adjustment, perhaps a disease of the brain such as paresis renders the reactions of the individual inadequate, but we must remember that the brain is just as truly a part of the environment of the mind as the rest of the body, or in fact as anything even outside of the body.

In thinking of mental disorders as results of failures to effect harmonious adjustment we must think in terms of attempts at repair, adjustment and compensations as we have learned to in the physical diseases. We are familiar with these processes in general pathology. We know the processes of repair in tissues that have been injured, we are familiar with the way the organs adjust themselves to deforming forces, such as tumors; we know how defects such as a mitral insufficiency is compensated for by the hypertrophy of the heart muscle. So in the mental sphere we find persons struggling with conditions, trying to solve problems, sometimes succeeding, sometimes failing, sometimes compromising.

With the successes we have nothing to do, with the failures we must deal. In its efforts at adjustment the mind develops many ways of reacting. It defends itself from disagreeable experiences often by forgetting them. For certain experiences that cannot be adequately adjusted to certain compensatory reactions are evolved. The young woman disappointed in love is compensated by a life devoted to the service of others, or perhaps if she be of a hysterical nature she may develop a wish-fulfilling delirium and thus by a vicarious psychosis cause all her desires to be realized, or if she be poorly organized she may deteriorate and develop delusions which express compensations more or less perfectly in proportion to the degree of dementia, of mental disintegration.

The important thing to remember is that no mental fact is fortuitous, it has its adequate mental explanation. Ideas cannot exist alone; what does exist is a mental state constellated by events in the environment and related to those events.

Every mental state is a synthesis and like a chemical compound may bear little relation in its qualities to the qualities of its constituent elements. Every mental state, too, reaches back through an immeasurable line of other mental states to the very dawn of consciousness. BERGSON⁵ puts it well when he says—"Doubtless we think with only a small part of our past, but it is with our entire past, including the original bent of our soul, that we desire, will and act." There is nothing fortuitous in mental life. Determinism holds as definitely in the psychic as in the physical

⁵ Bergson: *Creative Evolution*. New York, Henry Holt & Co., 1911.

world and no mental fact can exist that has not its efficient cause in antecedent mental states. The sum total of the material of consciousness constitutes the personality. All states of mind have efficient causes and are definitely associated with those causes in quite as inevitable a way as in the physical world.

It must be remembered in considering the constitution of consciousness that full consciousness is only concerned with adjustments that are relatively new and unusual; conditions which, not having been met before, permit of reactions in any one of several directions. When mental acts have occurred repeatedly in response to the same sort of circumstances they become progressively less and less conscious and finally sink to the level of the automatic as the result of the development of a well defined, relatively stable mechanism. The familiar example of the piano player will illustrate this progressive change. At first while learning, each movement is painfully conscious, the fingers have to be watched, each note separately observed, and the required movements are slowly and awkwardly executed. When proficiency has been acquired the same results are accomplished far better, with much less effort, and with so little attention that an occasional glance over the shoulder and the entering into the conversation of those about do not seem to interfere. The processes involved have sunk below the level of clear consciousness to a stage of semiautomatism.

If we will consider the infinitude of adjustments the individual has to make to his environment we will see that this is a conservative process. As soon as a given adjustment is well formed it is pushed aside and the field of consciousness left free for new problems. This conclusion is well expressed in the following quotation:⁶ "There exists a conviction, fairly widespread, that the function of consciousness is that of adjustment, that is, that consciousness appears at moments of conflict; and there is reluctance in admitting that adjustment may take place just as well without it, that novel conclusions, as some observers report, may issue apart from it."

In other words—clear, full consciousness accompanies only those mental states accompanying adjustment to new and unusual conditions; conditions permitting of various reactions and involv-

⁶I am unable to locate the source of this quotation.

ing therefore selective judgment, critique, choice—in short, reason; and in proportion to the frequency of the repetition of the same adjustment the mental state accompanying such repetition tends to sink out of the field of clear consciousness. Stated in this way the method of reaction will be seen to have a biological significance and not merely an individual or even human importance. Ideas neither arise spontaneously nor do they exist without having established relations with other ideas. The relationships thus established are brought about and cemented by the emotional content of the event which brings them together and they bear thus a relation of interdependence as among themselves—they are constellated. These constellations exist as the mental counterparts of events and correspond to experiences which have emotional content and operate to control conduct though for the most part they are submerged beneath the region of full clear consciousness.

The standpoint of this new functional psychology is distinctly different from the standpoint of a few years ago. Until its development the attitude of the psychiatrist was that of the systematic biologist classifying the several cases into families, genera, species, but classifying upon the basis of the obvious symptoms only. The keynote of the new standpoint is its distinctly individualistic trend.

The fundamental conception of this new individualistic viewpoint is that every psychic fact must have been preceded by an efficient psychic cause. Ideas, or, better, mental states, do not arise *de novo*. They must be the outcome always of other mental states from which they necessarily issue. This is so throughout the field of psychopathology even in the realm of the so-called organic, the psychoses associated with well-defined brain changes. That an alcoholic should have delirium may well be dependent upon a toxemia, but whether he sees in his delirium snakes or monkeys, visions of his office, or of hell, must depend upon purely psychic causes, upon the preëxisting psychic material which has become involved in the disorder. Whether a paretic is exalted or depressed, whether the exaltation is largely erotic or expresses itself by delusions of great wealth, must find its explanation in the mental make-up of the person afflicted and the character of his psychic trends. The cards may be indefinitely shuffled or

arranged in any way but there are only fifty-two of them, and the result, whatever it may be, is conditioned and delimited by that fact. This illustration should not, of course, be taken too literally because new psychic facts, new material, new cards, are added during the course of the psychosis. The fact intended to be emphasized is that the disease process can only deal with the material it finds at hand or has furnished it, that it itself does not create.

With this fundamental conception the psychiatrist is in a position to remind us of the chemist or the astronomer. If there is a hiatus in the logical connections of the different steps in a psychosis like the chemist he can with confidence look for an element to fill the space. If there is a disturbance somewhere along the line he may expect, like the astronomer, to find a hitherto unknown source of energy to account for it.

CHAPTER III.

CLASSIFICATION OF MENTAL DISORDERS.

When we come to the question of the classification of the different psychoses, we find a condition of affairs which leaves much to be desired. Almost every author of note has put forth his own separate classification and we are treated to all kinds from the simplest comprising only three or four groups to the most complex comprising forty or fifty or even more. The problem of classification has been approached from every side: the psychological, the pathological, the etiological, and the clinical, and while some authors adhere to one point of view the majority do not, but offer a classification based on all four considerations. This latter position is practically necessary as there are types which lend themselves only to classification from one of these standpoints and find no classification on any other basis.

As a matter of fact our knowledge of the psychoses is altogether too limited at present to justify the expectation that the problem of classification can be solved. Any attempt at grouping mental disorders under separate heads must at present be but tentative and incomplete. The author will not attempt to offer any scheme of classification but in the various chapters of this work will discuss the forms of mental disorder which are generally acknowledged to exist and while endeavoring to give a clear picture of types will take the broad view which realizes that the different forms of mental derangement are not capable of clean-cut demarkations but that on the contrary many of the present groups will in the course of time be broken up into smaller groups as we come to more accurately differentiate cases and appreciate more fully the true value of signs and symptoms. In fact, we are only beginning to learn that disease types are not the absolutely definite things they were originally supposed to be and that each and every case need not of necessity be classified under one and only one caption for all time. A diagnosis that is in order to-day may be quite inaccurate and non-descriptive six months hence, while aside from the fact that in the course of the chronic psy-

chooses acute symptoms may develop which have no relation to the fundamental disease type we must appreciate the fact that there are many cases that so truly partake of the symptoms of two psychoses as to make their relegation to either group equally impossible. Then again within the larger groups all grades of transition cases may be found, while a certain few cases defy all attempts at classification whatever.

The term insanity includes a great multitude of different conditions—of different sorts of reactions—due to a host of different kinds of causes and the explanation of the difficulty, in fact the impossibility of classifying mental disorders on any one basis—the etiological, the pathological, the psychological—is at once apparent. It would be just as sensible to try and force under one head all the diseases that might involve the kidney, including sarcoma and tuberculosis with the nephritides proper.

It is true that the symptoms of mental disorder tend to arrange themselves into groups, but the constancy of these groups is a very variable factor, and like the epileptologist who no longer speaks of epilepsy as a concrete entity but speaks rather of the epilepsies, so we are getting away from the idea of distinct, definite psychoses and are using such terms as the dementia paralytica group, the manic-depressive group, the hysteria group, etc.

These groups, the so-called clinical types, are not clean-cut entities but are only groups of symptoms which either seem to occur more frequently in combination or else have been more definitely and clearly seen because of the nature of that combination. In fact types as such may be said to be in the minority. The great mass of cases seen are combinations more or less intermediate in character. The conception of types in order to be accurate must be from a broadly biological viewpoint. Types are like species. They have innumerable transition and intermediate forms. It is as if overlooking a vast though young forest. Here and there are certain trees which because of their size or prominent location stand out distinct from the others. These would at once be picked out by the observer as types, yet the forest as a whole is not composed of these but of the immense number of smaller trees among which these few stand out definitely, and a more detailed study of the majority of the trees of approximately the same size would reveal minor differences of

structure; for example, in the form of leaf, thickness of bark, inclination of branches, color of flowers, etc., many of which might only serve to distinguish the individuals, while others would be of sufficient importance to constitute varieties, or even species.

Insanity, therefore, is not a disease; it is rather a group of disorders which tend to arrange themselves with greater or less distinctness into groups of reaction types. Its study is therefore primarily a study of disordered function and must be conducted not only in the autopsy room but in the psychological laboratory. And this study will only reach its full fruition when the results of the detailed analyses of abnormal reaction types are correlated with the results of a study of the mental "make-up" of the individual before he becomes insane.

This is well illustrated clinically when we consider any one of the etiological factors of mental disorder. Take for example alcohol. There are a number of psychoses that seem to occur almost solely under the influence of alcohol. Of the various so-called alcoholic psychoses one patient will develop delirium tremens, another acute hallucinosis, a third Korsakow's psychosis. What conditions the special form of psychosis in each case we do not know. On the other hand certain patients as a result of alcohol develop entirely different psychoses, the alcohol perhaps conditioning the outbreak of an attack of manic-depressive psychosis, leading to the breakdown of dementia precox, or the development of paresis.

This study of character has, fortunately, begun to be appreciated and is already accumulating a considerable literature and leading to very suggestive results. We have for some time known very well, in a general way, the unbalanced character, the epileptic character, the hysterical character, and the unresistive character recognized so often in general medicine because of the abnormal reaction to febrile disturbances, easily developing delirium as a result of only a moderate fever, and while recent studies have outlined the differences in character as manifested by sex, and the study of the psychology of psychasthenia has given us an understanding of the psychasthenic character, we are only beginning to recognize those types that may later develop a psychosis. We perhaps have definite types of character which tend under appropriate conditions to develop the manic-depressive

type of reaction while others tend to the development of deterioration types.

The individual is a biological unit and must be so considered in relation to other individuals, to society. If this is forgotten the perspective is lost. We no longer consider the end and aim of psychiatry either to find a diseased nerve cell or to make a hard and fast diagnosis of a given condition at a given time. If we are to understand the psychosis we must understand the individual, we must study not only his origin and development but his adjustment to conditions. We cannot understand a psychosis by subjecting it to cross-section for the purpose of defining its content at a particular point, or by subjecting it to longitudinal section for the purpose of tracing the beginning and the end of symptoms. Such subjection to the narrow field of an optical section will not do—it must be studied as a life history. Our patients must be considered as individuals who under certain conditions have reacted in certain ways. The type of reaction can only reach its explanation in the type of person displaying it.

The symptom picture of any psychosis must be dependent then upon two factors—the present make-up and the etiological moment, using this term in its broadest sense as meaning the determining cause of the symptoms. In this sense it would include an organic, pathological condition. Only with such a viewpoint can we understand the borderland conditions.

The important thing is an understanding of the patient, not a labeling of the psychosis. To this end must be had a comprehension of the character make-up, the nature of the etiological factors, and the mechanism of the reaction. So much at least must we know and then whether we give one name or another to our resulting conception, or no name at all, matters little.

Without going further into details I will rest by giving the general captions under which the several psychoses will be described in this work.

1. PARANOIA AND PARANOID STATES.
2. MANIC-DEPRESSIVE PSYCHOSES.
3. PARESIS.
4. DEMENTIA PRECOX.
5. INVOLUTION MELANCHOLIA.

6. SENILE PSYCHOSES.
7. INFECTION-EXHAUSTION PSYCHOSES.
8. TOXIC PSYCHOSES.
9. PSYCHOSES ASSOCIATED WITH ORGANIC DISEASES AND INJURY OF THE BRAIN.
10. THE SYMPTOMATIC PSYCHOSES.
11. BORDERLAND AND EPISODIC STATES.
12. IDIOCY AND IMBECILITY.

CHAPTER IV.

CAUSES OF MENTAL DISORDERS.

While it is fully realized that mental disorders are so various that a general chapter on their causes is quite as illogical as would be a chapter on the causes of fever in a work on general medicine, still there are a number of practical issues that may be discussed in such a chapter and which I think justify it.

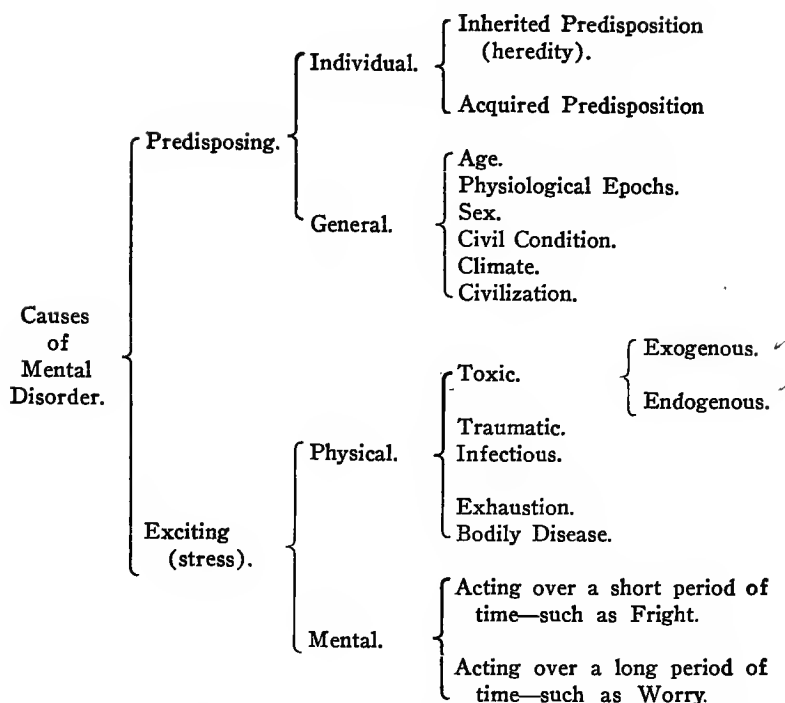
As in other departments of medicine, so here we find two classes of causes operative—*predisposing* and *exciting*. The predisposing causes are made up of those conditions existing within the individual and which render him liable to the development of mental disorder under favorable circumstances. The exciting causes are those circumstances or conditions which produce the actual attack of mental disturbance operating usually upon predisposed soil. The predisposing causes may be likened to a train of gunpowder, the exciting causes to the match that fires it.

The following table sets forth in a general way the factors of etiological significance in the development of mental disorders.

The predisposing causes are from their nature in the main inherited, although a predisposition to mental disease may be acquired, *i. e.*, by systematic poisoning (alcohol), the prolonged debilitation of disease (tuberculosis), etc. The exciting causes can all be classified under the general caption of stress, mental or physical, and comprise the various factors which are immediately causative of the outbreak of the attack. Our classification of causes would then be the following:

PREDISPOSING CAUSES.

Individual: Inherited Predisposition.—An inherited predisposition to mental disorder is found in from 30 to 90 per cent. of cases according to different authorities, while the average for all conditions has been estimated at from 60 to 70 per cent. But any one who is at all familiar with the collecting of statistics must



know how impossible it is for them to fully represent the facts in such a matter.

If we will take up any annual report of an institution for the insane and turn to the table giving the causes of insanity in the several patients under treatment, we will find assigned such causes as these: "business anxiety," "death of mother," "loss of property," "disappointment in love," "domestic troubles," "excessive study," "political excitement." How many of us but have suffered at some time or other from some or perhaps all of these so-called causes of insanity? Certainly we have all had business worries; certainly we have all lost property at some time, otherwise our good fortune is phenomenal; certainly we have all been subject to political excitement many times, and all of us presumably have lost a dear friend or relative, perhaps a father or mother. DR. CARLOS F. McDONALD says very forcibly on this subject, ". . . that substantially every individual at some time or other during his life is exposed, in many cases repeatedly, to

many of the so-called exciting causes of insanity, both mental and physical, and yet, despite this fact, we find that sanity is the rule—insanity the exception.”

In ascribing these causes what has been done is simply this: The particular set of conditions which happened to maintain at the time the patient was attacked with a psychosis has been tabulated as the cause of that attack. While these may have had to do with the outbreak of the attack and thus operated as exciting causes, the much more important condition was the unstable make-up of the individual that made it possible for such events to operate as causes at all.

In other words, the normal mind, under the influence of stress, does not become deranged unless from the operation of traumatism, toxæmia, or extreme degrees of exhaustion and not even then with anything like the facility of the mind predisposed to disease by bad heredity.

In dealing with the subject of heredity, however, we must not forget that our ideas are of necessity largely founded upon theories, as biological science has not yet unfolded a sufficient number of facts to make it possible for us to tell just how much, in any individual case, must be attributed to the inherent qualities of the “germ plasm” and just how much to the influences of environment.

Although it is pretty generally admitted among biologists that there is no sufficient warrant for the belief in the Lamarckian hypothesis of the inheritance of acquired characters, it is not deeply appreciated outside of a limited circle, yet this doctrine is perhaps the most important single position reached by a study of the subject of heredity in recent days.

How, for example, can one possibly conceive that the specially acquired manual dexterity of the graver could by any process be so impressed upon the sex cells that it would reappear in the offspring? These cells have no intimate relation with the several parts of the body. They are relegated to a corner, so to speak, and the only general relations in which they come with the rest of the body result from the fact that they are bathed and nourished in the body fluids.

While I am aware that the fact that we cannot imagine how the inheritance of acquired dexterity could be brought about does

not make it therefore impossible, still there is no convincing proof that an acquired trait of this sort ever is transmitted. The only thing we can conceive of as being inherited is the particular make-up of the individual that made the acquirement of the trait possible.

Although the sex cells have not that intimate direct connection with the different parts of the body by means of nerve currents that would make it possible for a change occurring anywhere to be reflected in them, they are bathed in and nourished by the body fluids and we might expect that general conditions producing toxæmia might so affect them as in some way to impair their functions as shown in the resulting offspring.

Such appears to be the case, so that as a matter of fact we find not infrequently various debilitating and toxic conditions in the parents, the most common of which are probably tuberculosis, alcoholism, and syphilis. General conditions of this sort impair the germ plasm and produce defects in development as a result.

There are reasons, however, for combating this view. Cells, no matter where found, may be distorted in their development by poisons. But as soon as the distributing factor is removed they bound back to their type. Even though puny children may be born to drunken parents we might expect them to develop all right under a favorable environment, but if they do not it is as logical to explain the results as following because they are born of the same germ plasm, and therefore have the same tendencies as their parents which led, among other things, to their drunkenness, as it is to explain them as a result of the poisoning of the germ cell.¹

We can see how this lack of transmission of acquired traits is really constructively conservative. The progress of the race has been one of infinite slowness, by a process of blind right and wrong trials. If every acquired trait were inherited, every wild idea propagated, the confusion of tendencies would multiply to no good. This, however, is not the case. Every departure from the mean tends to be wiped out in accordance with Galton's law of filial regression. The fundamental is preserved while the variations tend to disappear. In this way the race is kept, as a

¹ Reid, G. Archdall: *The Laws of Heredity*. London, Methuen & Co., 1910.

whole, at the point of highest average efficiency although, of course, as in nature's way, often at the sacrifice of the individual. And so the progress has been slow and laborious but, and here lies the compensation, correspondingly sure, and permanent.

Thus it would seem, that like the soul of the theologian, the germ plasm takes up its habitation in the body. The body grows, develops, dies. The germ plasm is undisturbed and transmits to the next generation what it received from the last uninfluenced by the changes that may have taken place in the body where it for the time being resided. This body has absolutely no effect upon the germ plasm, as to the character of being it will produce in the next generation, except such effects as are produced as the result of general disturbances of metabolism, toxemias and infections, which impair the body fluids, and the immediate chemical and physical environment of the sex cells. These effects are general effects, however, and it is quite unthinkable that the effect in the next generation should be a reproduction of like conditions. The effects show themselves rather in general disturbances of development, oftener in the line of deficiency. This unchangeable character of the germ plasm is at the basis of the lack of inheritance of acquired characters and has given rise to the phrase the "continuity of the germ plasm." It is the result of a fundamental difference between the sex or germ cells and the body or soma cells, a difference appreciable in the earliest stages of development, and their subsequent lack of intimate relation with each other.

While, therefore, we not infrequently do find the same disease developing in the children that the parents suffered from—the heredity is *similar*—it happens more frequently that general conditions of ill health in the ascendants have so impaired the germ plasm as to produce conditions of instability which may show themselves in various ways other than in reflecting the same disease—the heredity is *dissimilar*.

The dangers supposed to lie in the marriages of near relatives are largely fictitious.² IRELAND in a review of this subject states that it has not been shown that such marriages have a higher percentage of evil results than is found in the results of mar-

² Ireland, William W.: *The Mental Affections of Children, Idiocy, Imbecility and Insanity*. London and Edinburgh, 1898.

riages throughout the entire population. The real danger lies in the possibility of bringing together two persons both of whom have the same bad strain and thus emphasizing the bad effects.

Acquired Predisposition.—The two most important agents in bringing about an acquired predisposition to mental derangement are alcohol and syphilis, while tuberculosis from the prolonged toxic-exhaustive condition it brings about would probably come third. All of these causes, the first two especially, may by acting upon the normal brain bring about such changes as to predispose it to disease and thus predispose the individual to the development of mental disorder. It must not be forgotten, too, that the occurrence of one attack of mental disorder predisposes to subsequent attacks.

General: Age.—According to the Eleventh Census there is a gradual increase in the number of cases of insanity from the age of 10 to the age of 40. From 40 on there is a gradual decrease. The table given is very interesting and worth reproducing. It is as follows:

Age Period when Insanity Appeared.	1890.	1880.	Age Period when Insanity Appeared.	1890.	1900.
10-15	39	227	55-60	4,316	940
15-20	790	2,417	60-65	3,261	652
20-25	3,138	5,450	65-70	2,066	358
25-30	5,704	5,926	70-75	1,343	186
30-35	8,123	5,492	75-80	632	90
35-40	8,182	4,321	80-85	310	23
40-45	7,930	3,305	85-90	102	8
45-50	7,287	2,405	90-95	38	3
50-55	6,036	1,542	95+	3	

It would appear from this table that the greatest liability to insanity existed between the ages of 30 and 40 as it is between these ages that we find the largest number of the insane. That so many more insane should be between thirty and forty years of age than in any other decade is simply due to the fact that there are more people in the general community living of this age. Considering the number of insane in each decade compared to the total population of the same age, it will be found that the liability to insanity practically progressively increases from twenty to eighty years of age. Phelps³ published an interesting table illustrating this point based upon the population of Minnesota.

³ Phelps, R. M.: Certain Hitherto Unpublished Data Concerning the Insane, Jour. A. M. A., Dec. 11, 1909.

COMPARATIVE LIABILITY TO INSANITY IN EACH DECADE.

Age by Decades.	Nn. Living in Each Age in Minn (Census, 1900).	No. Insane Admitted in Minn. in 1901-1902.	No. Insane of Each Age Decade Admitted in Minn. per Million People Living at that Age in Minn.	Proportionate Chance of Becoming Insane at Each Age Decade, as Compared with Other Decades, in Percentages.
Under age 20.....	807,978	54	66.8	.410
From age 20-30....	309,281	380	1,257.7	7.727
From age 30-40....	252,248	522	2,069.3	12.710
From age 40-50....	172,688	379	2,194.2	13.481
From age 50-60....	103,189	218	2,112.6	12.980
From age 60-70....	63,388	122	1,924.6	11.824
From age 70-80....	31,026	78	2,514.0	15.447
Over 80.....	7,494	31	4,136.6	25.415
Total.....	1,747,292 (People in Minn.)	1,793	16,275.8 (Sum of relative chances.)	99.994

Column 4 is obtained by multiplying Column 3 by 1,000,000 and dividing by Column 2. It is from the proportion: "807,978 is to 54, as 1,000,000 is to the required number."

Column 5 is obtained by dividing the chances per million of each decade by the total number of chances. It merely gives the chance of each decade as compared with the whole in terms of parts of 100. It is a relative percentage.

The caution must be added that this last column does not show the percentage of insane committed, but only the relative chances of becoming insane in one decade as compared to the other decades and as compared with one hundred chances. If there were an equal number of people at each age, this would be the proportion committed from each decade.

It is interesting to note at this point that a considerable portion of the frequently referred to increase of insanity is due to the prolongation of life by preventive medicine. More people live to become insane. DANA⁴ has called attention to the fact that while the greatest number of the insane are afflicted in the decade from thirty to forty years, more people are now living to that age, the expectancy of life in the United States having increased from 28 in 1840 to 34.5 in 1900.

Physiological Epochs.—The periods of life at which a latent

⁴Dana, Charles Loomis: *Psychiatry in its Relation to Other Sciences*, Trans. Congress of Arts and Sciences, Universal Exposition, St. Louis, 1904. Boston and New York, Houghton, Mifflin and Company, 1906.

tendency to mental disorder may crop out are the physiological epochs during which there are great changes going on in the general nutrition, physiological crises in fact. These physiological epochs are the periods of puberty and adolescence, the puerperium, the climacterium, and the senium.

Sex.—Although the psychoses are about equally divided between the sexes the specially dangerous periods in the female, the puerperium and the climacterium, being about balanced by the results of alcohol and syphilis and a more strenuous mental life in the male, yet the U. S. Census seems to show a tendency to a gradual increase in the percentage of males as shown by the following table:

Sex.	Per Cent. Distribution of					
	General Population.			Insane Enumeration in Hospitals.		
	1900.	1890.	1880.	December 31, 1903.	June 1, 1890.	June 1, 1880.
Both sexes	100	100	100	100	100	100
Males	51.1	51.2	50.9	52.3	51.8	50.4
Females	48.9	48.8	49.1	47.7	48.2	49.6

Civil Condition.—The percentage of insanity is greater in the unmarried than in the married. The Census returns for all the insane in hospitals in 1904 show 50.1 per cent. to have been single, leaving the balance of 49.9 per cent. to be divided among married, widowed, divorced, and unknown.

Climate.—The only effect of climate is to supply conditions which make exhaustion and infection more liable. The climate itself has no direct effect. Malaria, yellow fever, and other diseases of tropical climates produce a condition of toxæmia and exhaustion favorable to the outcrop of mental diseases, while the extreme heat makes physical exertion more exhausting and the effects of alcohol are not so well borne.

Civilization.—Insanity is most prevalent among the most highly civilized. In the process of evolution the struggle for existence has changed from a physical to a mental struggle and as it is the organ most used that is most open to the dangers of accident and disease so we find the brain giving way more frequently as the stresses of life become more and more mental rather than physical. Thus we find not only that psychoses are more prevalent among

the most highly civilized, but among these they are found with greatest frequency in the immense, congested centers of population where civilization has reached its greatest development and the struggle for existence becomes most severe.

EXCITING CAUSES.

Predisposition alone, however, is usually not sufficient to produce mental disorder, especially is this true of an acquired predisposition such as that induced by alcohol, syphilis, and tuberculosis without the element of mental stress added. This is well illustrated by the condition of the American Indian. Sorely afflicted as he is by the diseases and vices of civilization, his tendency is to an outdoor life, and as his land has disappeared and he has become physically incapacitated, the government has supported him, so that his sufferings have been in the main physical and not mental. Careless, slovenly, and improvident, he does not know much of worry for the morrow, and so we rarely find psychoses in his race.

Physical: Toxic.—The various poisons which may act as exciting causes of the psychoses may be either *exogenous*—coming from without—or *endogenous*—originating within the body. Of the exogenous variety alcohol is perhaps the most prominent. It is probably responsible for from fifteen to twenty per cent. of cases in males. Alcohol and syphilis together, if we include paresis as a syphilitic disease, are responsible for fully twenty per cent. of the insanity in males at least. Some of the other poisons that belong in this group are opium (morphine), cocaine, atropine and its isomers, lead, and mercury, while the toxins of various diseases, such as syphilis, tuberculosis, typhoid, yellow fever, malaria, and grippe frequently act as exciting causes. Of the endogenous poisons the most important are those which originate from the gastro-intestinal tract, and as a result of chronic nephritis. The mental disorders which accompany such diseases as myxedema, exophthalmic goitre, and acromegaly probably belong here also.

Traumatic.—Direct injuries to the head, such as bullet wounds and fracture, are, of course, not infrequently the immediate cause of mental disorder, while more indirect injuries, such as concussion from falls, transmitted perhaps through the spine, may also be the starting point of a psychosis.

Exhaustion.—Exhaustion from prolonged physical and mental strain, from chronic diseases, or as the result of acute conditions following fever, or the result of the sudden loss of considerable blood, may be prominent exciting causes. It is to be remembered in this connection that exhaustion, especially physical, results in and may in large part produce its effects by the development of toxic substances, as for instance from the breaking down of muscle.

Bodily Diseases.—Bodily diseases other than those developing poisons may act as causes by disturbances of circulation, reflex irritation, disturbances of nutrition and exhaustion. Such are cardiac diseases with broken compensation, the reflex irritation from intestinal parasites, and the various nervous diseases which often have mental symptoms connected with them, such as epilepsy, Huntington's chorea, hysteria.

Mental.—Any severe mental stress may act as an exciting cause. A sudden emotional shock, such as fright, or the horror resulting from the terrible sights of the wounded and dying in a railroad wreck, may induce an outbreak of mental disorder, while the less acute conditions of worry and anxiety, usually acting over a considerable period of time, may also be etiological factors in the development of a psychosis.

The whole subject of mental causes has received a great deal of attention of late⁶ and has constituted a sort of reaction from the pathologist's viewpoint. Reference to the discussion of mind as an adaptive mechanism will make it clear how failure on the part of the individual to get into harmonious adjustment with his environment may produce a psychosis.

⁶ White: Mental Mechanisms, No. 8 of this series.

CHAPTER V.

TREATMENT.

In the treatment of the psychoses the general principles of therapeutics are of course applicable as in other departments of medicine. Disorders of various organs are found among the insane as among the sane and require the same sort of treatment. It is only intended in this chapter to devote a few words to the discussion of the therapeutics of the psychoses in so far as it differs from therapeutics as ordinarily resorted to, for there are conditions commonly met with among the insane that require treatment that are rare or absent among the sane. Excitement, agitation and violence, for example, may occur in the delirium of fever but is of short duration—transitory—while in the realm of mental disease this condition may persist for weeks and require treatment. Only certain general considerations will be taken up here, while special matters pertaining to the different psychoses will be discussed in their appropriate places.

Hydrotherapy.—It is impracticable here to take up a full discussion of this subject. The student should consult special works for detailed information. It may be said, however, that the various forms of hydrotherapeutic devices form one of the more valuable of the recent additions to the means of treatment. This is true especially of the treatment of the excitements. In the absence of hydrotherapy the only way to deal with these cases is by manual or mechanical restraint, or by chemical restraint. All of these means are undesirable if avoidable. With a well equipped hydrotherapeutic outfit, however, their use may be reduced to a minimum.

Such an equipment would provide for the giving of hot baths—local or general: full baths, simple or medicated, at various temperatures: needle, rain, fan, spray, jet, spinal and Scotch douches, regulated as to temperature and pressure: wet packs, hot or cold: sitz baths, etc.

These various measures have eliminating, stimulating, or sedative effects, according to circumstances. For toxic states, such

as chronic alcoholism, the stimulating effect of the hot air with profuse sweating, followed by the stimulating effects of the Scotch douche, are very valuable, while in excited cases some form of wet pack gives better results. In applying the wet pack the wet sheet is put on first after being sufficiently wrung out, usually of cold water, so as not to drip, carefully wrapped about the patient and tucked in, then a dry blanket is rolled about the patient and also carefully tucked in at the arms, made snug at the neck, and turned in at the foot, so that no draft can strike any portion of the wet body and neither arm or leg can be voluntarily exposed by the patient. When skilfully applied it affords a sufficient restraint to the patient until the sedative effect is manifest. Excited cases treated in this way with a cold cloth or ice cap to the head often quiet down surprisingly and not infrequently go to sleep. The great advantage of this method is that it can be used in the home.

The warm bath of a few minutes duration is also a very valuable sedative that can be used at home, but if used care should be taken to watch the heart if the patient is weak and when the bath is over the patient should be rapidly wiped off, wrapped up in blankets and put to bed without any exposure to drafts or cooling.

Continuous Bath.—The continuous bath is used for the most part in the treatment of the active and excited cases. The tub is made somewhat longer than usual to accommodate the patient at full length comfortably. The patient is placed in the tub (if desired he may rest in a canvas hammock attached to the sides), the water being kept by means of a regulating apparatus at from 95° to 97° F. The bath may be prolonged for several hours; in fact the patient may spend all day in the bath. In Germany, where this form of treatment originated, the patients are often kept continuously in the bath not only for hours but for days and weeks at a time, eating and sleeping there. It is remarkable that many of these disturbed cases seem after a time to like the warm sedative influence of the water, and I have seen a patient cry to go back in the tub after she had been taken out.

Another great advantage of the continuous bath is the good effect the water has upon the skin. The warm water keeps it soft and active and the tendency which exists in so many cases,

particularly of paresis, to the development of bed-sores is largely prevented; the patient resting in a medium of considerably higher specific gravity than the air a large proportion of the pressure is thus removed from the skin, so moderating one of the most prominent causes.

Refusal of Food.—This is one of the most annoying symptoms met with and yet is quite common among the depressed cases. It frequently has a serious influence upon the health of the patient, so it becomes of the highest importance to know how to meet it.

If the patient be in good physical condition it is wise to let him go for a time without food in the hope that the cravings of hunger will force him to eat, as once artificial feeding is begun it is liable to have to be continued. A strong, vigorous patient may be permitted to fast thus for as long as three days, while on the other hand, it frequently happens that when the patient is first seen he has already been temporized with so long that he is in such condition as to require feeding at once.

There are many methods of artificial feeding, but the method of tube-feeding is the only one that merits much attention. This method may be employed either by the nasal or the esophageal route.

The esophageal route is always to be preferred. The patient is fed sitting up in a firmly constructed, straight-backed arm-chair, unless a greatly enfeebled condition renders the position on the back imperative. The operator stands behind and gently forces the mouth open with a soft wooden wedge introduced on the left side, then with the patient's head held under his left arm he holds the wedge with his left hand, which is steadied by placing his little finger under the patient's chin. The patient's head thus secured, the arms and legs held by nurses, if necessary, the esophageal tube is dipped in the milk to be given and passed. A funnel, preferably vulcanized rubber, is now inserted in the tube by a nurse and the food slowly poured in.

The same position is assumed for passing the nasal tube. The tube used may be an ordinary male catheter. Before attempting to pass it it is well to examine the nose, particularly for polypi and deflected septum, and choose the side which will present the least obstruction. The tube then being dipped in the milk to lubricate

it it is passed along the floor of the nostril and down into the esophagus. Care must be taken to see that it does not enter the larynx. If it should, the usual signs are severe strangling, coughing and cyanosis, while the air may be heard making a rushing sound as it passes in and out of the tube. It must not be forgotten, however, that in some cases, particularly in paresis, there is more or less anesthesia of the larynx and these signs may be in large measure absent. It is well, therefore, after the tube is passed to wait a few moments and see if the patient does respire through it, not forgetting that immediately after it first enters the esophagus a little rush of gas may escape through it from the stomach. The tube being passed, the food may be introduced through a funnel by gravity, as with the esophageal tube, but as this is a very slow process, owing to the small calibre of the tube, it is more satisfactory to attach a Davidson syringe, first filling it with milk, so as not to inject air, and then gradually pump the food through this.

In withdrawing the tube it should be pinched tightly to prevent a leakage as the end passes over the larynx.

The nasal tube is preferable particularly with those patients who resist very actively and who have a good set of teeth that the introduction of the wedge might injure. It is contra-indicated in cases of nasal disease and obstruction, while it is best to avoid its use if possible when there is anesthesia of the larynx.

The esophageal tube should be avoided when there is disease of the esophagus or cardia and in some cases of feeble heart action when the nasal tube can be passed with less commotion.

The usual mixture for feeding is a pint to a pint and a half of milk to which is added two eggs. In addition there may be added beef juices or other forms of liquid food and various medicines, particularly cathartics and hypnotics with the evening feeding.

Feeding should be done at least twice daily—morning and evening. If the food is not well digested oftener and in smaller amounts.

Medication.—As the various psychoses are for the most part relatively chronic diseases, great care should be used in prescribing opium or any of its alkaloids, as otherwise a serious addiction may be encouraged.

One of the most frequent conditions which has to be met by drugs is *insomnia*. This is a symptom in many of the psychoses and often over a considerable period of time. Of the various hypnotics *paraldehyde* is one of the best, but of course is greatly limited in its use because of its very disagreeable odor and taste. *Sulfonal* is an excellent hypnotic, but somewhat slow in its action. It is best given at supper time and then will be active about bed time. It may be given to patients who refuse medicine by mixing with apple sauce, for example, as it has little taste. Its prolonged use should be avoided, as poisoning may occur with hematuria and pyuria. *Trional* is equally as good a hypnotic and acts more promptly. In some cases in which the patient wakes up in the small hours of the morning a mixture of sulfonal and trional may be given, about 15 grs. each, at bed time. The trional will act the early part of the night and the sulfonal the later. *Veronal* acts similarly and may be given in from 5 to 10 or perhaps 15 gr. doses. *Chloralamid* is a similar drug and may be given in a pleasant elixir, while in some more troublesome cases *chloral* may be indicated.

In the use of hypnotics care should be taken to interrupt the administration from time to time to see if normal sleep will not supervene and also to change from one to the other to prevent cumulative effects or addiction. It is of course understood that hypnotics should be resorted to only when other means have failed.

In the acutely excited conditions requiring sedatives about the only drugs that are efficient are the alkaloids of *hyoscyamus*, given hypodermically. Great care should be exercised in using this drug, as the various preparations are somewhat uncertain. The chemically pure alkaloids have not been so successful in my hands as the amorphous sulphate of hyoscyamine (Merck), which contains a mixture of the alkaloids. This drug may be given hypodermically in doses as high as $\frac{1}{10}$ gr., or in a strong, vigorous person without cardio-vascular disease, $\frac{1}{8}$ gr. Its action seems to be assisted by 3 or 4 gtts. of Magendie's solution. It must be remembered that the pure alkaloids must not be administered in any such doses—usually not over $\frac{1}{100}$ – $\frac{1}{50}$ gr. Too small doses of the drug may not quiet the patient at all, but on the other hand only produce a degree of belladonna delirium.

Here, as with the hypnotics, drugs should not be used until other means have failed.

In regard to the whole subject of the giving of drugs, too much emphasis cannot be placed on the caution to avoid over-medication. It is not an uncommon thing to see patients admitted to a hospital suffering from the toxic effects of drugs, usually bromides and chloral. In this condition they not only suffer the deleterious effects of the toxemia, but the symptoms of the disease from which they are suffering may be hopelessly clouded.

Psychotherapy.—It is, of course, quite impossible in the limits of a work of this sort to discuss in an at all adequate manner the subject of psychotherapy. The literature of the subject has become very extensive in recent months, and I think needlessly complicated, particularly as a result of the growing understanding and appreciation of the psychogenic factors in the etiology and symptomatology of the psychoses. The simple thing to remember is that in mental disorders that are due to mental causes something may be expected from a direct appeal to the mental conditions as a result of which the symptoms developed.

The human soul is filled with desires, vague longings, reachings out, and in its effort to bring about a state of contentment, of satisfaction, often becomes hopelessly involved in attempts at adjustment to conditions which are quite impossible. The failure is felt keenly but the true cause is unknown. It is for the physician, after following the difficulties and intricacies, to take the patient frankly into his confidence and by pointing out the exact mechanism of his distress, by putting his finger accurately on the difficulty, so give the patient his opportunity to meet the problem in an efficient way.

Psychoanalysis.¹—The conception appears to be general that psychotherapy is summed up and included in suggestion. Aside from the fact that no one seems to have a very clear idea of just what suggestion really is this conception ignores the recent work that has been done along these lines. Suggestion really plays on the surface. The fundamental, underlying conditions are not reached by suggestion. These underlying conditions which produce the symptomatology of the psychoneuroses are the same conditions that make suggestion possible. The accepted suggestion

* White: Mental Mechanisms, No. 8 of this series.

is quite as much a pathological product as the various symptoms themselves.

When we have a case that we have decided to try psychoanalysis with, the first thing to do is to have a detailed talk with the patient covering the manifestations of the disorder and also touching the main events of the entire life so far as possible. We must remember that the symptoms with which we have to deal are only end products—the results perhaps of a mechanism that seems fairly simple but in the last analysis they are results made possible by all that has gone before—the entire psychic life of the individual. Our initial talk, therefore, serves not only to give us an account of the symptoms but to orient us with regard to the general make-up of the personality with which we have to deal.

During the course of this conversation it is inevitable that certain points will stand out as being important to pursue further. Here begins the real problem of psychoanalysis.

The method of procedure, the so-called method of free association, is roughly as follows: The patient needs to be alone with the physician in a room as far as possible from distracting influences—noises, bright lights, etc. To this end, too, the patient should be disposed as comfortably as possible so that physical discomfort or uneasiness will not interfere. It is well to have the eyes closed also, so that distractions from the visual field may be eliminated so far as possible. This general state of quiescence and passivity can be enhanced by having him observe some monotonous sensory stimulus that dominates the sensorium and shuts out less insistent and inconsiderable sensations, such as the buzzing of a faradic coil. In this condition the particular feature in the history that it is desired to pursue further is presented to the patient and he is asked to hold that event before his mind, to make no mental effort of any sort, such for instance as trying to remember, but to tell absolutely every thought that comes to his mind, no matter how fleeting, no matter how inconsequential it may seem or no matter how little bearing it may appear to have on the question at issue.

The theory of this procedure is that if the patient does not direct the thought in any way every idea that comes must of necessity have some relation to the event held before the mind about which enlightenment is sought. The monotonous sensory conditions are

observed to prevent distracting influences from outside sources. The directions to the patient if carried out prevent distractions from inside sources.

It is difficult to secure this condition of passivity in many cases, especially those who have never consciously used their minds and therefore do not know how to comply with the directions. It is difficult to get the patients to tell all the ideas that come. They naturally refrain from mentioning those that appear to be entirely fortuitous and to have nothing to do with the case. It will be seen from the theory, however, that these cannot be unimportant. They must bear some relation to the central event.

This is the method of attack to fill out the information acquired in the initial conversation. The symptoms should all be dealt with in this way for the purpose of uncovering the submerged complexes and disclosing their mechanisms. As we proceed new events will constantly be brought to light that must also be pursued, as must also all the significant events of the patient's life.

We must never forget, too, to investigate the dream life. Freud has shown that the mechanism of dreams is quite the same as that of the symptoms, so we may expect to get valuable information from this realm. The method of procedure is the same. The patient quite likely will deny dreaming at all at first but pursuit of the inquiry may very well disclose a rich dream life.

Nothing is too trivial to be worthy of analysis, nothing but may throw light upon the situation. All the little slips of the tongue, forgotten incidents, points at which two recitals of an occurrence do not agree, even witticisms are necessary to trace out, while the dream life offers abundance of rich material for study.

This is the method of unraveling the tangled network of the mental life. It takes weeks, months, perhaps years of constant effort. There is no royal road, no short cut to results. What it has taken a life time to produce cannot be laid aside in an hour. How different a conception dominates this method of procedure from that of the method of suggestion!

At times in the course of the analysis it seems as though no further progress were possible. At these points, and perhaps also to start with just after the initial conversation, it is well to try some word associations. This is done by taking the reactions to a list (see Chapter VI) of say one hundred words carefully chosen

to cover the ordinary field of the average person's possibilities of complex formation. There may be distributed through this list words that for some reason may be supposed to have significance.

The method of procedure is to read the words to the patient, instructing him to answer immediately the first word or thought that comes to his mind after hearing the word read, and recording the time it takes for this reaction. The most practical way for recording the time is by a stop-watch graduated to fifths of a second. After the list has been completed it is repeated in the same way; the time need not be recorded, however, except that the patient is asked to repeat the same associations he gave the first time if he can recall them.

When one of the words in the list touches a complex, is a complex indicator, a marked disturbance in the reaction is noted. This disturbance shows in several ways: increased length of time, peculiarity of the type of reaction, failure to repeat the same association, and irradiation of the disturbance to the next one or two associations.

It will probably occur to many to wonder how it is that we can expect to find memories reaching back for years sufficiently well preserved to be helpful. As a matter of fact the memories of all repressed experiences are perfectly clear no matter how old. The explanation for this is that being repressed they are dissociated from the everyday events of life, they are kept in their original form, they have not been subjected to the attrition and amalgamation with the intricacies of associational life. They do not fade out by this process of absorption as do the memories of indifferent events, but remain where ever after they may be brought to light by analysis and used as helps for cure.

You will see from this short description what a far-reaching method this is. A method of analysis from which no event of life, no matter how apparently trivial, is free. A method that in its results lays bare not only the immediate antecedents and causes of the symptoms, but the whole innermost life of the patient, reaching back even to the period of early childhood. This of course takes time. A case of any complexity and difficulty quite generally takes several months, of at least two or three sances each week, to reach a final result.

This element of time is an important one for more than one

reason. In the first place it may, and does, largely preclude the possibility of the general use of this method by the average practitioner. It should not, however, lead to adverse and destructive criticism of the method for that reason alone, as it has done in some instances. If the psychology upon which the method is based is true, we must of necessity accept it whether it meets with our convenience or not. Then it is rather silly after all to have a scientific position condemned because to carry out the resulting methods takes too much time. An effort might legitimately be made to improve upon the method but truth does not yield to attack based upon such principles.

There is some reason to believe, however, that the time needed to effect lasting results in this class of cases cannot be materially shortened. The cases of psychoneurosis come to us in a sea of trouble, tossing about on waves of emotion, far from shore and safety, blindly and hopelessly, resigned often to a life of suffering, desperate often at seeing no hope of release, but quite unable to help themselves at all. Of course in the nature of the case the real troubles, the buried complexes not only are not known by the patient, but they cannot be known and the obvious explanations for the symptoms, that the patient often has ready at hand, not only are not the real explanations, but they cannot be. Nevertheless, the original repressions and the dissociations in consciousness resulting are quite characteristically due to a false attitude towards the problems of life. The young woman in love with some one of whom the father disapproves may have a fleeting thought that the father's death would straighten matters out and enable her to marry without further opposition. Now instead of reacting to such a thought naturally by realizing that as a conscious human being such a thought was merely an expression of her wish to marry the man she loved and an expression of a natural desire that the obstacles in the way be removed, and putting it quietly and without passion aside as impossible of consideration because of its unethical character, in fact unworthy of even contemplation, she becomes terribly horrified that such a thought could even find entrance to her mind and represses it immediately as not only too terrible for consideration but with a sense of chagrin, shame, self-reproach. Such a putting aside, side-tracking of a disagreeable thought, such a refusal to meet an unwelcome guest in the open,

frankly, such a refusal to even see the disagreeable does not make for efficient reaction, does not enable the individual to adequately adjust.

These patients come with no adequate philosophy of life, no raft with which they can safely reach shore in their sea of trouble. They have narrow, distorted, perverted viewpoints and these it is necessary to fully appreciate in the course of the analysis, for these must be corrected. They cannot be corrected by a pronunciamiento, by laying down what the analyzer believes to be the law and the gospel on the different questions involved but must be slowly changed by a process of reëducation in which the personality of the physician and his attitude towards the whole situation plays a prominent part. And herein lies the importance of the element of time.

This reëducation of the patient is dependent perhaps more upon the attitude of the physician than upon any particular thing he may say. The personality of the physician plays a certain rôle. Whereas theoretically his personality should be nil in its effects if the method were accurate, still the method is not perfect and has to be carried out by human means. The patient, before the analysis has proceeded far, sees that to go on means to bare his very soul. One does not confess his innermost thoughts to every one, the hysteric, for example, is not impelled to unburden himself of his story to the passerby, like the ancient mariner. Quite the contrary. The whole trend of his malady is toward concealment, repression. The personal characteristics of the physician do, I think, play some part, although I am willing to admit that this part is less in proportion to the perfection of the method.

Now as to the physician's attitude. In the first place his attitude should be one of absolute lack of critique. The physician is merely after facts, for by the analysis he hopes to help the patient by removing the symptoms. He will in the course of his analysis hear many intimate thoughts, learn of many wrong, perhaps disgusting, or even criminal acts. He should express no surprise. They are but facts, that is all. The patient must not be blamed or laughed at. He has already done that for himself many times. In fact that is often the trouble. Self-blame may have been the cause for the original repression. His moral sense is already keen, in fact perhaps too keen, and an element of

prudery or over-scrupulousness must be removed for a more healthy attitude of mind.

Sympathy is likewise not to be indulged in. The patient does not want it and it is not helpful. The attitude of the physician, however, has as an element the most important factor in sympathy—understanding. To be understood is indeed a privilege. For years the psychoneurotic has failed of being understood, has refrained from talking to persons about himself, perhaps after one or two disagreeable experiences, for fear of being laughed at. In fact, he has failed to understand himself. Now to find some one who does understand—what a relief!—and it is helpful in no small degree in the progress of the work.

It is these elements in the attitude of the physician—his lack of critique and his understanding—that are the quiet determinants making through the weeks and months of psychoanalysis for a more wholesome, a more robust philosophy of life, and finally when all the submerged complexes and mechanisms of the symptoms have been uncovered our patient emerges literally born again. The disordered material which the patient brought to us has, if we have been successful, been sorted over, rearranged, added to, and built into a new and an enduring structure.

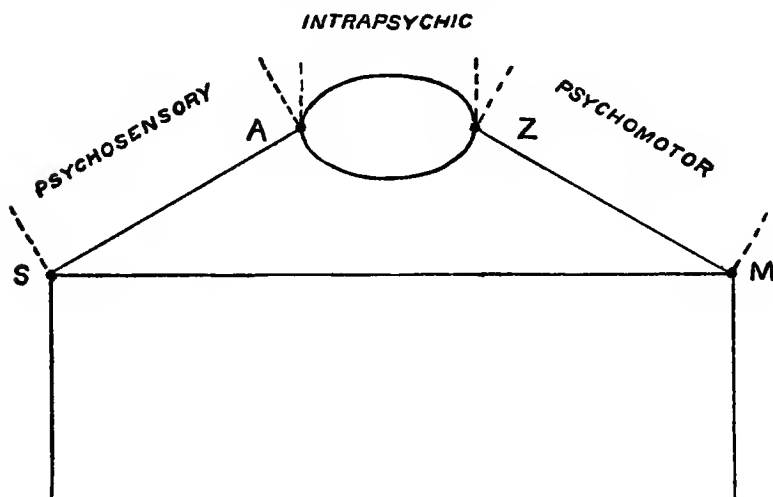
Prophylaxis.—It is to be hoped that some day we shall have a sufficient understanding of character to be able to pick out those types liable to develop psychoses and to protect them from that class of stresses that they are least able to withstand. At present we can hardly be said to approximate to this. The neurotic child, however, can be recognized and should be safeguarded, especially throughout school life and the period of puberty and adolescence. Some day, perhaps, competent advice will be sought by parents as to the best methods to be employed in the rearing of their children. Until then we are largely helpless in the matter of prevention.

With the advance in the study of the individual psychology of the psychoses many psychogenic etiological factors have been uncovered which offer considerable hope for the future of prophylaxis in this branch of medicine. Certainly a careful study of cases which have recovered will often indicate clearly the things to avoid in order to prevent another breakdown.

CHAPTER VI.

GENERAL SYMPTOMATOLOGY.

In describing the general symptoms of the psychoses the scheme of the several mental processes outlined in the preceding chapters will be adhered to and the principal disorders of each taken up in turn. Certain symptoms, however, associated more particu-



S = SENSORY PROJECTION FIELD
M = MOTOR PROJECTION FIELD
A = INITIAL IDEA
Z = TERMINAL IDEA

FIG. 2. Showing subdivisions of mental processes.

larly with special psychoses will be left and discussed in the chapter in which that particular psychosis is described.

Before going on to the discussion of the special symptoms it may be well first to call attention to a slight modification of the diagram used previously to illustrate the mental processes for

the purpose of illustrating some general principles involved. (See Fig. 2.)

In this diagram everything from *S* to *M*, inclusive, is included in consciousness, the term used to denote the sum total of mental life. This is indicated by the term used: for example, psychomotor would refer to motor acts originating in consciousness. A reflex act would thus not be included—it is not a psychomotor act, taking place entirely without the realm of consciousness. Taking then this tripartite division of consciousness, we may follow WERNICKE¹ and say that in each of the three territories there may be three types of disorder, as follows:

<i>Psychosensory.</i>	<i>Intrapsychic.</i>	<i>Psychomotor.</i>
Anesthesia.	Afunction.	Akinesis.
Hyperesthesia.	Hyperfunction.	Hyperkinesis.
Paresthesia.	Parafunction.	Parakinesis.

Bearing these general principles in mind, we will proceed now to the discussion of the special symptoms.

DISORDERS OF PERCEPTION.

Illusion.—An illusion is an inexact, or inaccurate, perception. The information conveyed to the mind by the sense organ is misinterpreted, so that the source of the sensory impressions in the environment is not appreciated at its true value. A strap lying on the floor may be perceived as a snake, the sighing of the wind may be perceived as the whispering of a human voice, a bad taste in the mouth may be perceived as poison, and so on throughout the different sensory realms. The distinguishing thing about an illusion is that an actual something in the environment is perceived but the perception is not a correct one and conveys false information to the mind.

Hallucination.—An hallucination, on the other hand, is generally conceived to be a perception without sensory foundation in the environment. A snake is seen on the floor where there is nothing which could be mistaken for a snake, the floor is bare; human voices are heard where there are actually no sounds in the environment which could be interpreted as such; poison is tasted when there has been nothing in the food or mouth which

¹Wernicke: Grundriss der Psychiatric.

has given origin to the taste. The distinguishing feature of an hallucination then is a perception without there being anything in the environment to perceive.

Recent studies, however, have made it highly probable that a large number of what have been supposed to be hallucinations are in reality dependent upon pathological, or even at times physiological processes occurring in the sensory end organs, so that, with reference to the eye and ear, for example, they might be said to be of entoptic or entotic origin respectively.

So far, however, as any given erroneous perception is concerned it really matters little from the point of view as to its significance as a symptom of mental disease, whether it be classed as an illusion or an hallucination. The mental process in both instances is identical. In practical use the two are not often distinguished, but false perceptions are generally spoken of as hallucinations and as the mental process is the same in both hallucination and illusion the necessity for their distinction does not arise and the use of the term hallucination serves the purpose very well.

Using the term hallucination then to include the phenomena of illusion, there are a number of considerations to take up regarding their different forms and their manifestations in the various sensory areas.

Pseudo-hallucinations.—Pseudo-hallucinations, also called *psychic* and *apperception hallucinations*, seem to occupy a position midway between imagination and the fully developed form of hallucination. The patient does not have the same conviction of their external reality and may even appreciate their subjective nature while still believing them to be brought about by external agencies, *i. e.*, God or his enemies—as in the case cited by KANDINSKY² of the patient who had a pseudo-hallucination of a lion which appeared to him and laid its forepaws on his shoulder. The patient appreciated that he saw the lion only with his mind's eye and was not afraid as he otherwise would have been, and interpreted the vision as signifying his allegiance to England.

Pseudo-hallucination differs from imagination in the fact that the sensory elements have a greater objectivity and occur inde-

² Kandinsky, V.: *Kritische u. Klinische Betrachtungen im Gebiete d. Sinnestäuschungen* (1885), p. 42, cited by James, William: *The Principles of Psychology*, Vol. II, New York, Henry Holt & Co., 1890.

pendently of the volition of the subject. They, in general, differ from hallucinations in having somewhat less objective reality and further are more often in consistent harmony with the content of consciousness—do not obtrude themselves suddenly and unexpectedly into the field of consciousness as hallucinations often do, particularly auditory hallucinations. They not infrequently involve two or more sensory areas and constitute an element in the so-called dream states.

Hypnagogic Hallucinations.—These are hallucinations which occur in the intermediate state between sleeping and waking. Their principal importance for use lies in the fact that they may readily be mistaken for hallucinations occurring in the waking state. If the possibility of confusion is kept in mind the differentiation can easily be made without trouble. The following case illustrates this condition and the principles of differentiation:

The patient, a middle-aged man, claims to have numerous visions. He has been a spiritualist for years and often sees visions of deceased persons. He describes one occurrence when he had a vision as follows: "I went into the cellarway to fill my lamp, and after filling the lamp I saw the road from Catherine Holliday's north to the county line. There was no significance attached to that, but I sat there and presently I saw a hand; a chubby kind of fleshy hand and the finger nail was grown down over the end of the front finger a little over a quarter of an inch wide, but it grew clear over the end of the finger. I said 'that is a funny finger,' and I sat a second more and I heard the words, Ezra Perkins, and I says, 'why, I know Ezra Perkins.' Presently all was changed and I saw a house, door opening to the east. In one room was a ground floor and a wood bench; then I saw a small room with a painted floor, painted yellow, a small bedstead with no banister or curtains around; on the edge of the bed I saw a small manila cord or rope. Then I looked as though I were passing by buildings and I saw a house. On the north part of the building the blinds seemed to be red and dark; the south part were green and there were flowers in the windows. Then I saw Hiram Brinsmead apparently coming out to the road. Then I saw a small boy with light hair. Then I saw the interior of a room on the east side of the house, a lady reclining on the bed bolstered up on some pillows. She lay quartering across the bed from the southeast to northwest. She had a pink dress on, made plain with the exception of a ruffle or goring piece around the sleeves and the same around the skirt bound around with white, and was reading the Bible.

"That is all there is of that only it is imperfect, but it is worded just as I can recall it."

This description bears on its face certain evidences of the dream state. The sudden shifting of the scene and the following of one event upon another without any apparent reason for the association is characteristic of dreams. Further than this, it is to be noted that the surroundings were favorable to sleep. The per-
cipient starts to fill his lamp during the latter part of the afternoon, he sits down on the landing after it is done (this would indicate that he must have been tired). He is sitting in this position when the visions appear. He must have sat there, at his own estimation, for about twenty minutes, for when he arose he saw it was just getting dark and it was quite light when he sat down. It is also noteworthy in this case that descriptions of visions taken at considerable intervals vary considerably and this variation is most marked in the direction of forgetfulness, the later descriptions showing a tendency to omit many of the facts contained in the former, although there is also a tendency to include certain other instances not at first mentioned. This latter tendency is, however, not so marked. The former tendency is quite characteristic of dreams, as any one can testify to his own satisfaction who has ever had occasion to recall a dream. A dream which on awakening in the morning may be quite well remembered, is in the course of a few days or even hours quite hazy in its outlines, if no efforts have been made in the meantime to recall it. The latter tendency is equally characteristic of amnesic states generally.

In addition to the above reason for considering these visions as having occurred in a dream state of consciousness, the per-
cipient states that at one time, while describing these same visions, that after they had passed he arose and stretched himself, a very common evidence of having been asleep. He denied this, however, afterwards. He also describes one other vision after which he had a "sort of tired feeling" for a minute or two which, however, soon passed away.

Auditory Hallucinations.—When these are elementary, that is, are largely sensory in character with few associations, they are known as *akosms*. Such would be simple sounds, as buzzing, crackling, ringing, and the like. The more complicated hallucinations which are conceived by the patient to be "voices"—verbal auditory hallucinations—are known as *phonemes*.

The "voices" say pleasant or unpleasant things but usually the character of the remarks are consistent throughout and in harmony with the general mental condition of the patient. They may be heard in both ears or in only one ear and be of any timbre. Rarely different voices are heard in the two ears, as in one of my patients who heard Christ talking to her in her right ear and the Devil in her left. The "voices" may be located externally or on the contrary be heard coming from different parts of the body, *i. e.*, the "epigastric voice." Sometimes the patients, when closely questioned, will say that they do not hear any sound, any spoken word, but as described by one of my hallucinated cases, "it is more as if they conversed with me directly through my mind."

More obscure conditions are those in which the patient believes that his thoughts become audible, that he can hear his thoughts before he can speak them.

In patients suffering from auditory hallucinations, ear disease resulting in various degrees of deafness is common.

Visual Hallucinations.—Elementary hallucinations, in which the sensory element is maximal and the associational element minimal—*photomata*—occur as flashes of light, sparks, colors, and the like. All degrees of elaboration occur from these simple conditions to the most complex visions. Hallucinations of sight are more apt to be pleasant than those of hearing, but they too are frequently disagreeable, often terrifying, as visions of hell and of all sorts of noxious creatures so common in the various deliria. Visual hallucinations occur not infrequently in the blind.

Hallucinations of Taste and Smell.—Hallucinations of these two senses are quite apt to be associated and are almost uniformly disagreeable, as in one of my cases, a middle-aged woman, who claimed she smelled and tasted the blood of people who were killed in the hospital. The blood was smelled when the meals were being cooked and tasted at meal time in the food. Poison is frequently complained of as being tasted in the food and noxious and poisonous vapors are often smelled.

Haptic Hallucinations.—The various special senses located in the skin—touch, pain, heat and cold—may be the subject of hallucinations. The most common are indefinite disturbances of the nature of paresthesia, hallucinations of animals crawling over the skin (deliria), or under the skin, particularly at the finger tips

(cocainism). Hallucinations of touch are not uncommon, but are usually associated with other disorders of perception.

Hallucinations of the Organic Sensations.—The most common of these are peculiar and often indescribable sensations coming from the internal organs and giving rise to such beliefs as: the bones are broken, the brain dried up, an immense tapeworm is coiled up in the lungs, the bowels are stopped up, there is no stomach, and the like.

Disturbances in the realm of the sexual sensations also belong under this head and lead to such ideas in women as that they are violated while they sleep, and in men that their organs are abused and their semen drawn off.

Kinesthetic or Motor Hallucinations.—These are sensations of movement of some sort. The sensations from muscles, joints and tendons may be involved, as may also the static sense, owing to labyrinthine disturbance. Disturbances in these sensory areas give rise to hallucinations leading to the belief that the body has undergone a change in position. One patient complained that men came to her room nights, carried her away, subjected her to improper and indecent treatment and then brought her back.

A more common motor hallucination is the verbal motor hallucination. Patients who complain that their thoughts are audible may be brought to this belief by feeling their lips move as in speech, and inferring that they are involuntarily speaking or being made to speak.

Reflex Hallucinations.—This variety of hallucination is based upon secondary sensations which are sensations arising in one sensory field when the stimulus has been applied in another sensory field. Thus stimulation of the eye may produce sensations of sound, stimulation of the taste bulbs may produce odors, etc., etc. The following cases illustrate these conditions:

Mrs. J., æt. 25 years, in good general health, complains of naso-pharyngeal catarrh and tickling throat, causing cough. She has a deflected septum and enlarged lingual tonsils. Operation upon these and subsequent application of ordinary styptics have been accompanied by the odor of almonds located on the side of the nose.

Mrs. B., æt. 28 years, complains of having a bad odor in her breath which seems most acute to her in her nose. Her friends tell her that they cannot detect any unpleasant odor. She seeks special medical advice because she appreciates this odor and suspects friends of being too

courteous to tell her of it. She is in good general health with slight hacking cough and tendency to clear throat.

Examination shows the nose to be in normal condition throughout, the nasal vaults are unusually accessible, thus leaving no doubt as to their healthy condition. Pharynx and larynx normal.

The nostrils were alternately plugged, the lips closed and air from each nostril and the mouth tested separately. Not the slightest odor could be detected, though she appreciated it herself as being very disagreeable. Two small lingual tonsils were more closely examined and upon the posterior side of each a minute morsel of food was found. This was removed, but on examination was found to have absolutely no odor. It had not undergone sufficient change to disguise its character—it was bread. Shortly after its removal the bad odor grew less. Both tonsils were at once removed and the patient sent home. At the end of two days all odor had disappeared. At the end of four days there was still no odor, but it was induced by touching the neighborhood of the tonsils by a small pledget of cotton carrying a weak solution of citric acid. At another time it was induced by a very weak faradic current. The odor had not reappeared at the end of six weeks except by stimulating the taste goblets, and the patient was entirely relieved of the hacking cough.

This latter case was truly hallucinated by a secondary sensation, although she was not insane. It can readily be seen, however, how such a phenomenon occurring in a predisposed individual or in one already over the border line might soon form the focus of well-marked persecutory delusions.

The phenomena of secondary sensations, the so-called sound photisms, light phonisms, pain photisms, etc., have been known for a long time and are not particularly infrequent. BLEULER and LEHMANN³ found them present in one form or another in seventy-six persons out of a total of five hundred and ninety-six, *i. e.*, twelve and one-half per cent. In most all of the cases that have come to my attention, the primary and secondary perceptions are both present in consciousness, and the patient usually has not serious difficulty in distinguishing the false perception.

The following case, however, will illustrate how these secondary sensations may become true hallucinations:

D. C., a young woman admitted to the hospital with an acute psychosis of the confusional type with dream-like hallucinations, both visual and auditory. She saw all sorts of visual images, processions of soldiers

³ Cited by Hyslop, Theo. B.: *Mental Physiology*. Philadelphia, P. Blakiston's Son & Co., 1895.

and the like, and also heard voices. After recovery said that the figures she saw were in motion and the principal direction of their motion was downward, so that she had to strain to keep them up in the visual field; also saw patches of light which moved by preference to the right.

Examination shows vision 20-20 for both eyes, with slight astigmatism and slight photophobia, with somewhat abnormally red retinal reflex. Septum slightly deflected to left into middle meatus. Right middle turbinated, is bulbous and impinging on septum. There is a sub-acute catarrhal naso-pharyngitis, probably following diphtheria, which she has had three times. Ears show slight retraction of drum membrane with slightly shortened cone of light in each side.

Stimulation of the retina by having patient look at light of an Argand burner produced sound as of ringing bells, which lasted forty-two seconds after the light was turned off and eyes shut. In trying this experiment again the sound developed in twenty-seven seconds after the stimulus was applied, and had ceased in twenty-two seconds after it was withdrawn.

In this case the motions of the visions would indicate that they were due to *muscæ volitantes*. Particularly is this indicated by the effort required to keep the images within the visual field. There is present, however, a well-marked catarrhal condition of the pharynx, with abnormalities of the septum and right middle turbinated which have resulted in a moderate grade of middle ear disease. There are also present on experimentation light phonisms.

The sensory falsifications probably took their origin in the extremely sensitive eye from the misinterpretation of floating bodies in the vitreous, the patient seeing these bodies against the light walls and ceiling of the room as she lay upon her back. The constant stimulation of these sensitive eyes brought about the light phonisms which were interpreted as voices, the auditory apparatus being in an especially susceptible state, due to the summation of stimuli from the abnormal end organ.

Many kinds of secondary sensations have been described, any one of which may quite possibly give rise in a disordered mind to hallucinations, thus not only sound photisms, light phonisms and similar combinations in the regions of the special senses are known, but the more obscure region of the *cœnesthesis* is sometimes involved, and GRUBER has described colored temperature, colored movement, colored resistance, movement hearing, temperature hearing, resistance hearing and many other combinations equally complicated.

Clouding of Consciousness.—The process of perception, as we have seen, is dependent upon sensations coming from without, which, however, must be of sufficient strength to force their way into consciousness and wake up, as it were, the remains of former sensations with which they become associated. If sensory stimuli have not this strength they may be said to be *inadequate*. We are constantly beset on all sides by such inadequate stimuli. The presence of my clothes on the different parts of my body ordinarily cause no appreciable sensations and thus give rise to no perceptions. The many trifling noises going on about me while I am absorbed in writing these lines are not heard. The strength of the several sensory stimuli is not sufficient to cross the *threshold of consciousness*, their *threshold value*, as it is called, is too low to result in perception. In various diseases and conditions the threshold value of sensations is greatly altered. This is very marked in certain of the deliria, for example, delirium tremens. In this disease we find the patient wholly occupied with his terrifying visions and quite oblivious to the outside world of realities. Loud sounds fail to attract his attention, the nurse comes and goes without interrupting the course of his delirium. Sensory stimuli of ordinary strength, or even more than ordinary strength, fail to cross the threshold of his consciousness and cause perception. If, however, the patient be taken firmly by the shoulders and held or even mildly shaken while a question is practically yelled at him, we may find that he will give a perfectly lucid and correct answer. The strength of the sensations has been sufficiently increased, the resistance has been broken down, perception takes place.

This condition of clouding of consciousness may exist in any degree, from a scarcely noticeable departure from clear consciousness to actual coma, and as we can readily see must be the cause of very imperfect perceptions of the environment. Ordinary stimuli are not appreciated at all, while those that have sufficient force usually only give rise to perceptions for the moment and are never adequately assimilated. Thus we find this condition prominently in evidence in the various deliria, where it is usually associated with disturbed affects, disorders of the train of thought, and hallucinations.

This can perhaps be better understood if we will study some

of the characteristics of consciousness at any given moment. At such a moment there are numerous sensory stimuli which have forced themselves over the threshold of consciousness, and, as it were, are contending for supremacy—for recognition. All, however, cannot be equally clearly recognized, so it comes that one arouses clear perception while the others are only faintly perceived. While I am writing these words the word I am at the moment penning is perceived clearly, while the other words, the books lying about me on the table, the striking of the clock in the adjoining room, and many other sensations are only indefinitely, hazily perceived. The most clearly perceived sensory stimuli are said to occupy the focal point of consciousness, while the other sensations have only a marginal value. This can be better understood by reference to Fig. 3—where the particular moment of consciousness is represented by a wave—*wave of consciousness*. The apex of the wave would then be the focal point of clearest perception, the base of the wave the threshold of consciousness and sensations crossing this threshold can be seen to have any degree of clearness as they approach the focal point. The height they reach on the wave would then be a measure of their intensity for that particular moment of consciousness.

Dream States.—This term is applied to certain conditions because of the resemblance they have to conditions of dream consciousness. The mind is occupied by numerous dreamy ideas,

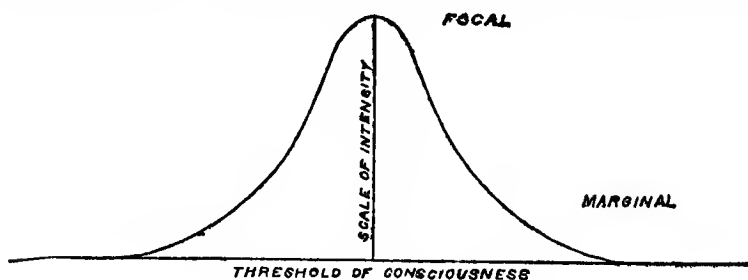


FIG. 3. A wave of consciousness.

and usually also by multiform hallucinations which may take the form of visions. Hallucinations often occur in more than one of the sensory territories contemporaneously, but when this is the case they harmonize and are consistent with each other. For

example, the patient who is terrified at the flames she sees near her bed, feels also their heat. Clouding may be present, the threshold value of sensations being raised so that no impressions of ordinary strength reach consciousness, the result being that the patient may be quite oblivious of his surroundings. Unlike the normal dream state, however, psychomotor reactions occur corresponding to the content of consciousness.

Disorientation.—Orientation implies the correct apprehending of the environment, and one is said to be fully oriented when they understand their own position and relation with reference to the different aspects of their environment. These aspects are three, viz.: temporal, spatial and personal. *Temporal orientation*, then, would imply correct answers to such questions as, in what year were you born? what year is this? what day is this? *Spatial orientation* would imply correct answers to, what city do you live in? on what street? *Personal orientation* would imply a correct knowledge of who the individuals were with whom the patient came in daily contact, their official positions, their names, etc. Disorientation is the reverse of this condition and implies a lack of apprehension of these three aspects of the environment either singly or together.

DISORDERS OF THE CONTENT OF THOUGHT.

Delusion.—A delusion is a false belief, but as such is not necessarily evidence of a psychosis. Many false beliefs have no pathological significance whatever. A man may believe that to-day is Thursday when in fact it is Friday. That is a false belief while it lasts, but has only the significance of a mistake. The belief of certain savages that dreams represent the wanderings of their disembodied spirit we know to be false, but not an evidence of mental disease. False beliefs or delusions, then, may be either sane or insane, and it is for us to endeavor to distinguish what constitutes a belief first as false and then, as such, what characterizes it as insane. There are three main characteristics of insane delusions in general. First: they are as a rule very evidently not true to facts, highly improbable, even manifestly impossible often to the extent of being bizarre. Such, for instance, are the delusions of great wealth, of royal lineage, and those of a certain class of patients who believe that they have no stomach, no brains,

even that they have no head. Second: they cannot be corrected by an appeal to reason; not originating in experience they cannot be corrected by an appeal to experience. It is impossible to argue the patient out of his insane beliefs. Third: they are out of harmony with the individual's education and surroundings. The sick Fijian lying upon his back and crying for his soul to come back to him is but exemplifying the belief of the race that sickness is due to the soul, or a part of it, leaving the body. Should we find a modern American, who had had the usual public school advantages, acting thus we would be justified in supposing him unbalanced.

It sometimes happens, however, that a false belief does not show any of these characteristics and yet may be an insane delusion. A woman who says her husband is untrue to her has not voiced a belief which has on its face any evidences of impossibility, and with no knowledge of the facts it cannot even be said to be improbable, and while not susceptible to the test by argument, it is certainly not out of harmony with the individual's education and surroundings. In such cases it becomes important to study the origin of the belief, to find out upon what sort of foundation it is reared. If we find that it resulted from the patient having awakened on several occasions during the night and found her husband's legs cold, and having reasoned from this that he had been out of bed to keep an appointment with his paramour in an adjoining room we will at once have no difficulty in stamping the delusion as insane because of being founded upon and constructed of ideas which do not logically or reasonably lead to the conclusions reached.

Delusions may be classified for our purpose into *fixed* and *changeable*, *systematized* and *unsystematized*, *endogenous* and *exogenous*.

A *fixed delusion* is one which seems to be firmly imbedded in the mind and is continuously adhered to by the patient, while *changeable delusions* are constantly changing and giving place one to another.

An *unsystematized delusion* does not enter into organic combinations with the other facts of consciousness, but stands apart and seems not to have been assimilated. While it may be fixed, it exercises no special control over the patient's conduct; he seems

to rest with its statement alone unable to substantiate his position by cogent argument or example. 'A patient who believes that all the bones of his body are broken, but nevertheless goes about his affairs as usual, has an unsystematized delusion.

A *systematized delusion*, on the other hand, is not only assimilated and associated with the other facts of conscious experience but forms a motive power for conduct. It is supported by reasons, by arguments, and by appeals to experience, it is acted upon as if it were an actual fact, and finally it may so reach out its influence by association with all the conscious experiences of the individual that the whole life of the patient is centered about and becomes secondary to it. The patient with a systematized delusion of persecution regulates his whole life in order to avoid his persecutors. The food is carefully tasted for poison and perhaps discarded, the bed he sleeps in must be insulated to prevent electric currents being applied to him while he sleeps, the key-hole and all cracks stopped up so that noxious vapors cannot be injected through them. If the patient is asked for an explanation of this conduct he is ready with interminable reasons and appeals to experience while his arguments are woven together with much ingenuity and no little logic. His delusion is systematized.

The distinction of *endogenous* and *exogenous* is thought by FRIEDMANN⁴ to be of greater importance than the distinction of systematized and unsystematized.

The *endogenous delusion* is characterized by clear logic, contact with reality, taking its origin from actual occurrences, and the important distinction that it represents a delusional unfolding and elaboration of the normal thought processes of the patient. In other words there has been no marked change in the personality, the individual is the same sort of person as he was before the growth of the delusion. The delusion seems to be an abnormal expression of his character and quite characteristically after recovery from the psychosis the patient cannot be made to understand the delusional character of his experiences—he lacks insight.

The *exogenous delusion* on the other hand is engrafted, as it were, upon the personality and exists there parasitically forming no part of it. These patients, if they recover, cannot possibly

⁴Friedmann, M.: Studies in Paranoia, Nerv. and Ment. Dis. Monograph Series, No. 2.

understand how they could have entertained such ideas as their delusions.

A further classification of delusions is based upon WERNICKE's classification of concepts. It is a very valuable and practical one from a clinical standpoint. WERNICKE classifies concepts as to whether they relate to the outside world, including other persons; whether they relate to the individual's own personality, or whether they relate to the individual's own body and speaks of the psychoses which involve these three orders of concepts respectively as *allopsychoses*, *autopsychoses*, and *somatopsychoses*. A person with a delusion of persecution would be suffering from a disturbance of his *allopsychic* consciousness; if he had a delusion that he had committed the unpardonable sin his *autopsychic* consciousness would be involved, and finally if he believed his intestines to be stopped up, the disorder would be in his *somatopsychic* consciousness. It is quite possible, even common, to have combinations of these varieties, and indeed all of them in the same patient, so the patient might be said to be suffering from an *allo-auto-somatopsychosis*.

Before leaving the subject of delusions it is well to devote a few words to a popular misconception regarding them. If the psychoses are conditions arising as a result of mal-adjustment between individual and environment, we see how absurd some of the views are which grew out of the conceptions of the old "faculty psychology," and neglected to consider the mind as a mechanism of adjustment, all parts of which were interrelated with one another. Perhaps the most widely held of the erroneous beliefs about the psychoses which continues to evidence the influence of the old psychology is the belief in a monomania, or, as it is sometimes referred to, a partial insanity. The belief, in other words, that a person may be insane on one subject and sane on all others. It is true that we may have a psychosis developed about a centralized event and fairly well circumscribed in its relations to that event but it is only by taking the view that an idea is a thing apart without organic connection with the personality of the individual that we can conceive of a person with a single wrong, delusional idea, yet perfectly all right every other way. The formation of an idea is dependent upon too many processes and cannot spring into being independently of them and if it is itself pathological we

must look to the mechanism of its growth for its explanation. MERCIER⁵ puts this very well when he says:

"The delusion is not an isolated disorder. It is merely the superficial indication of a deep-seated and widespread disorder. As a small island is but the summit of an immense mountain rising from the floor of the sea, the portion of the mountain in sight bearing but an insignificant ratio to the mass whose summit it is, so a delusion is merely the conspicuous part of a mental disease, extending, it may be, to the very foundations of the mind, but the greater portion of which is not apparent without careful sounding. Precisely how far this disorder extends, beyond the region of mind occupied by the delusion, it is never possible to say; but it is certain that the delusion itself is the least part of the disorder, and, for this reason, no deluded person ought ever to be regarded as fully responsible for any act that he may do. The connection between the act and the delusion may be wholly undiscoverable, as the shallow between two neighboring islands may be entirely hidden by the intervening sea. But nevertheless, if the sea stood a hundred fathoms lower, the two islands would be two mountain peaks connected by a stretch of low country; and, if the hidden springs of conduct were laid bare, the delusion and the act might be found to have a common basis."

Hyper-quantivalent Ideas.—In speaking of ideas we use the term *quantivalence* to indicate the relative value which the idea has in the consciousness of the patient. Under ordinary circumstances when the mind is functioning normally the quantivalence of ideas is normal, but it not infrequently happens that owing to pathological processes or abnormal environment that certain ideas attain a degree of importance altogether unwarranted. Under such circumstances we speak of the ideas as being *hyper-quantivalent*. This condition is characteristically seen in morbid suspicions, delusions of a persecutory character, founded upon a very slight basis of facts, as in litigants or soldiers who have been rebuked, and similar conditions occurring in paranoid states. These conditions may arise upon a comparatively normal basis in persons who are subjected to abnormal environmental conditions, particularly conditions which require living in comparative soli-

⁵ Mercier, Charles: Criminal Responsibility. Oxford, 1905.

tude or in close association with a few people to the exclusion of all others. These outward conditions are often seen in prisons and in secluded army posts.

In order that the mind may continue functioning in a normal manner it is necessary, among other things, that its contact with an environment of which other minds form a part should be continuous and of a sufficiently varied character to keep the process of idea association active and from getting into grooves. Under normal circumstances a slighting remark made to an individual is perhaps received by a retort in the same vein and the normal rush of ideas which an active life necessitates soon drowns out or submerges this particular idea, so that it has not the opportunity to constantly recur to the discomfort of the individual. It assumes its proper relation to the idea content of consciousness, the outward facts of which it is the inner representation are seen entirely in their proper perspective. There has been no distortion of the normal quantivalence of the idea. Under abnormal environmental conditions, in which the patient leads a desultory mental life, where each day is much like the preceding and there is little variety of idea association necessitated by daily duties, there is nothing to prevent such an idea from recurring repeatedly to the individual, and because of this recurrence, and because it occupies so frequently the inner consciousness, the outward events to which it corresponds are seen in a distorted perspective. The idea has assumed a position in consciousness totally unwarranted by its real importance. It has become hyper-quantivalent.

Under such conditions the soldier who has been reprimanded broods over his disgrace until what was in reality a small affair has grown by constant nursing into a matter of tremendous importance: the veteran who has been denied a pension, the litigant who has lost a law suit, have been greatly wronged and cry aloud for justice. The narrow-minded malcontents who see life from a distorted and intensely personal viewpoint are the favorable subjects for the development of hyper-quantivalent ideas.

Fixed Ideas.—The term *fixed idea* is usually applied to these conditions and as a term designates them very well. The fixed idea must be hyper-quantivalent. If a distinction were to be made it might be made on the basis of the content of the idea. Thus hyper-quantivalence is usually spoken of when the idea has

its origin in the allopsychic consciousness. The litigant pursuing case after case to obtain his rights, or the discharged employe making repeated appeals for investigation are examples. The term fixed idea, on the other hand, is used more often for conditions arising in the somatopsychic or autopsychic field of consciousness. Thus the rather timid young man who feels his pulse and discovers that it is too rapid and perhaps somewhat irregular acquires, as a result, a fixed idea that he has organic disease of the heart. The woman whose husband has recently died and who is harassed by the belief that he might have lived had she given him a certain medicine has a fixed idea.

In both of these conditions, however, the patient feels the idea to be the outgrowth or reaction of his normal self and not in any way abnormal or an obtrusion from without as in the cases to follow.

Obsessions.—By obsessions we mean ideas, emotions, impulses, which occupy consciousness persistently and irrespective of the desires of the subject, often intruding themselves at inopportune times and occupying the field of consciousness to the exclusion of other ideas. They are sometimes spoken of as besetments, as they come unbidden and refuse to go at the will of the subject. They exist with clear consciousness and are often fully comprehended by the patient at their true value.

In the mild forms they are quite common and occur not infrequently in normal persons, usually as a result of fatigue. We are all familiar with the phenomena of the constant recurrence to the mind of a tune that was heard the night before at the opera; it invades consciousness to the extent of actually interfering with the transactions of the usual business of the day. Then there is the somewhat more aggravated case of the person who goes to bed but is worried for fear he may not have turned the gas-cock quite shut; he tries to banish the idea, turns over to go to sleep but it will not go and finally in sheer desperation he gets up, and, satisfying himself that the gas is actually turned off, returns to bed and goes to sleep.

The commonest and best known of the obsessions are the so-called *phobias* or fears. These fears are usually very specific, referring to some special class of objects or set of conditions and receive names accordingly. Thus we have *misophobia* (fear of

dirt); *metallophobia* (fear of metal, such as door knobs, money, etc.); *agoraphobia* (fear of wide or open spaces); *claustrophobia* (fear of narrow or closed spaces); *pyrophobia* (fear of fire); and so on indefinitely. Patients suffering from these obsessions are often completely dominated by them under the conditions that call them into existence. The patient with agoraphobia crosses the street in fear and trembling, or perhaps cannot summon sufficient courage to cross it at all unless some one is with him, while on the contrary the claustrophobic cannot endure a small or closed room, but must have the doors open, or if in a crowded hall is suddenly seized with fear and forced to make a hasty exit.

Of not infrequent occurrence also are the obsessions of doubt. These *doubts* may arise about anything, even the simplest acts of everyday life. A patient upon retiring may be seized with a doubt as to whether he turned the gas off or locked the door in the main hall, and is forced to get up and go and see, only to be seized again by the same doubt when he returns to bed; another, having written several letters, is forced to open all of them to make sure that the right ones are in each envelope. Still others have doubts about religious or metaphysical matters. So we have doubters who question the problem of a future life or the existence of things as they appear to the senses, etc.

If the actions which the obsessions tend to initiate are resisted the tendency becomes more and more imperative until yielding is forced and finally these patients, although fully understanding their condition and the abnormality of their ideas, may pass their lives in a continual round of actions made necessary by their obsessions.

Because of this element in the obsessed state that impels to action these conditions are often spoken of as *imperative ideas* or *imperative concepts*.

Autochthonous Ideas.—These ideas come into the patient's mind like foreign bodies, as it were, and not as a result of the usual methods of association. The patient feels that he has strange thoughts, thoughts that are not his thoughts and usually interprets their occurrence as being due to outside, usually malevolent, influences. The thoughts are forced on him by hypnotism, thought transference, by his enemies. Bad thoughts are thus placed in his mind and often he is forced to act as a result of

them although he does not want to and proclaims that it is all against his will.

DISORDERS OF THE TRAIN OF THOUGHT.

Flight of Ideas.—In the normal process of thinking our thoughts are directed consistently to a well-defined end—the *goal idea*—and all other ideas fall into a subordinate position until this is attained. The course of the train of thought is held true by a guiding idea⁶ (*Obervorstellung*).

In flight of ideas the patient either has no guiding idea or else at once loses it so that there is no consistent effort directed towards attaining the goal idea, and the thought therefore wanders here and there under the influence of chance associations. As a result the train of thought instead of progressing changes direction frequently, returns upon itself, and never reaches any logical end. The various ideas are not, however, incoherent—they do not fail to be connected one with another, although it may be quite impossible at times to see just what their connection is. If the associations are external, that is, originate in the surroundings, it is usually quite possible to place them; when, however, they are internal, that is, originate in the patient's mind, it may be quite impossible to conceive what they may be. An example will illustrate these various conditions:

"Do you know I was kidnapped to be sent here twice. I saw a mock funeral of me before I left home. This was done because I am a great inventor. The pope of Rome is the greatest human being in the universe. He is the head of the Catholic Church. My head (association of the word head in two different meanings) is good and sound, and I am certainly not insane. Do you hear the ticking of the clock? (External association.) It says, 'call the little heifer, the heifer is sick.' Did you ever see the gloves veterinary surgeons use when they doctor sick cows? (Internal association.) How would you like to be a veterinary surgeon? Say! what are you keeping me here for anyhow? I want to go home. (Here he was asked how he slept at night.) I have slept excellently; that is because I am of such a strong constitution. The constitution of the United States (association as above with the word head—probably the association is in large part at least a sound or—as it is called—a *clang association*) was signed by Thomas Jefferson. He was just a man, but he was not the inventor I am."

While there are many places in the example where the con-

⁶Liepmann, H.: *Über Ideenflucht*, 1904.

necting link is missing—probably because it was an association formed entirely within the patient's mind—still the connection can be made out in a sufficient number of instances to establish the characteristics of the train of thought. One of the principal characteristics of this type of the train of thought is its great liability to change of direction by external association, as for example, the ticking of the clock in the above stenogram. This quality is known as *distractibility*. Any sensory impression is liable to be the starting point of idea-association, so that these patients' trains of thought may be turned at will, almost, by such devices as shaking a bunch of keys before them, saying some word loudly, showing them a newspaper, or in other words, momentarily distracting their attention.

✕ GOAL IDEA

This condition of flight of ideas outwardly appears to be an expression of an increased rapidity of the flow of idea-association. However, this is not so, as an example will illustrate. The low C tuning-fork used in testing hearing vibrates 128 times per second. If the amplitude of vibration which, although it is readily appreciable, is only a small fraction of an inch, be multiplied by 128 the resulting distance would be but a few inches at most. Let the fork be moved this distance in one second's time and the motion will be seen to be not fast by any means but slow. So in flight of ideas if the rapidity of movement in a given direction by idea-association be tested, the release of ideas will be found to be slow. Like the tuning-fork, how-

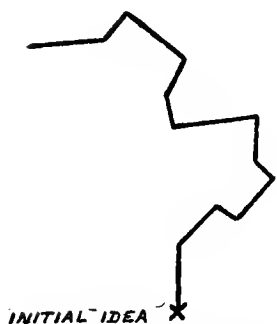


FIG. 4. Flight of ideas.

ever, there occurs a rapid change of direction.

Tests of reaction time in this condition show that it is abnormally slow and this can be readily elicited by giving the patient a word such as cat, fur, glass, or similar simple word, and asking

him to write down as rapidly as he can either all words he can think of rhyming with the key-word or all words that come to his mind in association with it. The slowness with which these tests are executed and the meagerness of the result will be in marked contrast to the apparent wealth of ideas and facility of their association and release.

Circumstantiality.—Circumstantiality, although sometimes superficially resembling flight of ideas, is quite different from it in its completely developed form. Although there is a frequent change of direction of the train of thought the goal idea is maintained and ultimately reached, and although there are numerous digressions as each circumstance in the narrative is elaborated and explained the original pathway is returned to and the general direction maintained. Thus a patient in telling about a cane in her possession upon which a ribbon is tied for ornament must tell how she came to have the idea of decorating the cane, who else in the neighborhood had such a cane decorated, what they had said to her and she to them about it, how she had taken the ribbon off and now had put it in two boxes in the house, how the ribbons had become faded, where she got the boxes, who gave them to her, and what their color was. All these details must be entered into before she can proceed with the thread of her narrative.

This condition is often found in a moderately developed form in women and has no special significance other than showing a lack of appreciation of the relative values of ideas. In the senile, where there is some mental impairment, the goal idea may be quite lost sight of in the mass of detail and the resemblance to flight is then much more marked, still there is a more marked tendency to maintain the general direction of the train of thought.

Retardation.—Retardation, *difficulty of thinking*, as it is often called to distinguish it from psychomotor retardation, shortly to be described, is a decided slowness in the elaboration of ideas, the patient's stock of ideas do not seem to be available or accessible, ideas come slowly to the mind, there is great difficulty in forming judgments, in coming to conclusions, in reaching decisions which is felt by the patient as an *inadequacy* in dealing with mental problems. This condition is expressed by the patient in great slowness of speech, a long interval elapsing before an answer is given to a question or something done as requested (*initial retard-*

ation), and when the question is answered or the act done it is done very slowly and deliberately (*executive retardation*).

If such a patient be asked to count from one to twenty, beginning at a given signal and counting as fast as possible, it may be several seconds before he starts, and while a normal person should do this in two or three seconds, he may take often twenty, thirty, or even never finish at all.

Paralysis of Thought.—A complete absence of all internally initiated conscious processes. Impressions from without are not assimilated, form no associations, leave no traces. Mental life is in abeyance or abolished.

DISORDERS OF VOLITION (WILL).

Decreased Psychomotor Activity.—This symptom corresponds in the motor sphere to difficulty of thinking in the psychic sphere. Whereas in difficulty of thinking we might say that there was a slowness in the liberation of ideas in psychomotor retardation, we can say there is a slowness in the liberation of voluntary motor impulses. The patient's movements are slow and deliberate, and we find here the same distinction of initial and executive retardation. This is a prominent symptom of depressive melancholia.

Increased Psychomotor Activity.—This is just the opposite of the above condition, and is due to an abnormally facile release of voluntary motor impulses. It manifests itself in great restlessness, constant activity, even to the point of violence and destructiveness, and, like flight of ideas, the various acts are not consistently directed to a definite goal but to this and that end under the influence of chance associations. This is a prominent symptom of mania.

Impulsion.—Impulsions or impulses are tendencies to act which are more or less uncontrollable, often absolutely so. The act may be of any kind and in this class belong the so-called *manias*, such as *kleptomania* (a morbid impulse to steal), *pyromania* (a morbid impulse to set things on fire), *dipsomania* (an impulse to drink), etc. These impulses appear without cause, the patient is restless until they are carried out, and their accomplishment is accompanied by a feeling of relief.

Compulsion.—Closely allied to the impulses are the so-called *compulsions*. The compulsions, like the obsessions, already de-

scribed, are felt by the patient to be pathological, to be forced upon him, as it were. The impulse of the dipsomaniac, like the fixed idea, is conceived by the patient as originating within and being a part of him, a natural development of his character, perhaps while the compulsion is often directed to the doing of some act distinctly abhorrent to the patient, such for instance, as murder, and he may take elaborate precautions to protect others or even have himself locked up to insure against its possibility.

If these compulsions are resisted or interfered with they give rise to certain symptoms which in marked cases constitute a veritable crisis. The patient feels weak, trembles, becomes dizzy, perspires, and finally yields to find that at once all these symptoms disappear.

Stereotypy.—In stereotypy the voluntary impulse once set in motion tends to continue or repeat itself in the same way indefinitely, thus we have three forms of stereotypy, viz., stereotypy of *attitude*, of *movement*, and of *speech*.

In stereotypy of *attitude* the patient tends to maintain a particular, usually peculiar, position, such as standing in the corner, one arm raised, lying on the bed with the head hanging over the side. The muscles are usually tense and the patient resists attempts to alter his position.

Stereotypy of *movement* manifests itself in the continuous repetition of some movement, usually meaningless, such as swaying back and forth, nodding, wrinkling the forehead or the like. When the word stereotypy is used without qualification this variety is referred to. When these peculiarities are constant and characteristic of the patient, particularly if they occur in connection with his ordinary conduct, such as peculiarities of walking, eating at table, or in speaking, they are usually spoken of as *mannerisms*.

Stereotypy of *speech* shows itself in the constant repetition of the same, usually senseless, phrases, and is more commonly known as *verbigeration*.

The persistence of a motor impulse, whether in action, speech or writing, and commonly expressing itself by the iteration and reiteration of the same word or phrase, generally in an attempt to answer a question, is called *perseveration*. It may not be at all senseless, but simply show the tendency of a motor impulse once

generated to hold the field, as in the following letter written to me by a young epileptic.

"May 21st, 1907. Supt. Wm. A. White I would like to have a talk with you about matters my papa advise me to do. How can I get to see you? will you come to see me or can I come to see you? I would like very much to see you Supt. Wm. A. White I am well but I want to see you so I can have a talk with you about matters that my papa advise me to do I am feeling all right now than I did some years ago but I would like to see you and have a talk with you about matters that my Papa advise me to do and I would be very thankful to you Supt. Wm. A. White if I could get to see you please do it for me so I can have a Talk with you about matters my papa advised me to do."

Negativism.⁷—Negativism is a peculiar condition which is manifested by the patient not doing what is expected of him (passive negativism) or doing the opposite of what he is requested to do (active negativism). Every attempt to get the patient to do anything results in failure with perhaps certain signs of irritation or the release of a motor impulse the exact opposite of that required for the performance of the act.

Patients exhibiting this symptom not only do the opposite of what is requested of them but exhibit negativistic tendencies toward the promptings of normal desires. They do not yield to the inclination to empty the bladder or rectum, so that these organs often become overloaded with disastrous results. They often also permit saliva to accumulate in large quantities in the mouth, even until it has undergone putrefactive changes.

Suggestibility.—Suggestibility may be said to be the exact opposite of negativism. The patient's reactions are determined by impressions or suggestions derived from others. It is manifested in various ways. In extreme cases the patient resembles a lay figure; the limbs can be placed in any position and are there retained indefinitely. This condition is designated as *cataplexy*, or *flexibilitas cerea* (waxy flexibility). Often suggestibility is manifested by the patient repeating words or phrases said in his presence—*echolalia*—or actions done before him, such as taking out the watch, putting the hands to the face—*echopraxia*. This method of reaction in which personal initiative seems to be absolutely in abeyance is often spoken of as automatic—the symptom

⁷ Bleuler: The Theory of Schizophrenic Negativism (trans. by White), Jour. Nerv. and Ment. Dis., Jan., Feb., Mch., Ap., 1912, and reprinted as No. 11 of this series.

is known as *automatism*. When the automatic responses are to commands then the term *command automatism* is used.

Stupor.—Stupor is a condition in which there is usually a profound disturbance of consciousness, but the feature which gives it its distinctive outward character is psychomotor inhibition—voluntary motion is to a greater or less extent in abeyance. The mental state in the different varieties of stupor differs greatly from profound clouding of consciousness to almost clear consciousness, as in the catatonic stupor of dementia precox. To this latter condition, in which the patient, although quite immobile, is still fully alive to what is going on about him, the term *pseudo-stupor* has been given.

DISORDERS OF THE EMOTIONS.

Exaltation.—Exaltation is a condition of morbid emotional elation, a feeling of happiness and well-being not warranted by the condition of the patient or his surroundings. It is one of the most prominent symptoms of mania, and is here usually combined with increased psychomotor activity. With exaltation is often associated a marked degree of irritability with sometimes outbursts of angry states.

Depression.—Depression is the opposite of exaltation. It is a morbid feeling of unhappiness not warranted by the condition of the patient or his surroundings. It is one of the most prominent symptoms of melancholia, and in that variety known as affective or involution melancholia often gives rise to a state of *anxiety* with marked precordial distress, difficulty of breathing, and some motor agitation.

Emotional Deterioration.—A condition of poverty of the emotions manifesting itself by indifference and occurring in conditions of mental deterioration, particularly seen in dementia precox, paresis and senility.

Morbid Anger.—This symptom, except as due to transient conditions of irritability, as in mania, is seen most often in the defective. It is often a marked feature in idiots and imbeciles, constituting them very dangerous patients, but is also seen among the higher defectives, the morally deficient, and is here often combined with great cruelty.

DISORDERS OF MEMORY.

Amnesia.—Amnesia is loss of memory. The loss may be *circumscribed*—only for certain things or extending over a very definite space of time—or it may be more *general*. Loss of memory extending over definite periods of time is usually the result of illness or injury. In such cases the amnesia usually has a fairly definite beginning with the delirium of the illness or the occurrence of the injury and usually also a fairly definite ending. It is known as *retrograde amnesia*. If, on the contrary, the amnesia is continuous, the patient seems to be no longer able to store up memories, as is so typically seen in the senile, the amnesia is *anterograde amnesia*.

Hypermnnesia.—An exaggerated degree of retentiveness, often seen in the remarkable memory for details in some cases of chronic delusional insanity, who seem to remember every detail in their lives as bearing on their delusional system.

Paramnesia.—This is a disorder of memory in which events are remembered which never happened. An example of this was afforded by a patient who stopped me while I was going through the ward and told me that, while she was dining in another ward, I had entered the dining-room and informed her that any time her satchel was ready she could go. As a matter of fact, I had not even seen the patient upon the occasion she referred to. When these false memories are projected into the past and associated with delusions, often of an explanatory nature, as occurs in paranoia, the symptom is known as *retrospective falsification of memory*.

DISORDERS OF ATTENTION.

Aprosexia.—This is the condition of inability to fix the attention for any length of time in one direction and is seen typically in mania. Here the attention wanders rapidly from one thing to another and as a result perception is inadequate. The different elements of the environment are not attended to sufficiently to insure their correct perception. This insufficiency of perception gives rise to the maniac's defects of orientation most frequently seen with respect to persons, some slight resemblance being hit upon and the person mistaken for someone else, a former acquaintance or associate.

Enfeeblement of the power of voluntary attention is one of the most characteristic of the signs of dementia and is a prominent symptom in the various dementing psychoses, for example, in dementia precox.

Hyperprosexia.—In this condition the attention of the patient is completely absorbed by some thoughts, usually by his delusions. This complete absorption also gives rise to disorders of perception, as the environment is not attended to and often not perceived at all. The condition may give rise to actual delusions. A young woman, who was suffering from the most profound melancholia with painful delusions, was so absorbed in these that she did not perceive the tray of food that was brought to her and subsequently when it was brought to her notice thought some mysterious power must be responsible for its presence.

DISORDERS OF PERSONALITY.

To understand these disorders, we must understand what constitutes personality. The individual, besides receiving certain information from the environment and forming certain ideas, has beyond this a consciousness of self, a feeling that all his perceptions and ideas are experiences of a single self, a self that maintains its own individual identity throughout, and which the individual calls "I." This problem of self-consciousness, although the riddle of psychology, presents certain features useful in elucidating the problem in hand.

Our consciousness, as we know it, is subject to many interruptions, many lapses, so that in an ordinary lifetime hiatuses appear in its course, yet the notion of personal identity is not thereby destroyed. For example, every profound sleep destroys the continuity of consciousness. We may conceive, however, that underlying all these manifestations, such as disappear from view in the profundity of sleep, there are certain permanent features which form the foundation, the continuum of consciousness upon which the transitory features as we see them are erected as epiphenomena. The most important element in this fundamental continuum is the *cænesthesia*—made up of what we must conceive as a continuous flow of sensations from all the organs of the body to the mind. This flow of sensations is constant throughout life, and in the absence of disease varies little either as to

quality or intensity. It is the continuous, ever present element of our consciousness. The other elements, of which we have directly a better knowledge, made up for the most part of perceptions of the outer world of reality, vary much more in correspondence to many factors, particularly as to the nature of the environment, and the characteristics of the perceiving mind as the result of past experiences. It is these two elements of consciousness which make up the personality.

Transformation of the Personality.—This phenomenon is seen in the paranoid conditions typically. The gradual growth of a delusional system accompanied and probably to some extent dependent upon disorders in the realm of the organic sensations. The paranoiac, with his profound disturbance of allo-psychic consciousness, sees the outer world of reality twisted, deformed, as though he were viewing it through an astigmatic medium. All the facts of his life, his knowledge of the world are distorted to conform to the deformity of the medium through which he views them. Not only are these elements of his personality seriously disordered, but its very foundation—the *cœnesthesis*—is also seriously disturbed, as seen particularly in the first stage of the disease. All of the elements that go to make up the patient's personality being so completely disordered, the expressions of that personality are similarly disordered and we have the picture of the third stage, the final result of the disease process in its natural unfolding—transformation of the personality.

Depersonalization.—A lesser degree of the same sort of process results in a disorganization, a breaking up of the personality. This is seen in many conditions and is associated with a *feeling of unreality*, and occurs as a part of the *delirium of negation*. The patients proclaim that they are changed, they are not themselves. One of my patients would look in the glass and stare in wonder at her reflection, saying her eyes were not hers, they were cat's eyes. Another patient affirmed she had no head, no arms, no body, no mind, nothing. The feeling of personal identity in these cases has become disrupted, the personality disorganized.

Multiple Personality.—In this condition the patient passes through stages in each of which the personality is different. The usual cases are those in which a secondary personality grows

up in the individual and at times overwhelms the normal personality and occupies the stage to its exclusion. These are the cases of so-called *double-consciousness*. The two, or sometimes more personalities, are usually separated from each other by complete amnesia, so that one does not know of the existence of the other.

GANSER'S SYMPTOM.

Ganser's symptom, or as it has been called, *the symptom of approximate answers*⁸ (Danebenreden) is sufficiently frequent to deserve notice. Its designation as the symptom of approximate answers serves very well to describe it. An illustration will make it quite clear. A patient gives the following results in calculation tests: $7 \times 6 = 41$, $4 \times 8 = 36$, $6 \times 7 = 43$.

Another patient gives the following replies to questions:

Ques. What year is this (1907)? *Ans.* 1907, I think.

Ques. What is the month (Feb.)? *Ans.* It might be January.

Ques. What is the day of the week (Wednesday)? *Ans.* Tuesday.

This patient gave the following results to calculation tests, $17 + 16 = 21$, $9 + 7 = 16$, $3 \times 7 = 20$ —when told he was wrong said 22 , $19 - 13 = 8$, ain't it?

This symptom has been supposed to be rather characteristic of hysteria but it has been found in many conditions. My own experience leads me to believe that it is rather characteristic of states of psychopathic inferiority.

THE "COMPLEX."⁹

The mind cannot be conceived of as consisting of or containing ideas which are deposited here and there, helter skelter, without order, as the scraps of paper that are thrown carelessly into the waste basket. Quite the contrary. Ideas are grouped about central experiences, constellated as we say, built into coherent and harmonious structures not unlike the way in which bricks and stones are brought together to form buildings and these buildings are again grouped to form the larger whole—the city. The sig-

⁸ Ruggles, A. H.: Observations on Ganser's Symptom, *Am. Jour. Insanity*, Oct., 1905.

⁹ White: Mental Mechanisms, No. 8 of this Series.

nificant fact in this connection is that the cement that holds the bricks and stones together, the binding substance, is feeling.

This orderly arrangement of ideas upon a background of feeling which serves to unite them is what gives character, individuality to the personality. The creating of the proper feeling-tone about things and events is one of the main functions of education.

Now it so happens that in certain types of individuals a constellation of ideas, grouped about a central event that conditions a highly painful emotional state, is crowded out of clear consciousness—repressed—into the region of the subconscious and so tends to lead an existence which is relatively independent and in so doing gives origin to various symptoms. Such a constellation has been known for many years, especially in France and in this country as a “dissociated state” but more lately as a “complex.”

The complex, crowded out of relation with the personal consciousness, seeks for expression and because it is not synthetized with the rest of consciousness, because the individual is not aware of its existence, its expression cannot be controlled and guided into the usual channels and so creates the symptoms of the psychoneuroses.

The extreme difficulty in locating and uncovering the complex is due to the symbolic forms in which it usually manifests itself. The painful memories of disagreeable experiences, unethical, unconventional, and otherwise impossible and hateful wishes while crowded out of mind by what Freud has so aptly termed the “censor of consciousness” nevertheless struggle to find expression. The complex cries for recognition, the censor will have none of it—the fight is on, the conflict wages, until finally a sort of compromise is reached by permitting the complex to come into clear consciousness but only on pain of not disclosing its true self, under the cloak of a complete disguise.

For example Freud's case of Elisabeth.¹⁰ She was engaged in nursing her sick father who afterwards died. One evening, spent away from home at the solicitation of the family, she met a young man of whom she was very fond and he accompanied her back home. On the walk home she quite gave herself up to the happiness of the occasion and walked along oblivious of her duties.

¹⁰ Freud: Selected Papers on Hysteria and Other Psychoneuroses, *Jour. of Nerv. and Ment. Dis. Monograph Series*, No. 4.

On reaching home she found her father much worse and bitterly reproached herself for forgetting him in her own pleasure. She immediately repressed this disagreeable thought from her consciousness. Now she had, each morning, to change the dressings on her father's swollen leg. To do this she took his leg upon her right thigh. The suppressed complex seized upon the feeling of weight and pain of her father's leg upon her thigh as a handy and efficient means of expression and so the repressed erotic wish comes into consciousness under the disguise of a painful area of the right thigh corresponding in extent and location to the place upon which she rested her father's leg.

This is the sort of mechanism that accounts for many unusual and strange experiences that otherwise appear to be without reason. Unexplained forgetting, slips of the tongue, certain mental attitudes, moods, and even the dominant traits of character are due to the activity of submerged complexes while the phenomena of dreams are explained in the same way.

Their subconscious methods are not very logical. As already described the complex often expresses itself symbolically (*symbolism*), often by the transfer of an emotion from a painful event to a less painful or indifferent event (*displacement*), often, as in hysteria, by the conversion of the conflict into a physical symptom (*conversion*). The whole subject is too intricate to pursue further in this place.

Dormant complexes produce many of the symptoms which are seen in the psychoses. When the complex has to find expression through the médium of a mind seriously disintegrated by dementing processes the results are extremely difficult to unravel. The method of approach at present most in vogue is by association tests—psychoanalysis. (See Chapter V.)

DREAMS.

Dreams for Freud are sleep conserving in their function. The suppressed complexes during sleep seize upon the opportunity to slip out from their enforced retirement. Should they succeed sleep would be disturbed—impossible. The censor, therefore, compels them to assume strange forms so that they may not be recognized for what they really are and so strike terror to the heart of the sleeper and cause him to awaken. If for any reason

the censor has been lulled into fancied security, rendered dormant and inactive by sleep, and the appearance of the undisguised complexes in clear consciousness seems imminent then the phenomena of nightmare result and to prevent the dreaded denouement the sleeper awakes and thus arouses the censor to full activity and power to keep them down.

The study of dreams¹¹ has become of great importance in psychoanalysis. Since no mental state can be fortuitous, since the content of consciousness at any one time must be causally dependent upon what has preceded, a study of the dream must therefore throw light upon the mental makeup of the dreamer. Dreams have been shown to be closely related to delusions and to psychoneurotic symptoms and their analysis is very important for the unravelling of these symptoms.

¹¹ White: *Mental Mechanisms*, No. 8 of this Series.

Jones: *The Relationship Between Dreams and Psychoneurotic Symptoms*, *Am. Jour. Insanity*, July, 1911.

CHAPTER VII.

PARANOIA AND PARANOID STATES.

PARANOIA.

General Considerations.—When the term “paranoia” first came into general use the number of cases included under it by some alienists was tremendous. It seemed as if the description of this new disease had solved all the difficulties of psychiatry, and large numbers of obscure and previously unsatisfactorily classified cases were included within its domain. Now, after years of experience with this disease type, the pendulum seems to have swung to the other extreme and we are beginning to realize that paranoia, strictly speaking, is a rare disease, but that there are many conditions which are known as paranoid or paranoiac states, and that these states arise in the course of many mental disorders.

The basis upon which true paranoia has been differentiated from other conditions has generally been on the absence of intellectual impairment. When a paranoid condition was associated with marked intellectual impairment the diagnosis has usually been dementia precox. It seems to me very questionable whether we are not really dealing with two extremes between which every possible transitional form may be found. It depends to some extent to my mind upon what we mean by dementia. The woman whose case I have quoted elsewhere, who expressed the idea that her husband was untrue to her, did not thereby show any signs of intellectual impairment or express an idea which inherently showed any evidences of intellectual impairment. When, however, she adduced as proof of this statement the fact that when she looked out upon the street in the morning following a snow storm of the night before she saw numerous foot-prints of a woman who had been to the house during the night to meet her husband, and without any additional facts presents this argument in support of her previous statement, it would seem that we are justified in say-

ing that her judgment in this specific instance is poor, and when we find that all of her arguments in support of her idea are of a similarly flimsy and unwarranted character, we are warranted in saying that her judgment is impaired, which to my mind is tantamount to saying that her intellect is impaired though perhaps not profoundly enough to constitute dementia although there does not seem to be any very clear understanding of this most common of terms. Although this patient talked reasonably about most things, was acute to perceive, and under ordinary circumstances showed no outward signs of mental disturbance or impairment, yet I cannot see how we are to escape the conclusion that impairment actually existed. The impairment, though, would seem to be due to an unbalance of the mental elements rather than to their destruction.

The weakness of judgment that the paranoiac shows, however, is not a weakness that appears to be equally diffused over the entire field of the mental operations. It would appear to be more or less closely associated with the delusional system. We must not on that account come too speedily to the old conclusion that a person may be insane on one subject and sane on all others. It is true the reasoning of the paranoiac often seems clear on subjects not connected with his delusions, but we must not lose sight of the fact that the delusion itself does not constitute insanity—it is only its outward and manifest expression. In this respect MERCIER'S¹ comparison of the delusion to an island in the ocean is very apt. The island seems to occupy a position completely isolated, surrounded on all sides by water, but if the depths of the ocean be sounded it will be found that it is in reality but the summit of a mountain which reaches down into the depths of the sea to its very bottom and so establishes a connection by direct continuity with the mainland. So with the delusion, its isolation is only apparent, in reality it springs from the very foundations of the mental life.

Besides the characteristic attributed to paranoia, which has been discussed above, it has been claimed that the disease ran its course without emotional disturbances other than could be directly attributed to the delusions present. WERNICKE² maintains this

¹ Mercier, Charles: *Criminal Responsibility*, 1905.

² Wernicke: *Grundriss der Psychiatrie*.

general position by setting forth that while the content of thought is disordered, the form of thought or the process of thinking is preserved.

This theory of the disease harks back to the "faculty concepts" of the old psychology. If the thesis of the continuity of mental processes that I have maintained in the early part of this work is true, then such a state of affairs could hardly be conceived of as possible. As a matter of fact, I believe that a careful study of cases will show primarily states of depression in the early stages and the symptoms of the early stages especially, to my mind, are more satisfactorily explained on this basis.

The symptoms of the early stages culminating in the systematized delusions of persecution are symptoms which lead up to and develop the *paranoiac character*. This paranoiac character is a character the essential trait of which is a general feeling, mood, or as it is sometimes called affect-tone of suspicion. If we conceive of the wave of consciousness as occurring in a sea of feeling, of affects, then we can understand how all of the perceptions of the outer world, received and bathed in this sea, must be affected by its nature. If the mood is one of suspicion, then all the experiences of life are contaminated, and the world at large is only interpreted as the perceptions of that world are tintured by the predominant mood.

After all, it is the "feeling-mass" more than the intellectual processes that go to make up character, and the paranoiac character is what it is because this feeling-mass has become perverted. PRATT³ has well said: "For it is feeling alone that gives value to life. Sensation and ideation merely report on the facts. If man were only a cold intellect who saw and judged, one thing would be to him as valuable as another—in fact for him there would be no values in the universe but only truths. It is only because man has feelings, emotions, impulses, that anything in heaven or earth has value. Moreover, not only does the feeling background create values; it also is often that part of a man's mental make-up which for others has value. What we love in our friend is not his sensations, nor chiefly his ideas and his reasoning power; it is principally that combination of inde-

³ Pratt, J. B.: The Place and Value of the Marginal Region in Psychic Life, *The Psychological Review*, Jan., 1906.

finable psychic qualities—impulses, desires, likes and dislikes—which we call his disposition. So far, then, is the feeling-mass from being something which a man should hope in the course of evolution to get rid of, that as a fact, if he should get rid of it, no one would be able to find anything lovable in him, and he himself would be utterly unable either to love or even to value anything.

“In short, the feeling-mass is wider than the other departments of psychic life, and more closely identified with the self. A change in it means a change in personality. Sensations and ideas have a communicable and universal nature; this irrational residuum is peculiarly private and individual. It is the determinant of character—in one sense it *is* the character and the personality. From it the practical activity gets most of its energy and most of its guidance.”

BIANCHI⁴ would even classify the disease upon the basis of what he terms the primitive emotions—suspicion, ambition, love—which determine the three classic varieties: the persecutory, the ambitious or proud, and the erotic. He says on this point:

“In paranoia the fundamental emotions, which are also an expression of the altered kinesthesia, are emotions of a primitive character, such as suspicion, vanity, pride and fear—fear of injury and destruction, desire of exaltation and of grandeur of one’s own ego. Therein lies the reason of the egocentric attitude of the paranoic subject (SPECHT). These primitive emotive states, intrinsic to the personality and proportioned differently in different men, determine currents and orders of ideas and actions in the evolution of the personality, which succeed, in various ways, in protecting or expanding the personality in a rigorously logical fashion. When those emotive states exceed the normal measure in intensity and persistence, they exercise an absolute dominion over the consciousness, until, through their having once assumed government over the senses and the intellect, there is an alteration of the perception and the apperception processes that insure normal relations between the individual and his environment.”

The Paranoia of Magnan, Krafft-Ebing, and Kraepelin.—The

⁴ Bianchi, L.: *A Text-Book of Psychiatry*. New York, William Wood & Co., 1906.

conception of paranoia has been dominated for many years by the descriptions of MAGNAN in France, and KRAFT-EBING in Germany. MAGNAN'S⁵ *délire chronique a évolution systématique* is a disease which usually occurs in young adults who quite often, if their history is carefully taken, have shown peculiarities during their childhood, manifesting themselves in a certain taciturnity, moroseness, or disinclination to associate with other children as freely as is usual. The child may also have shown a tendency to make friends with older persons, stay at home and read and sew instead of play, and may have had a tendency to day-dreams and the building of air-castles. Very often, however, the history obtained will show none of these peculiarities.

For the purpose of description the disease may be divided into three stages, named in accordance with their most characteristic symptoms. *First*, the hypochondriacal stage or stage of subjective analysis. *Second*, the stage of persecution. *Third*, the stage of transformation of the personality.

In the first stage the symptoms already described, if present, become more marked, the patient becomes wrapped up in his own thoughts and uncommunicative, unusual feelings occur, headaches, dizziness, weakness, perhaps insomnia, with nervousness and restlessness, which he fails to understand, but constantly worries about—*hypochondriacal ideas*. This condition is associated with marked *emotional depression*, which in some degree is probably always incident to beginning paranoia. He soon begins to notice that people act differently towards him, when he goes in a room someone gets up and goes out, people on the street spit when they pass him, his employer has failed to say "good-morning" to him lately, people who are standing about here and there are talking about him and speaking of his condition and making disparaging remarks. Everything that occurs about him is interpreted as having some relation to himself—*ideas of reference*. This condition continues, becomes more aggravated, the ideas are not corrected and the patient, by keeping by himself, fails to come into that normal touch with the environment which gives to acts and circumstances their proper perspective.

The hypochondriacal ideas and ideas of reference become more constant and pronounced, the patient fears he is losing his reason,

⁵ Magnan et Sérieux: *Le Délire Chronique a Évolution Systématique*.

his health is being destroyed, and all for what purpose? what is the explanation of these conditions? why do people act towards him as they do?

The second stage of the disease is ushered in by the *delusion of persecution*, which is the patient's answer to all these queries by finding, as he believes, that their explanation lies in the operation of some malign influence against him. About this time also *hallucinations of hearing appear*. Heretofore the patient may have thought persons standing apart were talking or whispering about him, or may have heard remarks made about him by persons who passed him on the street, but it is quite impossible to tell whether these were true hallucinations or merely falsely interpreted occurrences. Now, however, there is no longer any doubt; the patient hears actual voices which usually make disparaging remarks about him or even say grossly insulting and vulgar things to him.

The delusion of persecution, reinforced by the hallucinations of hearing, from now on occupies more and more the focus of consciousness. It becomes more and more definite, the malign influence is recognized as an organized attempt on the part of a secret society, perhaps the Free Masons, the Jesuits, the Mafia, the Catholic Church, headed by the Pope. The agents of the society are always near him and the many annoyances he suffers are the results of their machinations. They poison his food, inject noxious vapors in his room at night, send electric currents through him when he goes to bed, bawl all sorts of insults in his ears and in innumerable ways annoy him and try to end his life. New sensations and experiences are explained by some new device invented to torture him—*delusions of explanation*, and various occurrences going on about him are similarly woven into the warp and woof of his delusional system.

The delusions are now almost constantly dwelt on to the exclusion of everything else, everything in life, every conscious experience, falls into some relation with the central thought, the delusions are fully systematized, they have reached out their influences like the tentacles of an octopus throughout the mental life of the patient and exact their tribute of his every thought. During all this period of development, with the exception of the incipient stages, however, there has been very little emotional

abnormality. The only emotional disturbances are those naturally incident to the character of the delusions, such as anger, vexation and the like.

At first the patient flees from his persecutors, going from place to place in his endeavor to escape, and finds temporary relief in each new place for a time until his enemies find him out. Keeping this up for a while until he finds it futile, he endeavors to protect himself from them and gets up all sorts of elaborate devices, depending, of course, upon the character of the delusion. The key-hole and the cracks about the door and windows are stuffed with papers, the bed insulated by having the legs set in dishes of water, the food carefully tasted and often discarded. Finally, all these means failing, in sheer desperation and driven almost frantic by the continuous persecutions, he turns upon and attacks his supposed enemies. Magnan speaks of these three stages by saying that at first he flees, then defends himself and finally attacks. (*Il fuit; il se défend; il attaque.*)

During this period of persecution the patient, when speaking of his persecutors, at first uses the pronoun "they." He is no more specific than this, but finally he may learn exactly who are at the bottom of all his troubles. When he finds this out he at once becomes a dangerous lunatic, liable at any time to acts of violence of a homicidal character. These patients belong to the most dangerous class with whom we have to deal, especially because of the retention of their intellectual faculties.

After this condition has continued indefinitely the third stage of the disease may supervene. The patient develops *ideas of self-importance*. These ideas may come about, according to Magnan, in one of three ways. First, spontaneously. Second, through the mediation of the hallucinations—the voices, for example, telling the patient that he is some great personage. Third, as the result of logical deduction—if so many people, such powerful organizations are interested in his downfall he must indeed be some great personage, rightful heir to a throne, or inheritor of vast estates. The development of these ideas of self-importance, noble descent and the like, constitutes the transformation of the personality characterizing the third stage of the disease.

As completely as the delusion of persecution occupies the field of consciousness at this time and as thoroughly as it may be

systematized, we find in this as well as in the second stage still further evidences of elaboration of the false beliefs, with their projection into the past life of the patient even as far back as his childhood—*retrospective falsifications*. In the light of the recently acquired facts many experiences of his early life, which heretofore have seemed mysterious, find their explanation. His so-called parents are not his true parents, and he knows now that the strange woman who used to visit the house and always kept her face heavily veiled must have been the emissary of his royal father—*retrospective explanatory delusion*. The whispered conversations of his parents after these visits had reference to him, and the glances of the servants showed that they suspected something strange about him—*retrospective ideas of reference*. Often the patient recalls remarks that were never made, occurrences that never happened in further support of his false beliefs—*retrospective falsification of memory*.

With the development and elaboration of these ideas of self-importance the general attitude and appearance of the patient change. From being suspicious, resentful, irritable and antagonistic, he becomes more complacent and self-satisfied. He is a great personage who will shortly be proclaimed as such to the world. Often, too, he will tell at great length of the various methods used by his persecutors, only to show his wonderful sagacity and prowess in defeating their ends.

This *transformation of the personality* is the natural result of what has gone before. We have traced our hypothetical case through the hypochondriacal stage of disorder of the somatopsychic consciousness and seen in the second stage the systematized delusion of persecution gradually grow from an insignificant beginning to a state in which it dominates, to the practical exclusion of everything else, the consciousness of the individual. This delusion involves, in the main, the allopsychic consciousness. It is not strange, then, that the remaining sphere of the autopsychic consciousness should finally be encroached upon. (See Chapter VI. Transformation of the Personality.)

The above description of paranoia would indicate a degree of regularity and definiteness in its evolution that the facts do not always warrant. The disease may become stationary at any point and the third stage in many cases is never reached. The

symptoms of the first stage are found in the second, and these in turn in the third, although here the general mood and ideas of self-importance may dominate the picture. The development and elaboration of the disease is by a continuous addition rather than a substitution or modification of symptoms.

The fourth and final stage of the disorder is that of progressive mental enfeeblement—the stage of dementia.

The disease, instead of running the regular course above described, may show certain variations. Aside from becoming arrested at any given point, as already mentioned, the principal one is the early appearance of ideas of self-importance which may even occur contemporaneously with those of persecution. Ordinarily, however, the several varieties are clinically differentiated because of the special content of the delusional system.

The following case gives briefly an account of this form of paranoia. It shows the early disordered sensations, the delusional interpretations, the hallucinations and the ideas of grandeur. The patient is a young man recently come to this country.

Five years ago in 1907, patient had sensations of a worm crawling up into his throat, tickling his palate. This worried him a great deal, so he consulted an apothecary who gave him a dose of medicine with the idea of ridding him of this worm. However, he believes that this worm may have been an evil spirit which was put into him to give him an inspiration. This worm continued to bother him with disagreeable sensations in his throat until 1910, when after completing a series of six letters, written to one of the London Daily papers, and only one of which was published, he was no longer bothered by the worm and it seems to him that this worm, after having accomplished its object, that is, inspiring him to write these letters, was killed within his chest by some mysterious force, perhaps an Angel of God. These six letters which he wrote to the London paper dealt with the subject of "Why men no longer marry." The two great arguments he mentions are prostitution and the fact that women are taking men's places in the business world, thus reducing their salaries. An angel has been appearing to him about once a week, seeming to suggest various things in connection with his thoughts and to impress upon him what is wrong and what is right. Ofttimes she has spoken a few words, but she communicates with him mostly by gesture and signal. On November 18, 1911, while asleep, he felt a tapping on his shoulder, and heard a voice repeat over and over, "You are God." He awoke at the last tap on his shoulder and heard the voice for the last time say, "You are God." Since that time he has written letters to Mr. Hearst, editor of the New York American, about the Millenium, incorporating in his article the idea that every member of a community should be nour-

ished through the medium of currency just as each member of the body is nourished with blood, and that everyone should be a civil servant, that is, in the civil service. On January 22, 1912, he wrote a letter to President Taft, the subject of which was "Kingdom." In this letter he stated that he believed himself to be Christ in his second appearance on earth. On January 24, 1912, the evening before he came to Washington to see the President because he had not received an answer to his letter nor had it been sent back as he had requested, he had a dream; in this dream he saw an angel lying upon a bed; he heard her speak to him, saying, "If you go across the street and get me a nice brown cake, you may lie with me." This dream seemed to be a revelation to him. The angel signified the American people as they are represented in the Statue of Liberty and Columbia. Buying the cake meant the outlay of money which would be necessary in his trip to Washington to see the President. Lying with her meant his acceptance by the American people, as Christ.

KRAFFT-EBING⁶ first considers paranoia under two great heads, which are classified as *early* or *original paranoia*, beginning even in childhood, and *late* or *acquired paranoia*, beginning late in life. Original paranoia occurs only in patients with very marked hereditary taint, and as SANDER—who originally used this term—most admirably expresses it, the abnormal condition develops and unfolds itself in the same way that the normal mind develops and unfolds itself in the normal individual. Acquired paranoia, on the other hand, develops in an individual, who, except for his hereditary taint, may appear to be a normal person. While in late paranoia there is, as we have seen, a transformation of the personality, a change in the individual wrought by the disease process; in original paranoia there is not a transformation but an unfolding of a personality which is from the beginning pathological. A further general subdivision of cases is based on the presence or absence of hallucinations. So we have *paranoia hallucinatoria*, in which the hallucinations play a prominent part in the elaboration of the delusional system, and *paranoia combinatoria*, in which hallucinations do not occupy a prominent place or are altogether absent, the delusional system growing on the basis of idea-association.

The late or acquired paranoia is subdivided into two great

⁶ Krafft-Ebing, R. von: Text-Book of Insanity. Philadelphia, F. A. Davis & Co., 1904.

groups, those in which the delusions of persecution are the most prominent features, would be classed as *persecutory paranoia*, while those in which grandiose ideas predominated would be classed as *expansive paranoia*. In the former group is included the *querulous* or *litigious* variety which by some is considered to occupy a position midway between the original and acquired, for, like the original, hallucinations do not play a prominent part in its evolution, and also like the original, the delusions often contain elements of truth and often develop on the basis of some actual occurrence, more particularly the loss of some law suit. They are notable not only because of their apparent—in fact their real—adherence to facts, but for their convincing character.

The latter group includes that host of unbalanced dreamers who are frequently known as “cranks,” and who may be further classified on the basis of the content of their delusional system into *inventive*, *reformatory*, *religious* and *erotic* varieties. These patients have made some wonderful invention, are destined to carry on great reforms, are the vicegerent of God, or believe themselves beloved by some royal person. The following is an illustrative case of predominantly erotic paranoia:

Family history shows nothing worthy of note. Patient's early childhood presents no abnormalities. He had a common school education. At the age of ten, he had quite a severe illness. While working on his father's farm, he conceived the idea of becoming an inventor, which his folks discouraged so greatly that he left home and went to Chicago, where he worked as hostler and coachman, giving excellent service. In 1899, he obtained his first patent, it being for a special bicycle hub. In connection with his attempts to make this patent a financial success, he first showed ideas which might be termed paranoid. The man to whom he gave a half interest in his patent failed to manipulate the stock of the company which was incorporated in proper manner, and the people who became interested in his proposition he thinks were mostly sent by other manufacturers to discourage him in his attempts to make something out of it. In 1906, he patented a brush which he induced the Pullman car people to try, but they were not a success because of the activities of the whisk broom manufacturers, who, in league with the porters, caused them to be returned as defective. He has continued up to the present time manufacturing these brushes in a small way, and devoting his time to perfecting machines in order to increase their output. According to his statements he has a financial rating of \$1,000, and says he would have more money had he not spent so much in models for his machinery. Among the pamphlets which he has gotten out for advertising purposes,

was one dealing with American wealth marrying foreign titles, which he wrote about the time Miss Katherine Elkins and the Duke of Abruzzi were prominent names in newspaper headlines. With this article he had his picture published, one taken about fifteen years ago, when he said he was a very handsome man. He denies the use of drugs, and rarely takes a drink. He masturbates at least once a week, and sometimes oftener.

About three years ago while visiting in Washington, he dropped into the National Museum to look over some propeller models. He believes that Miss Katherine Elkins entered the building carrying a coronet in her hand; that upon seeing him, she said, "There is the man who caused me to do this. He is not so handsome as his pictures, but his writings are so penetrating." From this statement, he became convinced that Miss Elkins had obtained one of his pamphlets, had seen his handsome picture, and as a result, had broken off her engagement with the Duke. A short time later, he saw her again in his Chicago bank, motioning to him to come to her. A year later while in Washington, he again saw her in a carriage on Pennsylvania Avenue. He heard her call to him. Once while walking along a street in Chicago, her sudden appearance before him he believes to have saved his life, as it caused him to halt, just as a man fell from a ten story building to the pavement at his feet. A short time later, he saw her walking along the street, and heard her say to a woman companion, "I do not object to him because he is poor." Sometime this last summer, a somewhat cultured looking old man, purposely dressed rather shabbily he thinks, came to room with the janitor of the boarding house, directly across the hall from his room. He believes that this old man and several others who stayed a shorter time, were agents sent by the grandfather of Miss Elkins to observe his life. Of this he was rather glad, for he wanted the Elkins family to know that he lived a clean, irreproachable existence. Ever since the occurrence at the National Museum, he has written quite regularly to Miss Elkins, and because he has received no reply requesting that he cease doing so, believes she gave her consent to his correspondence. When about a year ago he called at the Elkins' home, to see Miss Elkins, and was rather brusquely turned away, he conceived the idea that the family knew of her love for him, and was attempting to keep her from seeing him. Sometime this fall, intending to make his annual trip to Washington, he wrote a letter proposing to Miss Elkins, and on his arrival in the city went to her home on K Street to have the matter settled one way or the other. However, when he called at her home, he was requested to call that afternoon. During the day, he busied himself talking with a patent attorney on the advisability of patenting a model which he had constructed demonstrating that the earth's axis is horizontal instead of perpendicular. When he went for his noonday lunch, he had to wait so long for what he had ordered, that he believed that he must have been doped by parties who were bent upon preventing him from seeing Miss Elkins. When he returned to the Elkins' residence, he was adroitly conducted to the police station. He was taken

to the Washington Asylum Hospital, where he saw Miss Elkins come in to lead him out; he is sure it was she by the warmth of her hand.

Medical certificate states that patient is not addicted to the use of narcotics. The first symptoms became manifest by patient requesting protection from the Attorney General for his patent rights. Present symptoms: Patient says he has a patent for making brushes and that they are so good and so widely used, that the other manufacturers are jealous and attempt to harm him. They go around quietly and destroy his brushes. He has made a model of the earth and sun, which shows that the present knowledge of astronomy is incorrect. He says if the other manufacturers got a chance, they would do him bodily harm. He says his patent rights are worth from one to five million dollars. He has also invented a patent flying machine which is altogether different from any of the 1911 models. He says it is different from any on the market. He has also invented a motor boat propeller which is a great improvement on the existing ones. Says that a certain party is having him watched. This man is jealous of him on account of a woman. Says he is the best inventor living. Says sometime ago he wished an enemy of his would die, and he died. Saw a vision. No homicidal or suicidal tendencies.

Since patient has been here, and thought over some of the past events, he believes that a man who came to visit him in Chicago put some dope in the cigar which he was smoking. He seems much concerned as to the little business which he is conducting in Chicago. He states that if he were free, he would go directly there and not return to Washington, and drop this love affair entirely. He laughingly states that the idea which his model illustrates regarding the earth's axis will some day be taught in the public schools, and it will be said that he, the discoverer, was arrested, tried and adjudged insane the first day he presented it.

In these cases the idea of self-importance quite obscures the persecutory ideas, which, if they are present at all, become a negligible quantity, while in many cases they are not present in the true sense of the term. A reformatory paranoiac may be prevented from doing as he wishes by the civil authorities, whereupon he believes himself persecuted, but this is not a true delusion of persecution in the sense this term has been used in describing paranoia. When such patients are interfered with they usually resent it and often rebel. They are then designated as *persecuted persecutors*.

This whole anomalous group of paranoiac psychoses developing upon a markedly predisposed background, in individuals of a strong hereditary taint, has been designated by the French as the *insanity of degenerates*.

KRAEPELIN'S⁷ conception of the paranoia group is radically different. He would class practically all of the cases of MAGNAN and many of KRAFFT-EBING in his group of paranoid dementia precox while the rest would be distributed as paranoid states in the several psychoses.

For him hallucinations play no essential part in the picture. The disease is a chronic, incurable psychosis, of insidious origin, slowly developing by the gradual systematization of delusions of endogenous formation. This system of delusions is enduring and unshakable and exists along with retention of the logical and orderly process of thinking. There is no tendency to marked mental deterioration (dementia).

The following is a very brief summary of such a case. It gives quite an inadequate idea of a life crowded with events growing out of his delusional system and which have received the most complex interpretation:

White male, 63 years of age; admitted April 6, 1910, on a certificate which stated that the patient was taken to the Washington Asylum Hospital on March 7, 1910, saying he had been hypnotized, and that \$36,000, which had been sent him by a firm in Philadelphia, had been stolen from him. He had been in what he called a hypnotic state, and had attracted considerable attention in the city. While he was in the Washington Asylum Hospital he wrote out in detail his life history. Briefly summarized his history shows that he has grandiose ideas, which are based upon what he claimed was an original discovery with him, namely, getting gold out of sea water, and also extracting gold, by his special electrolytic process, from auriferous quartz. He claims he has made fabulous sums by these means. He has travelled, according to his statement, over the greater part of the world; says the Jamison Raid and Boer War were the results of the British Government attempting to stop his company's production of gold, which was demoralizing the gold standard. He gives in detail in the history various experiences connected with his delusions, which are evidently falsifications. He states that twice he has had a period of loss of consciousness; once in 1896 for six months, and recently, before his commitment to the Washington Asylum Hospital. His first period was caused by a blow on the head, inflicted by his enemies in order that they might secure his bank books which contained a record of his enormous holdings in various banks in New York, which money he had secured through his gold-producing efforts. Each time he was brought out of his period of loss of consciousness by a hypnotist named Mark Tracey, but what connection Mark Tracey had with his previous life has

⁷ Kraepelin, Emil: *Psychiatrie*.

not been elaborated by the patient. For the past three years he has been endeavoring to form a dairy company for the production of desiccated milk, which he claims will prevent the sicknesses of children which have been dependent upon impure milk. In connection with the formation of this company he came to Washington to purchase various farms. He gives in detail all his experiences and interpretations in his autobiography—a voluminous document consisting of many closely written pages. An examination, however, shows that he has but a meager knowledge of the places he claims to have visited, and it is evident that he has acquired his knowledge by reading. He is rather an eccentric looking man, small, with long hair and shabby, worn-out clothing. He is very quiet, has not been talking about his ideas with the other patients, but has a few times casually mentioned them to the physicians; when questioned regarding them he is composed, talks in a moderate tone, and would not impress one as being especially egotistical. The ideas, however, are firmly fixed, and he can quite readily elaborate them. There is no evidence of mental reduction.

Delirium of Interpretation.—SÉRIEUX and CAPGRAS⁸ have separated from the great paranoia group a certain number of cases which because of their like symptoms and course they believe belong together and to which they have given the name of delirium⁹ of interpretation.

The characteristics¹⁰ of the delirium of interpretation are that it occurs in lucid, constitutional psychopaths, not mentally enfeebled. The affection is incurable, and is characterized by a proliferation of delusional interpretations which coördinate themselves into a system more or less coherent without notable dependence on sensorial disturbances. Lucidity is maintained throughout, the evolution of the psychosis takes place by a progressive extension of the false interpretations, and dementia does not eventuate as a consequence. Unlike some other paranoid conditions the false interpretations take their origin in actual facts. The patient because of his constitutional peculiarities, lack of critique and egocentricity, arrives at false interpretations by giving a personal meaning to everything that occurs.

The following is a brief summary of a case:

⁸ Sérieux et Capgras: *Les Folies Raisonnnantes*. Paris, 1909.

⁹ The word delirium is here used in the sense given it by the French, namely, to apply to the sum of the patient's delusional experiences.

¹⁰ Sérieux et Capgras: *Diagnostic du Délire D'Interprétation*, *Revue de Psychiatrie*, Jan., 1908.

White woman; 32 years of age. Father sustained a cranial injury, since which time he has shown symptoms of nervous and mental derangement. Patient was an eight months' baby. The history of her childhood shows nothing noteworthy. She received a good education. Between the ages of 18 and 21 she did housework and cared for her mother, who was ill. For one year she held a position as companion, after which she studied stenography and typewriting for six months. She obtained positions paying six and eight dollars a week. She then opened an office, but was handicapped on account of an occupation neurosis. In 1905 she secured a Civil Service position in the Government Printing Office, which she held until the time of her admission at the Sibley Hospital. Compensation was two dollars per day. She suffered from lead poisoning while engaged in this occupation. She claimed to have been persecuted in various ways since 1908—her business associates made uncomplimentary remarks regarding her; the men of her acquaintance made improper proposals to her; the woman with whom she boarded opened her mail and intercepted her telephone messages; the Catholics molested her in many ways. The latter part of May, 1910, she was visiting some relatives in the country, having left the city to avoid further molestations from her persecutors. She retired early one night, but was unable to go to sleep. She heard men riding past her window on horseback and saw the light of their lanterns flashed into her room. About midnight she heard stealthy footsteps approaching, and the mattress was rolled up over her feet. When she attempted to escape a strong hand seized her ankle. A struggle ensued but the patient escaped through the window, injuring her foot in the fall. She was taken to Sibley Hospital, but was later transferred to the Washington Asylum Hospital, from which institution she was committed. Her false interpretations are very extensive and elaborate. For example: a young woman, a switch board operator, left her position at the place the patient was living. She immediately elaborated an explanation, that she had been enticed away for immoral purposes and later when a nearby building burned down she heard a scream and was convinced this young woman had been burned to death in the building.

Delirium of Revindication.—SÉRIEUX and CAPGRAS believe that these two psychoses, the delirium of interpretation, and the delirium or revindication, should be all that are included under the term paranoia.

This psychosis may be defined as a chronic systematized psychosis constituted by the exclusive predominance of a fixed idea which imposes itself upon the mind as an obsession. It is a monoidism, developing in degenerates, and does not end in dementia.

There are two varieties of this psychosis—the egocentric and the altruistic. Those of the egocentric type are usually perse-

cutors, enemies of society, making claims for wrongs suffered that may or may not have some foundation in fact. Here we find the litigants, certain not understood writers and artists, certain hypochondriacal persecutors, amorous types, etc. In the altruistic variety the ideas are abstract, the theories impersonal and concern science, philosophy, politics, religion, etc. In this group are found the inventors, reformers, prophets. They are dominated by altruistic sentiments and far from being persecutors are often generous philanthropists. Often, however, in endeavoring to realize their ideals, they become dangerous fanatics of all sorts—mystics, anarchists, regicides. The diversity of all these forms is only apparent. There exists no real difference between a litigious persecutor and the searcher for the philosopher's stone. Their psychoses are all characterized by two signs: the prevailing idea and the mental exaltation.

The following is an example of the egocentric variety of this psychosis. The patient belongs to the querulous or litigant type of KRAFFT-EBING. He is an old negro man, a veteran of the Civil War.

He enlisted in the fall of 1863 in the 29th Illinois Colored Infantry in Chicago. Three days later he was sent on to Quincy, Ill., 160 miles south of Chicago. They went into camp and he remained there until May, 1864. At that time the soldiers were mustered from the State to Federal service. The patient was the captain of Company F, which consisted of colored soldiers, and he arranged his men in line for mustering. It was the custom for the captain to take the oath before the men did. One of the Federal officers asked the patient to take the oath of allegiance to the United States, renouncing his allegiance to all other countries, including Canada, where the patient had been born. The patient said that at that time he preferred to remain a subject of Great Britain and did not think that he should be forced to give up his allegiance, in that he had not enlisted under any such terms. Thereupon the officer refused to muster the Company in but allowed the patient to remain at its head, taking charge of the post at Quincy, Illinois. The patient at once put the city under martial law. July 18, 1864, the company was sent to Chicago and was then requested to come to Washington, D. C., to be mustered in. Here again the patient refused to take the oath as was demanded of him and as a consequence they arrested him, took him from the company and sent him to prison at City Point, Va. After being confined there for a short time he was released, allowed to again take charge of the company, was promised pay at \$100 a month for his services and in addition was not required to take the oath of allegiance. He says that he never received any pay for his services. The patient let the matter rest until 1880, thinking that rectification would

be made in due course of time when the War Department discovered the injustice that had been done him.

In 1880, under Garfield's administration, patient wrote a letter to Robert T. Lincoln, then Secretary of War. He called the attention of the Secretary to his (the patient's) case. Mr. Lincoln gave the letter to John Sherman, then Secretary of the Treasury, asking the latter to look into the facts in the case. Sherman later wrote the patient that he acknowledged his services during the late rebellion but that he had lost all rights for the payment of services on the ground of desertion. The patient states that his early refusal to give up his allegiance to England as a subject of Canada and his subsequent arrest and release had unjustly been the basis for the charge of desertion preferred against him. Patient kept up correspondence with Sherman for eighteen months, then Sherman asked him to make a full statement of his services and of all that led up to the charge of desertion. In reply Sherman stated that according to the records of the War Department, the patient was regularly mustered in the service of the United States and deserted therefrom at Petersburg, Va., in the face of the enemy and the charge of desertion that rested against him in the War Department could not be removed. Patient thereupon asked for the copy of the original records. Sherman submitted same. Patient sent the copy of the record to the Secretary of War, Lincoln, asking that it be submitted to a Senate Committee for consideration. On March 17, 1882, it was proven, and admitted by Secretary of the Treasury, Sherman, before the Senate Committee, that the original records to correspond with the copied records which had been sent to the patient, did not exist, that the charges against the patient were not sustained and that Sherman himself admitted that he had acted as he did because he thought that he was doing the best for the Government. The patient says that he thinks that Sherman was trying to beat him out of the money so that he could keep it for himself and that this was one of the main charges which resulted in the removal of Sherman from his position as Secretary of the Treasury. The patient says that he had demanded of Sherman \$500,000 for his eleven months of services, the kidnapping and false arrest and for his having been put back into the service without being regularly mustered into the service of the United States. The patient says that a clerk from the War Department came to him with a message from President Garfield and that \$275,000 was offered to him. He accepted the same and was told to wait until they sent for him. He waited until May 20, 1884, and then sent to the War Department again to look after the case. Representative McKinley (later President) took the matter up, showed that there were 83,000 other men on similar false charge of desertion and by Act of Congress exonerated them all, with the patient at the head of the list. President Arthur then ordered Secretary of War, Lincoln, to give the patient a certificate of exoneration and to pay over to him the sum of \$500,000. The patient does not know whether Congress had passed a bill to that effect or not. He says that Lincoln tried to put up a job on him. He arranged to meet the patient at the Second Precinct on U St. between ninth and tenth, saying

that he wished to settle the matter with him privately. He was told that he was to be sent to the Government boarding house for a few days while negotiations were going on, but to his surprise he was sent to this institution March 14, 1885. He remained here until October 6, 1886. The patient states that Dr. Lyons of this institution, who at that time was First Assistant to the Superintendent Dr. Godding, tried to poison him by putting drugs in his food—some of the drugs were croton oil, arsenic, henbane, etc. The patient considers it all a plot of Lincoln's to keep the money from him and to take it himself. According to the patient, Dr. Godding helped him to get a writ of habeas corpus and the patient was discharged in the District Court by Judge Cox. The patient conducted the case himself and Dr. Godding testified to his sanity. In 1886 he had the case brought up once more before Judge Montgomery. His lawyer, Walker, would not undertake to argue the case and the patient thinks that he also was in a conspiracy against him. Judge Montgomery took the case from the jury and decided it himself, giving as his opinion that the patient's claims were not supported and deciding against the patient.

The patient again had the case brought up before the Senate and he says as a result, the judge was removed from the Bench. The patient claims that the Judge also was bought off by Lincoln, who was then no longer Secretary of War. The patient is sure that Lincoln got much of the money that he himself was entitled to. He says that he learned of this from the papers, that \$250,000 was missing from the Treasury Department, that this was one half of his own money and that it was appropriated by Lincoln. The other \$250,000 is still in the Treasury for him. Mr. Lincoln is now the President of the Pullman Car Company. The patient now desires to get the other \$250,000. He promised to give Mr. Harbough and Dr. Glueck and the examiner a goodly portion of what he gets. Patients says that Cleveland tried to have him get his money but was held off by friends until the expiration of his administration; that President McKinley had practically decided to see that he got his money when he was assassinated; that Roosevelt had the matter up and had it all settled on the eve of his going out of office and that the case was also settled by Mr. Taft but that the money is being held up by both the political parties. Patient says that President Taft in his inaugural address spoke particularly of his own case and promised to see that he got the money. The patient claims that all the big men, not only in the United States but in every nation, know about him and his case; that it was the cause of the war with Spain, that Mr. Hill, who last week resigned from ambassadorship to Germany, was asked to resign because he was one of the conspirators in the case and that he knows of several prominent men, including former Secretary of the Treasury Shaw and the present Secretary of War, Mr. Dickinson, who have their foot in the plot. He claims that he has been poisoned every once in a while for many years. Even things that he bought in the different grocery stores contained some drug or other. He says that Dr. Lyons, of New York, who was interested in the case on his first admission, has conspirators in this institution at the present moment. He is not

sure whether or not he is being drugged at the present time. He says he would go to work if released but thinks he would soon be sent for to settle the case with the Government. Patient says he won't trouble them but he will not be out a day before their consciences will burn them so that they will come to him. He will then see that various officials in this institution will receive their just share of the money that he obtains.

The difference between this psychosis and the delirium of interpretation is well shown in the beginning. It has for its point of departure a fixed idea, while the delirium of interpretation arrives at a fixed idea only after a prolonged preliminary phase. The differential diagnosis is made difficult by several points they possess in common and also by the existence of combined psychoses or mixed types.

The symptoms in common of these two forms are: the exaggeration of the personality, the tendency to mistrust, the permanent lucidity, the absence or rarity of sensorial disturbances, the absence of intellectual enfeeblement, and in some cases the apparent similarity of reactions.

— **Acute or Mild Paranoia and Paranoid States.**—The question of whether or no there exists an *acute paranoia* is now pretty well decided. The existence of paranoid states in some of the acute, curable psychoses has in the past undoubtedly been largely responsible for the belief in an acute form of the disease and the Germans have long described such a form under the name of *Wahnsinn*. Later, however, since the true significance of paranoid states has been better understood and their occurrence in the acute, curable psychoses known, it has been possible to separate out those states belonging to other psychoses. When this is done a certain few cases are found to remain that may properly be classed as *acute, mild, or curable paranoia*.

These mild paranoidias¹¹ develop as the result of some mental conflict. Persistent mental perturbation over some condition which can neither be changed nor adjusted to. Under these conditions a system of delusions develops, endogenous in origin, which may or may not be accompanied by ideas of reference and which tends to be pretty well confined to the conflict—*circumscribed psychosis*. Hallucinations are lacking. After a varying period the affect subsides, the patients are able to resume their position in life but

¹¹ Studies in Paranoia, Nerv. & Ment. Dis. Monog. Series, No. 2.

the false ideas are not corrected. There is recovery without insight. Some of the cases in severely tainted psychopathic individuals are quite brief; many, however, last two or three years before calm is secured.

The adjective *paranoid* or *paranoiac*, meaning like paranoia, is applied to mental states superficially simulating paranoia, specifically mental states showing more or less systematized delusions of persecution and hallucinations of hearing. Many different mental disorders may present paranoid conditions and not infrequently paranoid states are met with that are quite difficult to definitely diagnose, so that the term is in frequent use.

These paranoid states are met with in dementia precox, paresis, the toxic psychoses, the psychoses of the involution period, manic-depressive psychosis, and in fact in practically all of the various types of mental disease. In general these states are transitory and while presenting the various symptoms of the disease in which they occur are usually further characterized by a less stable and coherent organization of the delusional system which is exogenous in origin. The paranoid states that occur in hypomania are particularly difficult to diagnose, while those which follow other psychoses, especially the toxic and infectious, such as alcohol, cocaine, typhoid, are particularly persistent, often lasting for many months. These conditions have given origin to the term *secondary paranoia*.

Freud's Conception of Paranoia.¹²—In the sexual development of the individual a distinct homosexual stage is passed through. The homosexuality, however, is not left behind in this process of development but the homosexual libido is sublimated, that is, its energies are drafted in other channels such, for example, as social activities. Freud believes that in the paranoiac there has been a fixation in this process at one portion of the homosexual period of development—the stage of narcissism—a regression and fixation of the sublimated homosexuality in narcissism. The libido of the paranoiac is then projected upon those about him.

The whole process is briefly and ingeniously set forth by Freud by means of ringing the changes—supposing the paranoiac to be a male—upon the basal sentence “I love him,” thus:

¹² Freud: *Psychoanalytische Bemerkungen über einen autobiographisch beschriebenen Fall von Paranoia (Dementia paranoides)*. Jahrbuch für Psychoanalytische und Psychopathologische Forschungen, Bd. III, 1911.

Delusions of persecution contradict the verb. "I love him" is resented by the individual who reacts by the feeling by "I do not love—I rather hate him." Then this feeling of hate is projected with the result "he hates (persecutes) me, which justifies my hating him." As a result, this feeling, appearing to come from an outer perception becomes "I really do not love him—I hate him—because he persecutes me."

Erotomania contradicts the object. "I do not love him—I love them," then "I notice that they love me," then finally "I do not love him—I love her—because she loves me."

Delusions of jealousy contradict the subject. "Not I love the man—she loves him."

Delusions of grandeur result from a total contradiction—a rejection of the whole sentence. "I do not love at all, and hence I love nobody." As the libido must be accounted for this is equivalent to "I only love myself."

Course and Prognosis.—The paranoias of MAGNAN, KRAFFT-EBING and KRAEPELIN and the deliria of interpretation and revindication, as described in this chapter, are chronic, irrecoverable psychoses.

The insanity of degenerates is not infrequently interrupted in its course by intermissions of variable length; in fact, MAGNAN says recovery often takes place. The mild forms recover in variable periods without insight. Seriously abnormal individuals having evident vices of organization, hereditarily burdened, the degenerates of the French, develop paranoid conditions quite easily under stress of circumstances and often as easily get well. This is well shown in the paranoid conditions that develop in criminals during imprisonment, the so-called *prison psychosis*.

The *délire chronique* of MAGNAN has been classed by many authors as a form of paranoid dementia precox. The course and prognosis of the paranoid states that occur in association with the different psychoses is, of course, the same as that of the psychosis of which they are a part.

Differential Diagnosis.—The principal disease with which paranoia is apt to be confused is *dementia precox paranoides*. The principle of differentiation rests with the occurrence in this form of dementia precox of signs of deterioration foreign to the classical type of paranoia. The deterioration, however, may not

be very apparent in the early stages and time may be required to make the differentiation.

Pathology.—Paranoia has no well defined pathology. The hereditary taint is sometimes manifested by errors of development—giving rise to malformations generally known as *stigmata of degeneration*; abnormalities in the course of the cerebral vessels and asymmetries and abnormalities of gyral configuration have been noted.

Treatment.—There is no medical treatment for this disease. In general it may be said that many of the chronic cases require to be cared for throughout their lives in an institution. They are peculiarly unfit to live in the outside world, and sooner or later, as a result of their general conduct or some overt act, are apt to be committed as insane.

The paranoiac character differs in different persons perhaps as much as the normal character. While many paranoiacs are dangerous and should be kept confined, others show no dangerous tendencies, are perhaps naturally timid and never would do any harm, while still others may become resigned. While many of this latter class may often get on for a time, at least, outside of an institution, they should be kept under constant observation, so that changes in their delusional system and in their character of reaction can be noted.

In the mild cases an effort should be made to correct the conditions out of which the conflict developed which was the determining factor in the paranoiac reaction. This can often best be done by an entire change of surroundings which, of course, among the poor, and those in moderate circumstances, means removal to an institution.

CHAPTER VIII.

MANIC-DEPRESSIVE PSYCHOSES.

In the older psychiatry a large number of the cases were classified as mania and melancholia. Practically all excited and exalted cases were included under the designation of mania while all the depressed cases were classed as melancholia. These two psychoses were generally conceded to be recoverable, the percentage of recoveries being figured as high as ninety by some. Then again certain other cases were recognized as having a periodic tendency in which attacks of mania and melancholia followed each other in regular succession. These cases were conceded to be incurable and the anomalous circumstance was recognized of an incurable disease being constituted of phases each one of which consisted, apparently, of an attack of the most curable form of mental disorder.

This condition of affairs continued until Kraepelin came forward with the key to the mystery by demonstrating that circular insanity manifested certain fundamental symptoms which were characteristic of mania and melancholia and also that mania and melancholia rarely occurred in isolated attacks but, on the contrary, during some part of their course exhibited symptoms of the opposite condition—mania of melancholia and melancholia of mania. This analysis gave rise to the conception of a single disease of which mania, melancholia, and circular insanity were so many different manifestations, and to this disease KRAEPELIN gave the name of manic-depressive insanity—the name indicating the principal phases of its occurrence.

Etiology.—The principal cause is hereditary taint, and it is noteworthy that this disease is often found in families, the constitutional condition as the basis on which it develops appearing to be directly transmitted. Although concomitant conditions of stress often occur with the first and even subsequent attacks and appear to condition them, still the attacks are frequently noticeable for their apparent lack of cause, their spontaneous onset thus evidencing their deep-seated constitutional origin. While this is

obviously true, a more careful inquiry will very often develop difficult situations in the patients' lives which immediately preceded the attack and which seem to have been the cause of it. The causative relation is more obvious in some cases in which we see practically the same circumstances develop just before each breakdown such as overwork, family quarrels, etc.

General Symptomatology.—Before proceeding to a description of the different forms of manic-depressive psychosis it may be well to pause for a few moments and study the following diagrams which endeavor to set forth graphically how the various

———— = **DECREASED PSYCHOMOTOR ACTIVITY**
 - - - - - = **INCREASED** " "

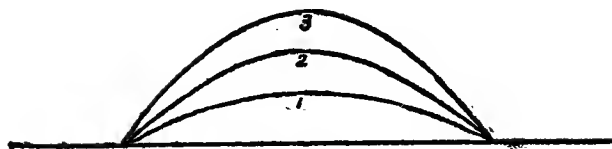
 = **EMOTIONAL EXALTATION**

 = **EMOTIONAL DEPRESSION**

symptoms of the disease may be combined. If note is first made of the general way of representing the opposed conditions of the psychomotor and emotional states what follows will be perfectly clear without further explanation.

The fact must not be lost sight of that the graphic method here used is only employed because of its convenience in picturing the several varieties of the disease. The representation of depressed phases by a curve below and excited phases by a curve above the normal must not be taken too literally. These conditions are strongly contrasted only superficially. A deeper study shows their fundamental relationship. Also a change from depression to exaltation or vice versa would seem to be only possible by passing through a phase, let it be ever so short, of the normal. This, as a matter of fact, need not occur at all. BRESLER¹ has emphasized these points and thinks the different phases of the disorder would be more accurately portrayed by representing both conditions by curves below the normal—the maniac phase being shown by a curve still lower than the depressive.

¹ Bresler: *Wesen und graphische Darstellung des manischen Symptomen-complexes*, *Psych.-Neurol. Wochenschr.*, Jan. 20, 1906.

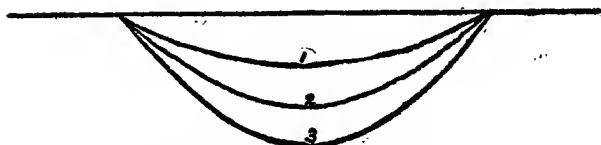


BASE LINE = NORMAL

1 = HYPOMANIA

2 = ACUTE MANIA

3 = HYPERACUTE MANIA



BASE LINE = NORMAL

1 = SIMPLE RETARDATION

2 = ACUTE MELANCHOLIA

3 = STUPOROUS MELANCHOLIA



RECURRENT MANIA

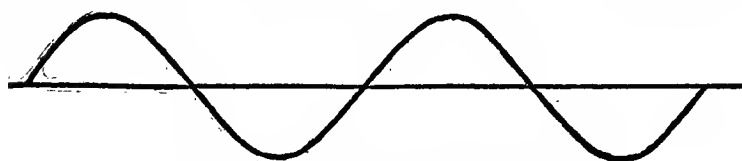


RECURRENT MELANCHOLIA

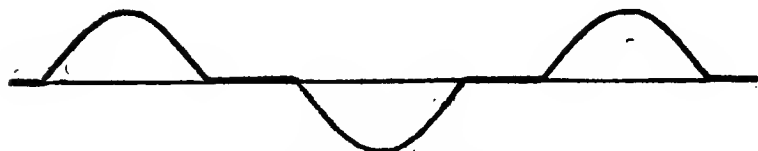
In describing this disease the two principal stages—the *manic* and the *depressive*—will be described first, then the various forms of *periodic insanity*, and finally certain irregular and unusual combinations of symptoms known as the *mixed states* will receive attention.

MANIC PHASE.

This phase of manic-depressive psychosis manifests itself by three cardinal symptoms, viz., (1) *Flight of ideas*. (2) *Psychomotor excitement*. (3) *Emotional excitement*. These symptoms

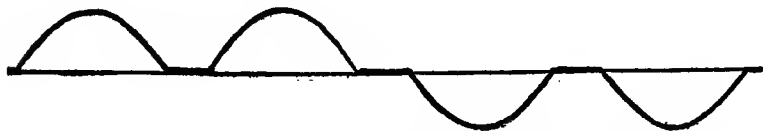


CIRCULAR INSANITY



ALTERNATING INSANITY

may manifest themselves in any degree of severity and the content of consciousness may vary in different cases. For purposes of description it is convenient to divide mania into three grades in accordance with its severity. These grades also answer very well to the clinical types met with although it must of course be under-



ALTERNATING INSANITY OF DOUBLE PHASE

stood that the mania may be of any degree of severity and that in a given case it may manifest itself in different degrees at different times during the same attack.

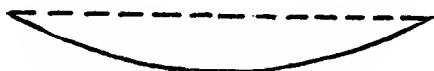
It must not be forgotten, too, that these three cardinal symptoms may not be all of the same degree of severity. For example the flight of ideas may be extreme, out of all proportion to the



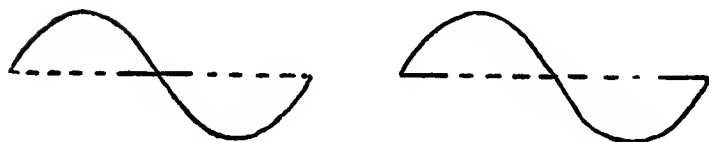
INSANITY OF DOUBLE FORM



MANIACAL STUPOR



AGITATED DEPRESSION



MIXED STATES OCCURRING ESPECIALLY AT THE TRANSITION FROM ONE STAGE TO ANOTHER

amount of psychomotor activity which may only show slight increase.

Hypomania is the term applied to the mildest of these degrees

of maniacal excitement. Here we have in the simpler cases a disorder of the process of thinking rather than in the content of thought. The separate ideas and even acts may not be unusual and yet when taken in their ensemble are seen to be distinctly abnormal. The example given by MERCIER² illustrates this very well. He says of a case of this sort, "Its subject rises early, full of schemes of business or pleasure. He fusses noisily about the house, indifferent to his disturbance of other people's slumbers. He is very impatient of delay, he cannot wait a minute for anything that he wants, and if it is not forthcoming on the instant, he flies into a rage. The course of the post is not expeditious enough for him. He sends his letters by telegraph, and his letters are extraordinarily numerous. They would be numerous in any case, but their number is doubled, and more than doubled, by the frequent changes of his mind, and by the impulsiveness with which he acts upon every passing whim. He determines to make some purchase, probably a very unnecessary one, but one for which he can adduce twenty plausible reasons, and he writes to tell his solicitor that he will call the next morning. Scarcely is the letter posted when he sees that he will attain his object more quickly by asking his solicitor to lunch. He telegraphs accordingly. Before his messenger returns, it occurs to him that he had better ask the vendor to lunch also. Another telegram is dispatched, and since he cannot entertain more than one visitor at his club, another must be sent to the solicitor to announce the change to a hotel. Then he remembers that he has been drawing heavily of late on his banking account, and that he may not have the necessary funds available. Another telegram to the bank. But if there are insufficient funds in the bank, he will have to sell stock to raise the funds; another telegram to his broker. Then he determines that it will be better to pledge the stock to the bank rather than to sell it. More telegrams to the broker and to the bank. The broker won't like the contradictory orders—never mind; ask him to dinner—ask them all to dinner. Put off the lunch and have a dinner instead, and ask the solicitor, the vendor, the banker and the broker. Yes, and why not Smith and Jones and Robinson as well? More telegrams; and then,

² Charles Mercier: *A Text-Book of Insanity*. London and New York, 1902.

since two out of the three of the invited guests decline, the whole thing is postponed, also by telegraph. Meantime, in the intervals of telegraphing, his hands have been full. He has been constantly ringing the bell and giving orders—giving them, modifying them, and countermanding them—constantly wanting something fresh, running up and down stairs, writing letters, haranguing this person and that, flying into a rage upon the slightest opposition, tearing the bell down on the slightest delay, and talking almost incessantly.”

In this example the subject's acts might almost all of them be considered as normal with the exception of those due to undue irritability or anger. Aside from these each act is consistently directed to some definite aim. The disorder is not in the content of thought but in the process of thinking and the disorder of process manifests itself by a rapid, too frequent change of direction.

In this condition we see a patient constantly active, busying himself about one thing and another, talking continuously meanwhile, often in a loud and rather boisterous manner, while emotionally, exaltation is manifested by good humor, a smiling countenance and increased self-esteem, punctuated mayhap by attacks of irritability or impulsive anger with little or no cause. His confidence in his own ability is unqualified and is shown in the outlining of all manner of schemes of work, investments, business enterprises and the like. Flight of ideas is marked though not of high degree, the conversation changing at frequent intervals from subject to subject and the activities show a like characteristic, there being no consistent effort directed toward any one aim for any length of time. Letters are often written in great numbers and their contents exhibit the same characteristics as do the speech and conduct. The patient is fully oriented, there is no clouding of consciousness nor delusions. In spite, however, of the lucidity and apparent abundance of energy the real efficiency of the individual is greatly reduced largely because of the lack of consecutiveness in application. Ofttimes the picture is complicated by the addition of symptoms due to alcoholic indulgence which is very common in patients in this condition, many of whom show marked moral delinquencies and because of their lucidity and facility of expression often elude the authorities, being at

once discharged after examination when apprehended because of supposed insanity.

The next grade of maniacal excitement presents perhaps the most characteristic picture of this phase and is the classical condition of *acute mania*.

In this condition the flight of ideas is well marked even to the point oftentimes that the train of thought is apparently quite incoherent. *Distractibility* is a prominent feature and the almost constant flow of ideas frequently refers to something seen or heard in the environment. A tendency to rhyme is not infrequently present and words heard by the patient are often woven into or form the starting point for these rhymes which may be nothing more than a string of words of similar sound (*clang association*). It is quite remarkable how such a patient who is apparently paying no heed to what is going on about him will catch a chance word or phrase uttered by some one, perhaps a considerable distance away, and introduce it into the stream of his conversation.

Consciousness may be more or less clouded and there is often some disorientation; this is especially noticeable for persons. This condition, however, is largely if not wholly due to the disorder of attention. The patient does not adequately perceive the environment, therefore a comprehensive idea of it is not obtained and in the rapid and transitory survey a superficial quality is often emphasized—perhaps some resemblance—and the person or object is mistaken. In this way the nurses and physicians are called by the names of friends or relatives and the surroundings are said to be those of some place the patient has been in the past. These errors are, however, often not firmly fixed and the patient may correct them spontaneously at times.

The disorders of attention, flight, distractibility are all elements in producing a content of consciousness in which all ideas have the same value. Nothing is attended to long enough to give it an importance greater than other experiences, ideas are voiced first about this subject and then about that, the patient changing from subject to subject without attaching more importance to one than to another, without being led by one idea to the exclusion of others—there is a *leveling of ideas*—all ideas reach the same level of importance in consciousness.

Hallucinations are not infrequent. They are usually elementary in character, simple and transitory.

Delusions may also be present but are not fixed but changeable, coming and going. They are usually of a grandiose character, but lack the element of extreme improbability or absolute ridiculousness often seen in conditions of dementia. Occasionally a paranoid state develops with quite stable delusions of persecution. This condition is difficult to diagnose especially if the excitement is of a mild character as in hypomania.

The psychomotor activity is constant. There seems to be absolute inability to keep quiet—*pressure of activity*—the patient runs and jumps, turns somersaults, waves the arms about, tears up his clothing, destroys plants, breaks furniture, howls and yells all night long, going almost absolutely without sleep, often showing marked sexual excitement. The excitement is so great that these patients do not even take time to eat, food placed before them is perhaps tasted and then thrown about like everything else that comes in their way, so that emaciation soon becomes marked. In less marked degrees of excitement, however, it is common for this class of patients to gain in weight.

The *emotional exaltation* is marked and shown by boisterous laughter and remarks showing exaggerated ideas of self-esteem and personal prowess. The patients are apt to be very irritable in this condition and are constantly fomenting trouble of some sort on the wards where they are confined.

The third grade of maniacal excitement is merely a more aggravated form of the condition just described and may be called *delirious mania*.

In this condition the flight is so great as to amount to almost complete incoherence, the activity is unremitting, consciousness is more clouded and hallucinations are more in evidence. The condition leads to great exhaustion and physical depletion, and it frequently happens that, as a result of slight scratches and bruises obtained during the period of great motor restlessness, and which are not allowed to be properly dressed, local areas of suppuration develop, so that a mild septicemia with some temperature complicates the picture. Exhaustion and toxemia are both now added, the clouding of consciousness becomes profound, a true delirium takes the place of the flight, marked by great incoherence and

complete confusion (*secondary confusion*) with transitory and elementary sensory falsifications.

The *acute delirious mania*, which used to be described as always and invariably fatal, was probably in a certain proportion of cases an aggravated form of the manic stage of manic-depressive psychosis. It is probable, however, that it was more usually an acute psychosis associated with some serious, though often unrecognized, condition of the internal organs, as *i. e.*, an acute nephritis or pneumonia. It can be readily seen how such conditions might be overlooked in patients so wildly excited and autopsies of late have tended to show that this was the case.

A very few cases, usually late in the history of the disease, do not recover in the usual length of time from their maniacal period. They pass into a condition of chronic excitement—*chronic mania*—which may in exceptional cases last several years. The exact nature of these cases is not understood.

DEPRESSIVE PHASE.

This phase of manic-depressive psychosis also manifests itself by three cardinal symptoms, each one of which is opposed to the corresponding symptom of the manic stage, viz., 1. *Difficulty of thinking.* 2. *Psychomotor retardation.* 3. *Emotional depression.*

This set of symptoms may, as in the manic set, manifest itself with any degree of severity and the three symptoms may not all vary proportionately. The retardation, for example, may be quite out of all proportion to the depression.

As with the manic phase it is convenient to consider the depressive phase in three different grades.

The mildest grade of depression is called *simple retardation*. The word retardation here, as frequently, refers not only to psychomotor retardation but to the difficulty in thinking, as the two phenomena are in reality similar manifestations in different spheres. This designation—simple retardation—is significant, too, because the emotional state is not indicated and as a matter of fact is of less importance diagnostically than the retardation.

These patients move slowly, speak slowly and in a low tone, often only just above a whisper, and by preference answer questions in monosyllables. They sit about with folded hands doing nothing; they are incapable of effort of any sort, even reading is

not indulged in, for, aside from the effort required, what is read is not assimilated, ideas are not called up by what is read, and the continuous effort is impossible.

Emotionally the patient is depressed but the depression may not be at all marked and in these cases the facial expression may fail to indicate it at all. They often realize their mental invalidism and are distressed by it. Consciousness is not clouded and they are fully oriented.

The next grade of depression is the ordinary *acute melancholia*. In this condition the three cardinal symptoms of depression are manifested in a much more pronounced way. The patients are inactive, sitting by themselves, showing little or no tendency to associate with others, their movements are very slow and deliberate, and it often takes a considerable time to initiate them (initial retardation). The speech is similarly affected; it is slow, preferably monosyllabic, and often almost inaudible. Initial retardation is very noticeable here also. The emotional depression is profound and is indicated in the attitude which is in general one of flexion, the hands lie limp in the lap, the head is inclined forward so that the chin rests on the breast, the shoulders are also bent forward and the whole attitude, together with the facial expression, indicates sadness.

In this condition delusions are the rule and are typically *self-accusatory*. The patients think themselves responsible for all the sin and wickedness or privation and suffering in the world; they are the cause of the unfortunate condition of their fellow patients, have themselves committed some great sin, and are forever and absolutely lost. They very often, too, have *hypochondriacal ideas*, think they have some incurable disease, that their organs are decayed, something has happened to their brains, their bowels are stopped up and the like.

The changes in the organic sensations produce peculiar feelings which are variously interpreted, often leading to more or less *disaggregation of the personality*, the strange feelings being supposed to indicate mysterious changes going on within the body. A patient will keep going to the looking-glass to look at her eyes, averring that they look like cat's eyes, that they are cat's eyes. It is only a step from this condition to a belief in the complete

transformation of the personality or a belief that another being has taken possession of their body and expresses itself in their acts.

Hallucinations also occur, but consciousness is usually quite clear and the patient may be fully oriented. However, a marked degree of clouding is not uncommon and hallucinations and delusions may be the outcome of insufficient perception of the environment, as in the instance previously cited of the patient, who, profoundly depressed, was so wrapped up in her sufferings that she did not perceive the nurse bring the tray of food and set it beside her and when her attention was called to it thought it must have been placed there by some mysterious agency.

Physically there is almost invariably present constipation, coated tongue, indicanuria, poor appetite, loss of weight, with disturbed sleep and poor circulation, with cold and often blue extremities.

The third and most marked grade of depression is *depressive stupor*. In this condition the retardation has proceeded to such an extent that the patient does not speak. He lies in bed, often for days at a time, in this almost absolutely inactive state, having to be fed and his every want ministered to.

During this condition of great retardation the patient may be suffering from the most dreadful delusions and hallucinations. This condition of mind may be shown by an anxious expression of countenance, but its details can only be learned after the patient recovers sufficiently to describe them. The hallucinations present themselves to the patient as in a dream and there is a considerable degree of clouding of consciousness present, to some extent due to the absorption of the patient's attention by these hallucinations.

This condition of stupor is common in the course of melancholia and occurs as an episode more often than as a distinct form of the disease.

THE PERIODICAL PSYCHOSES.

Under this head are included those forms which have been severally described as recurrent mania, periodic mania, intermittent mania, recurrent melancholia, insanity of double form, alternating insanity, etc.

All of these psychoses are merely different manifestations of manic-depressive psychosis, the manic and depressive stages being represented in various relations, often separated by a lucid inter-

val. Thus recurrent mania would be recurrent attacks of the manic stage separated by lucid intervals, similarly for recurrent melancholia, while alternating insanity would consist of manic and depressive attacks, each followed by a lucid interval; circular insanity, on the other hand, being cycles of manic and depressive phases without intervals of separation, while insanity of double form would consist of cycles of excitation and depression, each cycle followed by a lucid interval. Other varieties might be described, but it suffices to say that the three phases—manic, depressive and lucid interval—may be combined in any possible way, and that further in a given case any degree of the manic or depressive phase may occur.

The following is an account by an intelligent woman of her feelings in both periods of excitement and depression:

"I have suffered all my life from excitements and depressions, although it was not until I was fifty-eight years of age that my family and I realized that I was really insane, and required institutional care. During youth and middle age my excitements were of a mild character, and during these periods I considered myself normal. I felt peculiarly happy and care free. I managed my household affairs with the greatest ease. I entertained and mingled in society with pleasure and zest. I was lively, talkative and I have reason to believe I was witty and entertaining. I could work without an effort. I at times accomplished almost Herculean tasks. On one occasion I remember preparing and conducting a church entertainment by which the sum of \$800.00 was raised. Of late years my excitements have grown more severe. I begin by taking an overactive interest in everything going on around me. Everything seems rosy. I feel happy and nothing depresses me. I feel propelled by some unknown force to constant action. I am possessed with the idea of righting wrongs and straightening out things in general. All the faults in the administration of the ward, the Hospital and the Government must be corrected.

"My excitements have never led me to commit any acts of violence. I occupy myself largely in talking and writing letters. My room is often in disorder because I cannot stay at one job long enough to complete it. As I feel these excitements approaching, I request the physician in charge of me to take up my parole, as I know I shall be moved to do and say many foolish things of which I will be ashamed later. No one who has not had experience can realize the mortification of having been insane.

"My depressions in early life were as mild as my excitements, the onset was gradual. I felt a disinclination to mingle in society. When forced to do so I sat like a "dummy" and could think of nothing to say. My household duties became a burden. One after another of these was dropped

until the care of the household was entirely given over to relatives or servants. I learned from experience a treatment of my own. As soon as I felt a depression approaching, I promptly dropped everything and left home for a time. I found by getting away from family cares and responsibilities, and from the demands of society, to some quiet spot, I could shorten the duration of these depressions. In recent years the depressions have appeared suddenly. One day I went to town to do some shopping for a friend. I went to a grocery store to make some purchases. It suddenly occurred to me that I could make these to much better advantage at the market only a block away. Suddenly I realized that I did not have sufficient energy to go to the market, and that another depression was upon me. It was with the greatest difficulty that I ordered the goods, paid for them and came home. At these times my brain feels paralyzed. I have not the strength or ambition to do anything. I am apprehensive lest some harm has befallen the members of my family, but to save my life, I could not write or telephone to find out if my fears are true. I have the impulse to act, but it seems as if something shuts down and prohibits action. I see my clothes becoming soiled—I know I should change them, but I cannot pull out the drawer of my bureau and get clean ones. This inertia is greater in the morning than at night. Before I came to the Government Hospital I had servants who slept at home, and came to my house early in the morning. When my husband was away and my children were small, it devolved upon me to admit these servants early in the morning. I knew that when morning came to dress and go down stairs would be impossible. I solved the difficulty by dressing the night before and sleeping in my clothes. When the depression is most profound, I move in a fixed groove. I never vary a hair's breadth. At first I have a desire to remain in bed. Once this is overcome I have no choice but to remain up. I sit in the same seat and in the same attitude for weeks. As I come down stairs in the morning I am apprehensive lest my seat be taken, and I wonder what I shall do if it should be occupied, although the sitting room is well supplied with comfortable seats. I bring a shawl with me, and place it in the chair so that no one will appropriate it while I am at breakfast.

"After each depression, I suffer from intense pain in my back, side, shoulders and arms. This is dull and aching in character, and remains with me for weeks after the depression has disappeared. After the last depression I suffered from a severe attack of the shingles. The skin eruption has now disappeared, but the pain still remains."

The mild grade of the manic-depressive psychosis, those cases in which it would be well nigh impossible to make a diagnosis from seeing a single attack, is sometimes called *cyclothymia*. Here one must get the history over a sufficiently long period to show the periodic changes of character in order to appreciate the nature of the trouble.

These cases are of great clinical importance because quite characteristically associated with visceral disturbances. In the mild depressions symptoms will be complained of which refer perhaps to the gastro-intestinal or the genito-urinary systems. The true nature of the cases is usually not recognized and their spontaneous recovery referred to the treatment. Many of the so-called dipsomanias are dependent upon recurrent manic-depressive episodes.

THE MIXED STATES.

The mixed states are forms of manic-depressive psychosis in which the three cardinal symptoms of the manic and depressive phases are mixed so that the resulting state is neither one. They are: (1) *Maniacal Stupor*, (2) *Agitated Depression*, (3) *Unproductive Mania*, (4) *Depressive Mania*, (5) *Depression with Flight of Ideas*, (6) *Akinetic Mania*. It will suffice to merely mention the symptoms of these groups.

Maniacal Stupor.—Emotional exaltation, decreased psychomotor activity, difficulty of thinking.

Agitated Depression.—Emotional depression, increased psychomotor activity, flight of ideas.

Unproductive Mania.—Emotional exaltation, increased psychomotor activity, difficulty of thinking.

Depressive Mania.—Emotional depression, difficulty of thinking, increased psychomotor activity.

Depression with Flight of Ideas.—Emotional depression, flight of ideas, decreased psychomotor activity.

Akinetic Mania.—Emotional exaltation, flight of ideas, decreased psychomotor activity.

Still the possibilities are not exhausted. It is quite uncommon to see any one of the conditions already described continue pure from the commencement to the end of the attack. In the manic phase symptoms of depression not infrequently crop up and occupy the field temporarily, while during the depressive phase it is quite as common to note transitory periods of excitement. Then it is quite common for manic attacks to be preceded by a longer or shorter attack of depression, and sometimes such a period of depression follows, not infrequently but partial depression, of the type of unproductive mania. The depressive phase shows similar variations, more particularly it is followed by a

short period of exaltation. Then, again, at any stage of the disease a mixed state may crop up for a time, so that we may see during the course of the manic phase psychomotor retardation occur or during the phase of depression emotional exaltation may develop, while in the various forms of the periodic psychoses it is quite the rule to find these mixed states at the transition places from one phase to another, all of the symptoms of one phase not equally and contemporaneously graduating into their opposites. Thus during the course of a circular insanity the affect may change from depression to exaltation before the psychomotor retardation has given place to increased psychomotor activity, thus producing a temporary mixed state.

Course and Prognosis.—The individual attacks vary in duration from a few days to several months, some attacks, however, being greatly prolonged. Recovery from the single attack is the rule, while the likelihood of subsequent attacks is considerable. The prognosis for this disease is therefore poor as to ultimate recovery, although good for the separate attacks. Sudden onset is, on the whole, rather indicative of as sudden recovery and future attacks may be presumed to follow, in general, the course of the past ones. As the years go by the attacks are apt to recur with greater frequency, the lucid interval becoming shorter and shorter, though even after a great number there may be no evidences of mental deterioration unless, perchance, the reduction of senescence has supervened meantime.

There has been some discussion as to whether recovery from the separate attacks was a true restitution to the normal or whether the patient did not, as a matter of fact, show symptoms of the disorder in the intervals. Contrary views are held on this point. It should be recalled, in this connection, that recent research has indicated that this group of disorders develops in characters which have a manic-depressive coloring, that is, which show tendencies to depressions and excitements not sufficiently well marked to be called abnormal. A return to normal, therefore, might be a return to such a type of character. Of course the question still remains open as to whether recovery really takes place or whether we are dealing with a constitutional psychopathic make-up with episodic exacerbations. Recovery certainly takes place so far as all practical issues are concerned.

Differential Diagnosis.—The manic phase may be confused with the excitement of dementia precox. The presence of signs of deterioration in this latter disease, however, will usually make the diagnosis, though there are cases that are extremely difficult to differentiate and considerable time must be allowed to elapse before a diagnosis can be made.

The depressive phase is more apt to be confounded with the melancholia of the involutional period: particularly is this true of the mixed state of agitated depression.

The excited and stuporous states of catatonia may be confounded. The excitement of catatonia does not show typical flight—the degree of incoherence is often out of all proportion to the grade of excitement. The stupor of catatonia is often associated with negativism and muscular tension, while the face is either expressionless or perhaps grimacing. In depressive stupor the facial expression often shows the great mental suffering of profound depression.

The great general principle of diagnosis in this disease, aside from the presence of the classical symptoms, is the occurrence of repeated attacks. A history of previous attacks, perhaps too mild to be considered as such by the family, will almost always be brought out by careful questioning. Next in importance to the history of repeated attacks is the history of attacks of both manic and depressive character, often showing at their onset or termination a short period of a mixed state.

It must not be forgotten, however, that all acute psychoses tend to recur. The individual once having suffered from mental disease has thereby a diminished resistance which often shows itself in future attacks.

Pathology.—There are no pathological findings which can be designated as characteristic of this disease. Patients dying during an attack almost invariably succumb to some intercurrent affection, so that any changes primarily produced by the disease would be greatly if not altogether obscured.

Treatment.—Many of the cases of hypomania require sequestration because of their tendency to commit alcoholic and sexual excesses and to make foolish financial ventures. Further than this, with perhaps the occasional exhibition of a hypnotic, no treatment is indicated.

The more excited cases have to be guarded particularly against exhaustion. To this end great care should be taken to see that sufficient food is taken and prompt recourse had to artificial feeding if necessary. For the insomnia hot milk at bedtime, hydrotherapy (hot pack or bath) and hypnotics should be tried in the order named:—sulfonal, trional, veronal, chloralmid—while chloral and bromides, unless indicated for some special reason, should be avoided. For the motor restlessness watch the patient and keep him from injuring himself. Resort may be had to the wet pack or the continuous bath. If these means fail hyoscyamine may be used hypodermically.

Three to five minims of the centesimal solution of the amorphous sulphate of hyoscamine with an equal quantity of Magendie's solution usually works nicely. The patient should always be kept under close observation after such an injection and as the effects are quite disagreeable and often continue during the next day it should not be repeated unless absolutely necessary. The judicious use of hydrotherapy, however, will usually make it unnecessary to resort to restraint either mechanical or chemical. For the exhaustion, hypodermoclysis is often valuable.

In the depressed cases care should be exercised to see that sufficient food is taken, the emunctories watched, and the patient kept under continuous observation if there is any suspicion of a suicidal tendency.

Prophylaxis.—It is important to sufficiently analyze these cases to determine the conditions which led to the breakdown so that when the patient recovers appropriate steps may be taken to protect him from a recurrence of these same conditions. The conditions should be removed or the patient removed from them or if they are inevitable, such as incompatible home relations, the patient should be advised how to attempt to adjust to them.

CHAPTER IX.

PARESIS.

General Characterization.—General paresis is an organic disease of the brain of an inflammatory and degenerative nature, involving in the main the leptomeninges and the cortex and manifesting itself by certain physical symptoms and a progressive mental deterioration upon which may be engrafted various other symptoms of mental disturbance.

Etiology.—The etiology of paresis has long been a matter of contention but the opinion that in some way syphilis is a necessary pre-condition to the development of the disease has been held for a considerable time. The following are the arguments that have been adduced for and against this opinion.

Paresis is unknown in regions where syphilis is unknown.

Under circumstances in which syphilis is rare paresis is likewise rare.

A history of syphilis is found much more frequently in paresis than in the other psychoses.

In juvenile paresis syphilis is always found in the parents.

Inoculation of paretics with syphilitic virus fails to produce syphilis. Conjugal general paresis occurs.

The absence of signs of recent syphilis in paretics admitted to hospitals, though the irregular life so many of these cases lead in the early stages of their disease must certainly expose them.

A number of arguments against the hypothesis that syphilis is necessary for the development of paresis must not be lost sight of. For example:

All paretics do not present a history of syphilis. Neither do all syphilitics. Twenty per cent. of known syphilitics with well-marked tertiary lesions will not present a history of infection. It must not be forgotten, too, that the fact of syphilitic infection is not generally confided to friends and relatives, while at the time of admission to the hospital the patient may be in such a mental state as to preclude the possibility of getting a history from him.

Only a small percentage of syphilitics develop paresis: syphilis is the much more common disease. The percentage of paresis, however, is increasing markedly—partly probably because it is being much more frequently recognized.

Paresis is rare in certain countries where syphilis is common—Egypt and a few years ago at least in Japan. This would indicate, however, that other factors were required to reduce cerebral resistance and thus make it the *locus minoris resistentiæ*, on which the poison might produce its effect.

Anti-syphilitic treatment does not ameliorate the symptoms in paresis. This is probably due to the fact that the lesions are not directly syphilitic, but that in all probability some intermediate process occurs—thus syphilis is a necessary antecedent to this train of events only.

Since the application of serum diagnostic methods to syphilis hardly any doubt can remain of the syphilitic etiology of paresis. Paretics give practically one hundred per cent. of positive results to the Wassermann reaction.

General Considerations.—Protean as are the manifestations of this disease, it is not strange that it should often go unrecognized during its early stages, yet there is probably no disease in which a failure to make a correct diagnosis is fraught with such manifold dangers, not only to the patient but to his family, his friends, or in fact to any one who, not recognizing his condition, may be induced, for instance, to enter into business relations with him. It is during this early period that those unfortunate occurrences are so frequent which might have been prevented if the true condition of the patient had been recognized.

Manifesting itself in its incipency by symptoms of defective intelligence, lack of judgment, memory defects, and moral obtuseness, we frequently see the most pitiful of pictures—a previously respected citizen, father of a family, occupying an enviable social position, become at the height of his career an ardent worshiper at the shrines of Venus and Bacchus. Friends and relatives see nothing in these manifestations but the outcropping of original sin and are distracted by their inability to stay the career of drunkenness and vice upon which their erstwhile respected relative has entered. How many heartaches, how many pangs of anguish, how many blushes of shame could be spared the wife

and children of such a man if the family physician did but recognize in these occurrences the symptoms of the onset of a mental disease and advise them what course to pursue.

An acute attack of maniacal excitement, the delirium of an acute toxic psychosis, are early recognized and even the slowly developing depression of the melancholiac, or the gradual change of character of the paranoiac, is usually appreciated before any serious harm can come. But here we have a disease, afflicting one when at the very zenith of his physical and mental powers, insidious in its onset yet capable of so changing the character in a few weeks that the previously honest, upright, moral, truth-loving, sober citizen becomes the votary of every form of vice, sinks to the depths of drunkenness and debauchery, and may even stain his hands in blood. But this is not the worst; all these things would ultimately find their explanation when the disease that was responsible for them came finally to be recognized and in the light of its diagnosis they would be excused. But it so happens that such a man as I have pictured is generally the guardian of the family exchequer. When this is the case it almost invariably happens that he wastes considerable amounts of money in his debauchery, becomes involved in unfortunate and ill-advised speculations, often at the solicitation of "sharpers" who only too well appreciate his poor judgment and gullibility—and finally, when he has succeeded in hopelessly entangling his business affairs and plunging himself into debt, he is committed to an institution and his family only then come to a realization that they are penniless. The pity of it all is that it might have been prevented.

Before taking up the description of this disease, it is desirable to correct two pretty generally diffused misapprehensions regarding it. First, the diagnosis of paresis does not rest solely upon the mental symptoms. Paresis is a gross organic metasyphilitic disease of the brain and its diagnosis must rest largely upon an appreciation of the physical signs which these changes bring about, particularly in the field of motor disturbance. Second, grandiose delusions of great wealth, power and strength are in no wise a necessary part of the symptom picture, and while the so-called classical type of paresis does present such delusions, still there are reasons for believing that this type is becoming less frequent.

For convenience of description paresis may be divided into three periods. First, the prodromal period; second, the period of the fully developed disease, and third, the terminal period.

FIRST PERIOD.

Physical Symptoms.—Of these by far the most important are the oculo-motor and tendon reflex disturbances. In the oculo-motor phenomena the pupillary abnormalities are most important. The loss of the *light reflex* with retention of the reaction to accommodation, the Argyll-Robertson pupil, is one of the most valuable diagnostic signs of beginning paresis, in the absence of tabes, as it frequently occurs very early. This symptom is present in 45 per cent. of cases. A sluggish reaction to light, probably the beginning stage of the Argyll-Robertson pupil, is found in 28.3 per cent., while a normal light reflex is present in 26.3 per cent. It is generally conceded, however, that the Argyll-Robertson pupil is much more common in the tabetic type of paresis—84 per cent. (BUMKE).¹

In this connection the observations of MARANDON DE MONTYEL,² published in June, 1905, are interesting.

This author has made observations of the light reflex upon 140 paretics from the beginning of the disease until death. Fifty of the patients died in the first stage, 36 in the second, and 54 in the third. Of the 54 who lived through the entire evolution of the disease every one showed some abnormality at one time or another. Of the 140 patients, the reflex was always normal in 24 per cent., always abnormal in 17 per cent., and alternated in 58 per cent. Taken by stages, in the first stage, 42 per cent. were always normal; the second stage, 29 per cent., and in the third, 3 per cent. Those always abnormal: first stage, 24 per cent.; second, 34 per cent., and third, 85 per cent. Those which alternated: first stage, 32 per cent.; second, 35 per cent., and third, 11 per cent. In the first stage 6 per cent. were exaggerated in both eyes; 10 per cent. showed diminution and abolition of the reflex in one eye.

¹ Bumke: Die Pupillenstörungen bei Geistes- und Nervenkrankheiten. Verlag von Gustav Fischer in Jena, 1904.

² E. Marandon de Montyel: Le réflexe lumineux dans la paralysie générale, Arch. d. Neurologie, Juin, 1905.

The author claims that this is the first complete series of cases and that the conclusions are much more reliable than those based upon a much larger number of isolated observations taken at random in the disease.

In examining for these conditions care should be taken that movements of accommodation are not mistaken for reactions to light by having the patient fix the gaze upon some object, the pupils should be equally illuminated, and the light should not be too bright, as under these circumstances a sluggish reaction might be masked.

Earlier still than loss of the direct light reflex, BERKLEY³ believes, can often be found loss of the consensual light reflex. The *consensual reflex* consists in the dilatation and contraction of the pupil of one eye when the other is shaded or exposed to direct light. It is quite possible, I believe, that the loss of this reflex is an early stage in the development of the Argyll-Robertson pupil and should always be tested for. This condition is usually found when a sluggish light reflex is present. LEWIS⁴ claims that a still earlier symptom than any of these is the loss of the *sympathetic reflex* (the dilatation of the pupil on stimulating the skin of the neck). Sixty-three and six tenths per cent. of his cases showed this symptom, several of them with light and consensual reflexes.

(Of the tendon reflexes the only one I will here consider is the knee-jerk. This may be normal, exaggerated, diminished or lost on one or both sides.) The exaggerated reflex is most common, but I agree with SOMMER⁵ in his statement that although this is so the absence of the knee-jerk is of much greater diagnostic importance, as there are many more causes for its exaggeration other than paresis than there are for its abolition. This sign, also, of course, depends for its importance upon the elimination of other possible etiological factors, especially tabes.

Mental Symptoms.—The mental symptoms of the prodromal period are often not appreciated at the time of their occurrence but only after the disease has been recognized in its fully developed state and then in looking back over the past few months

³ Berkley, Henry J.: A Treatise on Mental Diseases. New York, D. Appleton & Co., 1900.

⁴ Lewis, W. Bevan: A Text-Book of Mental Diseases. London, 1899.

⁵ Sommer, Robert: Diagnostik der Geisteskrankheiten. Berlin und Wien, 1901.

various occurrences which were then not appreciated at their true value are seen in their real relation to the development of the disease.

In general, these mental symptoms are symptoms of a gradual change of character and of progressively failing mental and physical powers. There is a beginning failure on the part of the patient to continuously apply himself to his work and mental application of any sort soon brings on fatigue; memory is not quite so good and business engagements and the details of business are forgotten, the morale of the patient is quite apt to undergo alteration, and he may go to excess in drinking and associate with lewd women oftentimes openly, without shame, which is of course of most significance if contrary to his previous habits and ideals. In addition to these symptoms he shows poor judgment in his business relations and may not only risk large sums of money on hair-brained schemes, but may enter into all sorts of financial relations with persons and preserve no records to show what they were.

The appearance of the patient may also indicate the beginning of mental reduction; he is less careful about his personal appearance, wears soiled linen, has forgotten to button his vest, or to put on a necktie; his clothes are shabby and soiled, and in general the degradation toward which his condition is tending has begun to show itself.

The mental symptoms, as already indicated, are symptoms of dementia, gradual, progressive, and more or less uniform failure of the mental powers upon which, it is true, may be engrafted the picture of almost any psychosis, but which inevitably and of necessity modify that picture in a way more or less characteristic of the underlying defect. This dementia manifests itself by failure of memory, defective judgment, inability to apply the mind consecutively for any length of time, and failure of the moral sense. The picture, from a mental viewpoint, is then one of a gradually deepening dementia, correlated with organic changes in the cerebral cortex, a true organic dementia. If upon this basis of organic dementia there be erected mayhap symptoms of excitement or depression, delusions of a hypochondriacal or grandiose nature, multiform hallucinations and illusions, a true delirium, these symptoms may properly be considered as accompaniments. Thus

a distinction is made between *paralytic dementia*, the direct result of the destruction of brain tissue and the fundamental symptom on the mental side of the disease, and *paralytic psychosis*, which consists of the various other symptoms of mental disturbance which may be engrafted on the demented background.

Developing as they do, however, upon a groundwork of dementia, we would expect them to manifest themselves differently than would be the case if their foundation had been originally an unimpaired mind. This we find preëminently to be the case. The grandiose parietic is not content with possessing a few paltry thousands but reckons his fortune by quintillions; he has solid gold carriages, harnesses set in precious stones and offers me each morning a fleet of ships to go around the world with, a million dollars and a thousand wives. The depressed parietic has caused the death of untold myriads of human beings, the hypochondriacal has no stomach, no bowels, no brains, etc. The delusions are marked by an absurdity which can only result from the defective judgment and impaired intelligence of dementia.

These advanced conditions of delusional states are not usually found in this period of the disease but belong typically to the next, the period of full development. They are quoted here merely to illustrate fully what is meant by the statement that the dementia of paresis is the underlying and essential symptom. The demented type, without marked delusions or sensory falsifications, is the truly typical variety of the disease and the dementia the basal element of all forms.

This dementia may, however, not be apparent; it may be necessary to seek for its manifestations. In the very early stages the outward symptoms may be those of irritability and an untoward restlessness which may exhibit itself in many ways, as, for instance, useless business activity, fits of violent rage over trivial annoyances, and slight lapses of memory. If the reasons for all these things be inquired into, however, they will be found inadequate, often puerile.

We find often in this stage of the disease the beginnings of those speech defects which later are to become so characteristic. At this time there may be only a suspicion of the true parietic speech in the slight hesitation and occasional almost unnoticeable

defect in a single word. Such patients often say test words, such as hippopotamus, communicability, circumstantiality, perambulator, quite correctly. It would seem that the defect is as yet so slight that the mere effort as the result of conscious attention is sufficient to overcome it. In such cases the test words should be combined into sentences to catch the patient unawares, as it were. I had a patient who said test words and phrases perfectly, yet there was a noticeable defect in an occasional word in her ordinary conversation. If she were asked, however, to repeat this word it was done promptly and correctly. If the speech defect is slightly more marked we may notice a slight tremor about the muscles of the mouth which is brought out by a difficult word or by emotional excitement. We should be careful in interpreting this tremor, however, as we find it present in many conditions other than paresis.

SECOND PERIOD.

Physical Symptoms.—The symptoms already described become more marked. The tremor especially is more in evidence and is of the fibrillary variety; the muscular weakness is noticeable and is in marked contrast to the well-nourished appearance of the patient, who quite characteristically takes on flesh in this stage; the Romberg symptom becomes much more marked, so that the patient may fall when the eyes are shut; the walk is more ataxic—especially in those cases that have begun with tabetic symptoms—the *tabetic variety*. Certain cases in which focal symptoms are clinically pronounced are referred to as *Lissauer's type*.

Characteristic of paresis, and occasionally but not frequently occurring early in its course, are the so-called *paretic seizures* which arbitrarily may be said to mark the beginning of the second stage. These may vary in severity and character from light syncopal attacks with pallor and temporary prostration to severe apoplectiform and epileptiform crises. The epileptiform attacks may be of the petit mal or grand mal type and without the history may be indistinguishable from true epilepsy.

These *epileptiform seizures* may be severe or slight and may involve any portion of the musculature and be accompanied by loss of consciousness or not. Occasionally a seizure is the first symptom to attract attention, and if the patient is alcoholic, it

may under such circumstances be extremely difficult to make a diagnosis from alcoholic epilepsy. In general, the seizures last longer than the epileptic convulsion, and occurring in a person thirty to forty years of age without previous history of epilepsy or alcoholism, should at once suggest paresis. They are less apt to be associated with loss of consciousness. Occasionally these seizures last for days, the muscular twitching spreading from one part of the body to another, with clouding of consciousness but not complete unconsciousness all of the time. There may also be conjugate deviation of the eyes and in many cases a marked rise of temperature. Under such circumstances pneumonia is particularly to be feared as a fatal intercurrent disease.

The *apoplectiform seizures* resemble in every way true apoplexy but the resulting paralysis is less apt to be permanent; in fact, it may entirely disappear in a most remarkable fashion in two or three days. It must not be forgotten that the paretic may, of course, have a frank apoplectic attack with resulting permanent paralysis. Transitory muscular paralyses, not infrequently of the extrinsic eye muscles, may, however, occur apart from these seizures. They are of short duration and clear up rapidly.

After a seizure it is usual to find that the patient is somewhat more demented. This is a distinguishing feature from epilepsy.

The cause of these seizures cannot be satisfactorily explained, but they are perhaps due to local conditions in the brain of both toxicity and edema. They may be explained as a result of the extensive destructive process going on and the clogging of the lymph channels, so that the waste products cannot be removed readily.

Mental Symptoms.—The mental symptoms of this period are merely more exaggerated expressions of those already described. The symptoms of mental reduction—dementia—become more and more prominent. Memory fails utterly, so that the patient may not recall the location of his room that he has lived in for weeks; spatial, temporal and personal disorientation appear; a true occupation delirium may develop, the patient being often found carrying on his accustomed business operations oblivious of his surroundings; the simplest mental operations, such as adding a column of figures, have become impossible; the emotional deterioration is prominent, the patient pays no attention to his family and may

not be affected even by the death of one of them. The speech disturbance which has been in evidence usually for some time becomes much more prominent. Syllables are reduplicated, words are left out or stumbled over, the voice is harsh and lacking in melody. The writing presents similar defects and although sometimes the first few words are fairly done soon becomes almost absolutely illegible, a mass of scrolls, blots, erasures, or the patient may fail absolutely after several efforts to write at all.

In this fully developed stage the disease occurs in four types, viz., the demented, excited, agitated and depressed.

The *demented* type, as has been explained, constitutes the typical variety of the disease and is the type which has been thus far described.

The *excited* or *expansive* type is marked by more active symptoms and typically by *grandiose delusions*. This constitutes the so-called *classical paralysis*. These ideas of grandeur are marked, as already explained, by their absurd character, the patients believing themselves to have great strength, they can lift enormous weights, have fabulous wealth, so much money in fact that ordinary words are insufficient to express the amount and words have to be invented for that purpose, possess thousands of carriages with trimmings of gold and precious stones, fleets of vessels to take friends on tours about the world, write checks for millions and distribute them indiscriminately. One patient was importing carloads of bloodhounds, another had invented a special kind of axle-grease and offers to give thousands of carloads to anyone who will introduce it to the railroads and called to see the President to get him to have a law enacted so that he could draw upon the Treasury to finance his scheme. With these delusional symptoms there goes a great deal of motor unrest, the patient constantly busies himself drawing up schemes, writing checks, talking, etc., and suffers from insomnia.

The *agitated* type, sometimes called when extreme *galloping paresis*, is a more aggravated form of the excited type. In this condition the motor restlessness and insomnia is extreme, there supervenes marked emaciation, the delusions, while of the expansive type, are rapidly changeable and there is a marked flight of ideas, with considerable clouding of consciousness. Some temperature usually coexists and the case runs a rapidly fatal course

from exhaustion. All grades of excitement may, of course, occur between the classical type on the one hand and the extreme form of the agitated type—galloping paresis—on the other.

The *depressed* type is often at first mistaken for melancholia, and this mistake is liable to be made unless the physical symptoms are borne in mind. The depression may take the form of *depressive melancholia* with retardation or of *affective melancholia* with anxiety and apprehension. Delusions are frequent and often take the form of *hypochondriacal ideas*—the bowels are stopped up, the blood does not circulate, and the like, or *ideas of negation*, the patient denying that he has a stomach, brain, soul, head, or even claiming that he is dead.

Sometimes states of depression and excitement alternate, so producing a *circular paralytic psychosis*.

Delusions of a persecutory character may give a *paranoid type* to the symptom-complex, while in some cases the *Korsakow syndrome* is present.

The following brief summaries of cases illustrate some of these points. The Wassermann reactions and the cell count of the cerebro-spinal fluid should be noted.

This case shows a long prodromal period with probably a seizure very early in the history. He was first depressed and paranoid, then excited, and then all these manifestations subsided and he became quiet and showed simply the dementia.

Male, age 41; first evidence of any trouble began two years ago, when patient suffered from severe pains in both legs; they were very acute and severe in nature. In March, 1911, he had a vomiting spell, following what is believed to have been a slight convulsion. After this he became peculiar. Following this, for certain irregularities, he was discharged by his employers and subsequently sent to the Washington Asylum Hospital where he remained for two weeks, when he was taken home by his family on a six months' trial. During this time he improved. On his return to Washington, being unable to obtain employment, he became very much depressed, thought that people were against him, believing that he was perfectly well and able to work. His mental condition became such that his family had him admitted to the Laurel Sanitarium, where he remained for five weeks. Shortly before admission to this Hospital there was some sort of an acute outbreak, during which he had several convulsions and he became unmanageable, refused to remain in bed and on this account was brought to this Hospital.

Physical condition good. Pupils regular, equal, no reaction to light either directly or consensually but they do react to accommodation. Slight

nystagmus in each eye on external rotation. No ocular pareses. Tremors of tongue and extended fingers. Knee reflexes exaggerated, right patellar decreased, left absent. No ankle clonus.

On admission he was quite disturbed, especially at night. Some form of restraint was necessary. He threatened to fight the attendants when any attempt to care for him was made. He was very unsteady on his feet, unable to care for himself. It was impossible to get any history from him during the early days of his residence. Irritability was very marked and he would often curse and refuse to answer questions. No insight, no definite hallucinations or delusions. Two months later (January 15, '12) it was noted that he was becoming more quiet, never complained, and his only request was to be discharged. No insight.

Since that time patient has improved; he is quiet and orderly, oriented in all fields, memory shows no gross impairment, but he has no insight into his condition. Wassermann with blood serum double positive. With the spinal fluid double positive. Protein content increased. 42 cells per c.mm.

This case shows the typical grandiose delusions, then a change to depression with a paranoid trend, and the occurrence of seizures.

Admitted July 25, 1911, age 50, married, commissary steward of the U. S. Navy. Family history unimportant. Early life uneventful so far as known. Supposed syphilitic infection in 1902. First admitted to the sick list on June 28, 1911. For several months after this it was noted that he was rather boastful. Subsequently very marked grandiose tendencies appeared, he was the Kaiser, the President, head of the Navy, etc., he ordered many automobiles and large quantities of diamonds. This condition continued until his admission to this hospital at which time he was exalted, constantly going about the ward, continually talking and at times singing for short intervals. He quickly obeyed any requests made of him and followed all directions given him. Attention was easily gained but not well held. There were many grandiose delusions concerning his own importance; he was Emperor of Germany, Columbus, DeSoto, etc., in fact anything which was suggested to him, he discovered the world, other patients about him were his brothers who fought to liberate this country; he built this hospital, had an unlimited amount of money. He was decidedly euphoric, smiling and laughing most of the time; had no insight. Wassermann reaction with the blood serum was double positive, with the spinal fluid double positive. Protein content increased, cells 49 per c.mm.

For several months following his admission, there was no essential change in his condition, he continued active, euphoric and alert, was busy with something throughout the entire day, constantly moving about the ward, talking with other patients concerning his various grandiose delusions. In August there was a slight convulsive attack. Patient continued up and about the ward until about a month ago, when he became very

decidedly depressed, numerous ideas of persecution were expressed, and there were auditory hallucinations, the voices calling him all sorts of unpleasant names and accusing him of various unseemly practices; he felt electricity running through his body, says his head is all dried up and there is nothing left of his body, what was once his body is nothing now but a machine. He says he has no more money, that what he talked about was all a delusion, that he is now poor and has no friends.

This case is one of the simple dementing type.

Admitted from the District of Columbia, September 8, 1910, at the age of 28. Family history unimportant. During infancy and childhood, patient suffered from "night terrors." Early life was spent in an orphan asylum. He has been employed in Washington as a stationary engineer since 1904. No history of venereal infection or alcoholism. Symptoms of the present illness date back to September, 1909, when his work became inefficient, memory poor, and irritability became prominent. He was discharged from his position in January, 1910, and has been unable to obtain employment since then. In April, 1910, the first speech defect became noticeable. In July, 1910, he was sent to the Washington Asylum Hospital, where he remained one month. He returned home but was restless, had a poor appetite and did not sleep well, so that after a few weeks he was again returned to the Washington Asylum Hospital, where he remained until his admission here. About three years ago it was learned that he had some sort of fainting spell, accompanied by unconsciousness.

On admission here he was only partially oriented, memory for past events fairly well preserved, but impaired for recent ones. Insight was lacking, and he was more or less exalted. No hallucinations or delusions could be elicited. Speech slow and enunciation slurring.

Physically he was poorly nourished, marked tremor of lips and tongue was noted. Pupils normal. Tendon reflexes exaggerated.

Wassermann reaction with the blood serum positive, not determined in the spinal fluid. Protein content of the spinal fluid increased. Cells per c.mm. 44.

For several months after admission he was indifferent, quiet and apathetic, showing no essential change in his condition. In March, 1911, pupils showed absent light reaction and there was absence of the knee jerks. Within the past few months, he has shown a more evident deterioration, is somewhat enfeebled and quite irritable when questioned. Hallucinations and delusions have not been manifested. Convulsions have not occurred.

The following case shows the typical grandiose delusions with great impairment.

Oiler in the United States Navy, was admitted on October 5, 1911, at the age of 40. He was first admitted to the sick list on the U. S. S. California, on May 29, 1911. It is stated that he had shown progressive mental deterioration for a year past. Speech was scanning and there was some hesi-

tancy. He had become shiftless and careless in his work. No venereal history was elicited. On July 1, 1911, he was transferred to the Mendocino State Hospital, where he remained until his admission here. The history which he can give of his family and past life is quite unreliable. He denies venereal infection and alcoholism. Grandiose delusions were present—he was worth six million dollars, states that he has taken one thousand dollars' worth of medicine, that he had four wives and about two hundred and fifty children, claims that he knows everything about machinery, automobiles, has been to the moon a number of times in aeroplanes, he can carry a lot of moons on his aeroplanes, which can travel about ninety miles in fifteen minutes. His responses to the intelligence tests show marked deterioration. He was completely disoriented, memory greatly impaired and insight entirely lacking.

Physical examination shows tremors of the fingers, tongue and facial muscles. Both knee jerks are exaggerated. Coördination and station impaired. Pupillary light reaction absent.

Wassermann reaction with the blood serum double positive. No history of convulsions. Progress has been gradual since admission. Condition essentially unchanged.

This case shows the association of a mild euphoria with a persecutory trend.

Admitted July 30, 1911, age 43; married. Family history and early life of the patient unimportant so far as known. No history of alcoholism, drug addiction or venereal infection. Symptoms of mental disorder were exhibited for more than a month prior to admission, when he had pronounced delusions of grandeur and persecution, since then has developed ideas of a mildly persecutory type associated with delusional tendencies. He threatened to kill himself and others.

On admission he was quiet, answered questions promptly and relevantly, was approximately oriented. Close questioning made him extremely irritable; this persisted only transiently, when he again became quite happy and almost euphoric. In speaking or laughing there was noticed a slight lack of control of the muscles of expression and there was a decided over-activity of the muscles of the face. Test phrases were very much slurred and some of them almost unrecognizable; he had a poor memory; delusions of grandiose nature present. No insight. No hallucinations; says he never felt better in his life. Pupils equal, regular in outline, react to light directly and consensually and to accommodation. Knee jerks exaggerated. Responses to the intelligence tests fairly adequate.

Wassermann reaction with the blood serum double positive, with the spinal fluid double positive. Protein content of the spinal fluid increased. Noguchi positive. Cells per c.mm. 94.

Since admission there has been slight change in this patient's condition. He is quiet and orderly, never complains, shows no interest in his surroundings. He has had one very mild convulsive attack.

This is a grandiose type with great impairment, in which the delusions are not manifested spontaneously but only brought out on questioning.

Admitted March 3, 1911, age 37 years; single; soldier. Family history so far as known unimportant. Early life uneventful. Probable history of syphilis in 1908. The onset of present illness was sudden in February, 1911. Grandiose tendencies became prominent. He claimed he was a great preacher, that he was going to evangelize the world, says he has fifty thousand dollars, confers rank upon attendants as captains, colonels, and brigadier generals; is a great painter and artist. Is very happy, euphoric and talkative.

On admission to this hospital, his condition in no way having changed, he was very happy, euphoric, there were marked grandiose tendencies, he is the strongest man in the world, has an unlimited amount of money; partially oriented, test phrases poorly pronounced, marked slurring. Knee jerks exaggerated, left pupil larger than the right, react to light directly and consensually with slight excursion. Physical examination shows him to be somewhat emaciated, otherwise in good general condition. Wassermann with the blood serum double positive; with the spinal fluid double positive. Protein content increased. Cells per c.mm. 82.

Since admission his condition has continued without very great change. Grandiose delusions continue practically unlimited in their extent. After several months he became somewhat more quiet, did not so constantly mention his delusions. On questioning, however, such tendencies were still to be elicited. He owns the entire hospital, is God, the President, etc. Attention is difficult to hold, he answers questions promptly, talks almost continuously in a rather unintelligible tone. Both pupils still react to light.

This case shows well the epileptiform seizures, marked confusion, and pronounced hallucinatory disturbances.

Admitted March 7, 1911, age 36 years; married; soldier. Family history negative. Early life uneventful. Army career of good character. Denies alcoholic indulgence and syphilis. For a year preceding admission experienced some difficulty in attending to clerical work; could not concentrate his mind. Memory began to fail, and he was sent into the army hospital, where he remained for a short time, when he secured a leave of several months. When he again reported he was transferred to this hospital. With the first symptoms was a slight apoplectiform attack, involving the left side of the body in December, 1909, passing off in 24 hours; disease has been progressive since then.

On admission here, patient was quiet, speech apparently slurred, enunciation poor even in ordinary conversation. Test phrases were at times very indistinctly pronounced. Bradylalia. No insight. Orientation good. No delusions or hallucinations. Right pupil larger than left; both irregular in outline, absolutely no light reaction; they react to accommodation. Knee jerks much exaggerated. General physical condition good.

In May, 1911, a general epileptiform seizure, following which it was noted that patient was confused, dazed and stupid, attacked other patients, and when asked to explain his conduct said that he had been detailed to care for them and they would not obey his orders. He became very much confused, would undress himself in the day room, apparently had no conception of his condition or situation in general. During June, July and August this condition of disturbance continued. In September he was again improved; was up and about the ward. He is disoriented in all fields, has absolutely no insight, memory markedly impaired, and an easily detected speech defect. In November patient appeared somewhat confused, auditory hallucinations became very marked, he had been carrying on a conversation with the President, but could hear these voices only in the left ear, in which ear, he says he has been somewhat deaf for a long time. He says his reason for not writing his wife is that he can converse with her in Kansas. Persecutory ideas were present. He thought that one of the other patients was going to kill him. He believes that his restraint in bed for the past several weeks is only part of the plan of this patient to kill him. Since then there has been no change.

Wassermann reaction with the blood serum double positive, with the spinal fluid double positive. Fluid clear; protein content increased; Noguchi positive. Cells per c.mm. 62.

THIRD PERIOD.

As the second period may be arbitrarily said to be ushered in by the paretic seizure, so the third period may be arbitrarily said to date from the time when the patient begins to soil himself.

Physical Symptoms.—All the physical symptoms become more marked in this stage. The tremor is constant, the ataxia has increased to such an extent that locomotion becomes dangerous or quite impossible and because of the friable condition of the bones falls are liable to produce fractures, muscular weakness is marked and emaciation becomes extreme. In this enfeebled condition the patient becomes bedridden, contractures quite often develop in the extremities and control of the sphincters is lost. Often a contracture of the neck muscles develops, so that the head is kept raised from the pillows in a characteristic attitude, and not infrequently the patient grinds the teeth for hours at a time. The paretic seizures become more frequent, bed sores develop over all the bony prominences unless the most scrupulous care is taken to prevent them, exhaustion occurs and the patient dies in a seizure, from marasmus, or some intercurrent affection.

Mental Symptoms.—In the mental sphere, as in the physical,

there continues to be a progressive degradation. The dementia becomes profound, so that the patient may not even know his own name—he ceases absolutely to lead a mental life and leads only a vegetative existence. Often in the mass of stammering, stumbling, incoherent sounds a word here and there will indicate the remains of former delusions. It is, however, not uncommon for the symptoms of the paralytic psychosis to disappear in this stage and for the case to terminate in uncomplicated dementia. Finally, if no intercurrent malady supervenes, the patient sinks into coma and dies.

Juvenile General Paresis.—Although but comparatively few cases of paresis in children have been reported, it undoubtedly occurs quite frequently but is usually unrecognized. The possibility of paresis should be thought of in all cases of progressive mental impairment in children.

The disease usually occurs in children one or both of whose parents have had syphilis. Syphilis, of course, may be acquired at an early age. The evidences of parental syphilis should be carefully sought. Inquiry should be made as to the cause of death of parents, their age, miscarriages in the mother, etc. Inquiry should also be directed to determine early signs of hereditary syphilis in the patients, such as snuffles, sore eyes, etc. The patient may bear the scars of syphilis, such as saddle-nose, corneal ulcers, enlarged glands, scars about the corners of the mouth, Hutchinson teeth, etc.

The disease usually comes to notice from about twelve to fourteen years of age. The early symptoms may be largely motor, such as clumsiness in walking and stumbling. With this is combined a beginning disturbance of speech and inquiry will develop that the child has seemed somewhat dull lately at school. The early picture not infrequently reminds one of the picture of Friedrich's ataxia.

From the development of these early symptoms there is a progressive mental decay usually of the simpler dementing type. School knowledge is finally absolutely lost and the dementia becomes profound. There is also a steady progress in the motor symptoms. These cases seem to develop contractures of the extremities quite early and to become absolutely helpless.

All the usual signs of paresis are found,⁶ both clinically and anatomically.

Gross Pathology.—In opening the calvarium the dura is found abnormally adherent to the skull cap and internally may present areas of hemorrhagic pachymeningitis. The surface of the brain shows areas of congestion more frequently in the frontal, parietal and temporal regions than in the occipital. The leptomeninges are thickened, opaque, and along the lines of the great vessels contain a milky, opalescent fluid. In attempting to remove them they are found abnormally adherent, so that portions of the cortex are torn off with them—*decortication*—giving a worm-eaten appearance to the denuded surface. This appearance is very characteristic and is almost always present, except perhaps early or in the very late stages when a subpial collection of serum has raised the membranes from the brain so far that they may be readily removed. The brain as a whole is shrunken and when opened the ependyma is found quite typically to be granular.

Histopathology.—The monumental work of ALZHEIMER⁷ is the authority on the microscopic changes in this disease. He gives an abstract of these changes as follows:

Blood Vessels.—(a) One of the most striking features is the marked proliferation of new capillaries. These are often extremely rich, often showing like a thick net-work of capillary meshes. These are the product of an active, productive, inflammatory process, and come about through the very rich formation of new endothelial cells, and the branching and vascularization of the regenerating intima. This new vessel formation in some cases is excessive, in others less noticeable.

(b) There results an increase of elastic tissue by the formation of new net-works about the proliferating endothelial cells and a formation of stronger membranes.

(c) A proliferation of the adventitia also results, at times slight, again very marked.

(d) A dilatation and infiltration of the adventitial lymph spaces. The infiltrating cells are largely made up of *plasma cells*. [The

⁶ Hough, Wm. H.: A Case of Juvenile General Paresis, Jour. Nerv. & Ment. Dis., Oct., 1909.

⁷ Alzheimer: Histologische Studien zur Differentialdiagnose des Progress. Paralyse. Hist. und histopath. Arbeiten, Bd. I, 1904.

origin of these cells has not been satisfactorily explained. Whether they are transformed leukocytes or derived from the connective tissue is a mooted question.] They are never absent even in the most acute cases. Lymphocytes and mast-cells are also common in the lymph spaces.

(e) In most of the advanced cases of paresis, degenerative changes are common in the blood vessels, especially in the upper cortical layers. A complete destruction of the vessels may take place and hyaline degeneration result.

(f) In the cortex of the paretic, a peculiar cell form, NISSEL'S *Stäbchen cell* or rod-like cell, is uniformly present. [ALZHEIMER thinks they develop from some of the elements of the blood vessels. MOTT thinks them collapsed capillaries.]

Ganglion Cell Changes.—(a) These are extremely diverse and widespread, but are not of themselves pathognomonic of paresis. Practically no case of paresis is known that does not show ganglion cell changes of some character.

(b) These changes embrace practically all of the forms of ganglion-cell alteration that have been described. Many of these are extreme in grade, as shown by the rapid degeneration, and the necrobiotic changes that are present.

(c) A great number of ganglion cells are completely destroyed in the advanced cases.

(d) Not only are the ganglion cells altered, but in all probability the finer nerve structures which lie between the ends of the sheath-covered axis cylinders and the ganglion cells are distinctly involved.

(e) In the majority of advanced paretics, the arrangement of the ganglion-cell groups is modified, *i. e.*, the cell architecture of the cortex is changed in lesser or greater degree.

Changes in Axis Cylinders.—These undergo early degeneration in many cases. Present technical methods do not permit the demonstration of these alterations in the very early stages, but in the advanced cases, the degeneration of the axis cylinders is very marked, such breaking down either being localized or involving the entire cortex.

Changes in Glia.—(a) There is marked growth of the connective tissue elements. In the advanced cases such increase of glia elements forms almost a felt of tissue in the cortex.

(b) The major portion of the new glia is found in the outer layers of the cortex, making it stronger, as it were. The thickening due to new glia elements is particularly noticeable about the blood vessels.

Although the cortex is most prominently affected, other portions of the brain, together with the spinal cord, are usually involved, while the general disturbance of nutrition is shown in diseased and degenerated conditions of various other organs, particularly the kidneys.

While the pathology of paresis discloses both inflammatory and degenerative lesions, it is still a mooted point which process— inflammation or degeneration—should be considered as primary.

Diagnosis.—One of the recent aids to the diagnosis of paresis is by the method of examination of the spinal fluid. A well-marked lymphocytosis will serve to differentiate this disease from the so-called *vesanias* or functional insanities but not of course from other conditions in which the meninges are seriously involved.

The cellular content of the cerebro-spinal fluid is similar to that found in cerebro-spinal syphilis except that the phagocytic cells (phagocytes, macrophages, *Körnchen* cells) are less numerous and there are found in addition from one to six per cent. of plasma cells.

The Wassermann test will be positive in both blood serum and cerebro-spinal fluid and the Noguchi test will show an increase of globulin.

The principal diseases for which paresis may be mistaken, especially in the early stages, are *tabes*, acquired neurasthenia, alcoholism, brain tumor, cerebral syphilis, disseminated sclerosis, the functional psychoses, epilepsy, and arterio-sclerotic dementia.

The principles of its differentiation from the various psychoses have been already indicated. The presence of the underlying dementia in a person of middle age should make us at once suspicious and if to this condition the physical signs can be added a diagnosis can with certainty be made.

From *tabes dorsalis* the differentiation is not so easy, and in fact there remain a few cases where it is impossible, and we must wait for the development of further symptoms. This is due to the fact that in their early stages the physical signs may

be identical in the two diseases. When, however, we observe a case in which the tabetic signs are somewhat atypical with, for instance, preservation of knee-jerks or marked ataxia of the arms, we may be suspicious of paresis and if with this condition we find associated evidences of mental disturbance a tentative diagnosis is in order.

In differentiating paresis from *acquired neurasthenia* the general mental attitude of the patient is of great significance. Whereas the neurasthenic is given to exaggerating his ills, to constantly complaining of his aches and pains, and keeps close observation of every change of symptoms, the paretic is usually indifferent or may on the contrary consult a physician under protest and in the firm belief of the uselessness of so doing as he feels so well. This is not invariable, as I have seen paretics well advanced in the disease who were much concerned over their condition. The contrary state of mind, as illustrated by one of my patients, is more common. On her admission I discovered a well-marked hemiplegia which she actually knew nothing of until I called her attention to it. In addition to this, there is in neurasthenia no dementia, no disturbance of speech or writing, no history of seizures, the tendon reflexes are equal and not abolished, the pupils equal, respond to light and accommodation and are more apt to be dilated, while in paresis they are frequently unequal and often very much contracted.

From *alcoholism* the diagnosis is often not so easy. The deterioration of the chronic alcoholic has much in common with the dementia of paresis. Here again we must turn to the physical signs and note carefully the historic facts. Following a long debauch, however, symptoms may arise, which, in the absence of a history, would warrant a diagnosis of paresis—the so-called *alcoholic pseudo-paresis*. These symptoms disappear, though, in a remarkable manner when the alcohol is withdrawn.

In *toxic conditions* generally sluggish reaction of the pupil to light is not uncommon, while Argyll-Robertson pupil may probably occur for a temporary period.

Symptoms occasionally develop in the course of *brain tumor* which closely resemble paresis. The diagnosis must be made on the preëminently focal character of the physical signs in the former disease.

From *disseminated sclerosis* the differentiation is sometimes difficult. The combination of intention tremor, nystagmus, scanning speech and spasticity will, however, usually leave little room for doubt, although some of these cases do ultimately develop typical signs of paresis.

From *cerebral* or *cerebrospinal syphilis* the diagnosis is again quite difficult. If the lesion is a gummatous meningitis the signs are rather of multiple lesions than a diffuse process. If, on the other hand, the disease affects principally the vessels, with resulting endarteritis obliterans, thrombosis and softening, the symptoms are focal and convulsions developing afterward constitute a true post-apoplectic epilepsy. Disturbances of speech either are not present, or, if they are, do not partake of the nature of a paretic disorder but are true aphasias, due to focal lesions. Palsies, if present, are permanent and nocturnal headaches common. The age of onset should be considered. Under thirty syphilis is more commonly found to be the cause of cerebral manifestations than paresis. It must not be forgotten that sluggish reaction to light and even Argyll-Robertson pupil may be found in cerebral syphilis.

The cerebrospinal fluid should be examined. It will show an increase in the cellular elements except occasionally if active anti-syphilitic treatment has been pursued for some time. The differential will show an increase in lymphocytes plus phagocytes, macrophages, endothelial cells, and occasionally Körnchenzellen.

Recently PLAUT⁸ has called attention to a most important differential sign. He claims that only in the metasymphilitic diseases—tabes and paresis—will the spinal fluid give a positive Wassermann reaction, while the blood serum reacts positively in all cases of syphilis. Experience has borne out this claim.

From the so-called *functional psychoses* a differential diagnosis may be difficult in the early stages, especially if there are marked emotional disorders or paranoid delusions. The presence of the physical signs of paresis associated with symptoms of dementia and the cytological examination of the cerebrospinal fluid will usually clear up the difficulty.

In the early stages, in those cases that have been ushered in by

⁸ Plaut, F.: Dieluetischen Geistesstörungen, Centralb. f. Nervenheilkunde u. Psychiatrie, Sept. 1 and 15, 1909.

a paretic seizure, *epilepsy* may be suspected. The absence of the history of epilepsy should suggest paresis.

The diffusion of the destructive lesions in *arterio-sclerotic dementia* is not infrequently responsible for a picture closely resembling paresis. This condition occurs much later in life, usually after the sixtieth year; there are evidences of advanced vascular disease, and the characteristic senile disorder of memory is generally present.

An examination of the cerebrospinal fluid will seldom show any increase in the cellular constituents and if there is an increase it will be slight, while the character of the cells is practically normal. The Wassermann test will be negative.

Course and Prognosis.—The disease may be said to be absolutely fatal, although an occasional alleged cure is reported. Remissions quite frequently occur, so that the patient may be well enough to leave the hospital and remain away for weeks or even months. The fact that remissions occur should never be forgotten in giving a prognosis to the relatives. The acute forms of the disease are rapidly fatal. The majority die in from eighteen months to three years, while in a certain few cases the disease process is very slow and may occupy many years.

Death usually occurs from some intercurrent affection, pneumonia, cystitis, terminal infection, or from the disease itself, which leads to an extreme degree of emaciation and exhaustion.

Treatment.—This disease is from the first preëminently a disease for institution care. The patient is absolutely unable to care for himself and in the great majority of instances the friends are equally unable to care for him. As soon as the diagnosis is made steps should be taken looking towards the appointment of a committee of his person and property or otherwise guarding his business interests, which upon investigation will show almost without fail evidences of poor management, the result of early manifestations of the dementia.

Medicinally there is really little to be done except to treat conditions as they arise in accordance with general principles. The disease is inevitably fatal in spite of anything that can be done. Anti-syphilitic treatment may be tried, but as in tabes, little is to be expected from it, while a too heroic exhibition of mercury and the iodides may actually aggravate the symptoms and hasten the degradation.

It must be remembered, in connection with the cases that improve under antisyphilitic treatment, and there are a few, that both the lesions of syphilis and of paresis may exist at the same time in the brain. The treatment by clearing up the syphilitic lesions would produce some improvement in the patient's condition—only temporary, however.

Tube feeding may have to be early resorted to because of the development of dysphagia and the consequent danger of choking. The most scrupulous care should be taken to prevent the development of bed-sores, as they are practically impossible to heal and do much towards hastening the fatal termination.

CHAPTER X.

DEMENTIA PRECOX.

General Characteristics.—Dementia precox is a psychosis essentially of the period of puberty and adolescence, characterized by a dementia tending to progress, though frequently interrupted by remissions. Upon the foundation of dementia are erected various psychotic symptoms, many of which show a marked tendency to episodic manifestations.

There has been a great deal of objection to the name "Dementia Precox," because of the fact that some cases develop considerably later in life than the adolescent period. For those who are anxious that the name should be significant of the thing named, it might be satisfactory to think of dementia precox not as a psychosis developing early in life, and therefore precocious, but as a psychosis in which the factor of dementia appears early, in other words, a psychosis in which the dementia is the precocious symptom, rather than an individual in whom the psychosis is precocious. Because of the further fact that the dementia is in many instances at least more obvious than real, and because a careful analysis of the psychology of these cases shows that the outwardly bizarre, erratic, and often silly symptoms have in reality a foundation which is rationally explainable, BLEULER has suggested the name "Schizophrenia," which indicates, as we shall see later, a splitting of the psyche, which is considered by him to be the real fundamental symptom of the disease.

Etiology.—Dementia precox is essentially a disease, as stated, of the period of puberty and adolescence. Heredity plays a marked rôle in its etiology and the disease seems often to occur repeatedly in the same families. The future patient might be expected to be rather dull in his early youth and show difficulty in getting on with his studies. While this is not infrequently the case, still cases often occur in young persons, not only of apparently usual mental power, but of brilliant, perhaps precociously brilliant faculties. This has thrown some doubt on the hereditary

basis of the disease, especially as sometimes no serious taint can be found in the antecedents. In this particular form of mental alienation, I think it is, however, especially important to search for other than distinctly mental disease in the ancestors.

WOLFSOHN¹ recently made a study of the material of the Burghölzi Asylum at Zurich with a view to the determination of the frequency of the hereditary factor. Of 2215 admissions there were 647 cases of dementia precox. About 90 per cent. of these showed hereditary taint: of four hereditary factors insanity was the most frequent (about 64 per cent.), followed by nervous diseases, alcoholism, and other forms of hereditary taint: heredity was combined in about 34 per cent. The most frequent combinations were insanity and alcoholism, and insanity and nervous disease: the distinct influence of heredity could not be proven in the cases in which the taint was alcoholism, nervous disease, and other forms: the influence of the taint has no striking effect on the character of the first symptoms: the catatonic form is the most and the paranoid the least affected by the taint of insanity.

Every individual born into the world has, if it could be determined, a definite potentiality for development. The force of the impetus which starts it on its path is sufficient to carry it a certain definite distance. The predetermined goal, in each case, will be reached if no accident intervenes to prevent. In the subject of this disease the original impetus has been weak, only sufficient to carry them a short way and when its force is spent development stops and the retrograde process is hastened, or perhaps immediately initiated by some special physical or mental stress occurring at the critical point of puberty and adolescent evolution. As the French have it, these patients are "stranded on the rock of puberty."

If this is a true conception of the nature of the hereditary factor in these cases it is readily seen that it becomes important to search especially for evidences of debilitating influences in early life—masturbation, excessive study—or conditions affecting the health and strength of parents at the time of impregnation or during pregnancy—alcoholism, tuberculosis, extreme age, neurasthenia.

¹ Wolfsohn, Ryssa: Die Heredität bei Dementia præcox, Allg. Zeitschr. f. Psych., Bd. 64 (1907), Heft 2 and 3.

Aside from this class of causes, direct heredity is frequently in evidence, and we frequently find families with several cases of dementia præcox in them, just as we find similar conditions in manic-depressive psychosis.

Of exciting causes it would seem that we frequently find severe shocks, both physical and mental, as, for example, severe hemorrhages, infections—often puerperal—fright, and that train of emotional disturbances following seduction and desertion. Particular stress has recently been laid upon the mental factors in the etiology and they should always be sought for.

Recently a great deal has been said about a possible toxic factor as being responsible for the disease and this toxic factor has been supposed to have its origin in some of the glands after the analogy of the toxin in thyroidism—probably some internal secretion of the testicle or ovary, as the disease is so closely associated with the changes incident to puberty. Then, again, the changes of metabolism in this disease are quite pronounced and are thought to find their explanation in a toxemia.

The latest tendency is to give greater prominence to the mental factors as having etiological importance. JUNG² by his analyses has especially called attention to the buried complexes with resulting symptoms, while MEYER³ considers the condition more from a biological standpoint as being the result of continued inability to adjust with the development of unhealthy biological reactions. Recent studies would indicate that these difficulties arise in people of peculiar character make-up—more particularly in those who have what is termed a "*shut-in*" character. These persons do not meet difficulties openly and frankly, they are inclined to be seclusive, not to make friends, to have no one to whom they are close and with whom they can talk over things. They do not come into natural and free relation with the realities, are apt to be prudes, over-scrupulous, and exhibit a sentimental religiosity. Sexual difficulties are frequently connected with the breakdown.

General Symptomatology. *Mental:* In considering the mental

² Jung, C. G.: The Psychology of Dementia Præcox, Nerv. & Ment. Dis. Monog. Series, No. 3.

³ Meyer, Adolf: Fundamental Conceptions of Dementia Præcox, Brit. Med. Jour., Sept. 29, 1906.

symptoms of dementia precox STRANSKY⁴ very happily calls attention to the very different impression this disorder makes on one than do such conditions as mania, melancholia, paranoia and amentia (confusion). These latter disorders seem to us to be due to the deviation of normal mental processes either to the positive or negative side; we can put ourselves, as it were, in the position of the patient, can feel his feelings in miniature. The differences are merely differences of degree, of more or less. With dementia precox, however, the effect is quite different. The awkward, constrained attitude of these patients makes us feel quite out of touch with them, they seem unnatural, their acts "unpsychological," to coin an expression.

This fundamental difference in the impression created in us by the dementia precox patient from that produced by other types of mental disorder STRANSKY traces to what he believes to be the basic factor in the symptomatology—*intrapsychic ataxia*. By this term he means a disturbance of coördination between the intellectual attributes of the whole psyche and the affective attributes, or as he calls them respectively the noopsyche and the thymopsyche. Intrapsychic ataxia might then be called more specifically a *noo-thymopsyche ataxia*.

The recognition of this ataxia, the separation of intellectual and emotional reactions, has led some to prefer the name Schizophrenia to dementia precox.

This intrapsychic disturbance of coördination leads to a defect, the signs of which are much more marked in the emotional sphere than in the intellectual sphere.

Inasmuch as this disturbance of coördination is the most important expression of dementia precox, according to STRANSKY, it will be worth while to go somewhat into the details of his description of it.

The coördination disturbance may manifest itself in different ways and in different degrees. The simplest way is by a lack of harmony between the expression of the affect and the idea content of thought. For example the patient cries when he should be glad, or vice versa, though much commoner than this contrasted reaction is an affective reaction which is inadequate—

⁴ Stransky, Erwin: *Über die Dementia Præcox, Streifzüge durch Klinik und Psychopathologie*. Verlag von J. F. Bergmann, Wiesbaden, 1909.

the patient merely simpers or smiles when the facts would warrant sadness or hearty laughter. We come across anger from wholly indifferent causes; fear, timidity, shyness appear without any apparent reason; familiarity, obtusiveness, eroticism occur, displaced, perhaps in the same situations in which there was formerly embarrassment, shyness, coldness. Quite commonly a certain state of feeling dominates all conditions of consciousness, a certain stupidity and apathy, a surprising poverty of affect, which is in strong contrast to the clearness which the patient may demonstrate. Cold and passive, without so much as moving an eye lash, without any spontaneous reaction, without expressing a wish, he is oriented to time and place and person, is conversant with everything going on about him, shows good school knowledge, his memory is faultless, he shows up well in an examination of his intelligence, and denies feeling sick. However, he shows no longing after freedom, or feeling of sadness at his position; these all appear extinguished in him. This coldness produces an unnatural impression. One gets the impression of the dream state in epilepsy, the mental state of which has a certain symptomatic relationship with many forms of dementia precox.

The lack of conformity of the emotional reaction and the idea content is shown not only with reference to a given time but in relations of succession. Moods and affects change in all possible ways without visible inner or outside causes. Here we see the same ataxic tendency. The April-weather behavior of the affects and moods suggests the relationship with hysteria.

This condition of intrapsychic ataxia does exist but BLEULER⁵ has shown quite conclusively, I think, that it is only one expression of what he calls a *splitting of the psyche*. The characteristic associations of precox all show this tendency toward splitting, while negativism is a demonstration of it.⁶ In negativism two entirely contrary streams of thought flow side by side without being able to mix, with no possibility of synthesis, each producing its characteristic reactions. Thus a woman loves her husband for some qualities and hates him for others. There is no compromise and first one and then the other feeling is in the ascendant.

⁵ Bleuler: *Dementia Præcox oder Gruppe der Schizophrenien*. Pub. by Deuticke, Leipzig und Wien, 1911.

⁶ Bleuler: *The Theory of Schizophrenic Negativism* (Eng. trans. by White), *Jour. Nerv. and Ment. Dis.*, Jan., Feb., Mch., Ap., 1912, and No. 11 of this series.

We will see the importance of this conception when we come to consider the nature of the dementia.

It is this fundamental disturbance in coördination that gives rise to the commonly described symptoms of *failure of voluntary attention* and the *lack of interest* which these patients show both in themselves and their surroundings. They care little if at all about what goes on about them, and although confined in an institution, express themselves as satisfied with their condition and have no desire to leave. They sit idly about, giving no heed to what goes on about them, are unable to apply themselves to any sort of work or even reading, and when questioned may even pay so little attention as not to understand what is said to them, so that the question has to be repeated.

From this lack of attention things in the environment are often not perceived at all, but when they are perceived they are understood quite fully, and we usually find these patients are *well oriented* in all respects, temporal, spacial and personal, and show *no evidences of clouding of consciousness*.

In the same way also arises the so-called *emotional deterioration* which they exhibit. It is this symptom which is largely responsible for their indifference and lack of interest already mentioned. The expressions of joy or sorrow, if they occur at all, are shallow and of short duration. A death, a birth, a marriage, the visit of a long absent relative, are all apprehended with the same lack of emotional expression. No matter how much pleasure or pain the event might be supposed to give, or would give in a normal person, the patient receives it with indifference, without surprise, without an expression of interest often, in the most matter of fact sort of way, as if such things were occurring hourly.

We find a similar condition of affairs in the intellectual domain. The ideas, the *content of thought*, show a *shallowness* indicating an intellectual enfeeblement. Aside from the fact that the fantastic, unusual, bizarre character of the delusions indicates the demented groundwork on which they are founded, the patients make little or no effort to support their false beliefs, show absolutely no insight into their condition, and make the most manifestly absurd statements often in the midst of a fairly coherent conversation without at all appreciating the incongruity. Thus, one patient was able to answer questions bearing on history quite

well, but when asked for some explanation as to his belief that the electric lights were burning holes in him replied by saying, "They are pretty good people anyway." The same patient had the delusion that he had no eyes or hands. Usually when questioned about such evident absurdities no explanation is vouchsafed and the patient retires behind the reply, "I don't know." The *dilapidation of thought* becomes more and more manifest as dementia progresses, leading finally in its expression to almost complete incoherence, as shown in the following example:

"Oh, yes, indeed, that the weather and condition of such become rainy and people dying, and the worms eat the bodies up and take them from their coffins, they would not allow you to disclose the bodies, because the overflow of saliva causes the disease by which people cannot exist. Well, I am the only King over in Ireland. I do not know where he has gone. They wanted to put me in a wash-tub and everything else. They do not know what I am, do you see? They come into a saloon, but they will not give you anything to drink. I was the bartender there. I am a stranger. People kill them, but they come to life again. They take the position of strangers when they leave their happy homes, but I do not understand how they could kill a woman outright. What right have you got to take a stranger when they are in their rightful homes? This is the post of duty where men of enlistment return to their happy homes. This is the post of duty to enter not. They must be prisoners. They do not get out of sight. Dr. Hogan is a doctor for the purpose of curing people; also Dr. Burns; where they are going I know not. Well, I tell you, doctor, I suffered terribly this winter, also on post of duty. I do not know anything at all about it, but there is an illustration there. I cannot blame the band while at school about their music. That thermometer there is to tell whether you live or die, and it becomes such a dangerous position that the enemies approaching at this post of duty, I cannot do it with the light. The man escaped. He is living at his home in Binghamton, N. Y. Where I know not. I know that his name is Irish. They will not take him to his rightful home in the condition of such by which he has no means of support by attending bar. I was kidnapped upon the ocean, and taking en route to this place I know not. Well, as I was going to tell you, I am the enemy himself. These people here cannot perform an operation. They do not know what they are. Well, do you know me! I am the King of Ireland, and also of all countries in existence. I was the fellow that killed the Queen. I do not know who she was. I got the picture of him. His last name was Duffy. I cannot get in communication with him."

In this example the incoherence reaches a very high degree, the conversation becomes a mere "*word salad*," in which it is only possible, here and there, to pick out an association, and that only of superficial character.

The *memory* is usually defective, especially for recent events, reminding us of the memory defect of senescence. This defect, to a certain extent, is undoubtedly apparent only and dependent upon lack of perceptions because of the inability to fix the attention. An event which is not perceived will, of course, not be remembered, and similarly an event which is only perceived in a desultory manner and not fully comprehended will not be recalled at its true value. It becomes quite difficult, therefore, to differentiate the elements of this defect and tell how much is due to a disorder of memory per se. Undoubtedly a certain proportion of it is, though, and this defect is probably, largely at least, a defect of impressibility.

Knowledge acquired before the disease began, however, especially, therefore, as these patients are already quite young, knowledge acquired in school, is often remembered with quite remarkable accuracy. Whole tables of matter, learned by rote, can be repeated, and often this ability constitutes a striking feature of the case when the dementia has become profound, and this symptom is perhaps about the only one left to indicate that the patient was ever possessed of normal mental faculties.

Many of the symptoms of dementia precox are conditioned by the existence of submerged complexes. The complex does not cause the disease but it colors the symptoms. The limits of this work forbid more than a mere mention of the most important manifestations.

The patients frequently complain that their thoughts leave them suddenly when they try to explain themselves and we note in these cases, often in the midst of a conversation, a sudden pause and then a difficulty in resuming the train of thought. This *thought deprivation* we have learned from association work is the result of strong emotional content—the flow of thought being inhibited by the presence of strong emotion. We have seen, for example, how the reaction time is lengthened when an idea is struck with strong emotional coloring. The patients often give a delusional explanation to these experiences and claim that they are robbed of their thought by their enemies.

We find also that frequently in the midst of a perfectly coherent and reasonable conversation a perfectly senseless remark will be injected. These *saltatory associations* indicate the momentary outcrop of a complex association.

In the same way the *stereotypies*, particularly the *speech perseverations*, center about the complexes and the *neologisms* become *complex indicators*. Because of the submergence of the complexes, the patient having no comprehensive knowledge of their existence, questions addressed to eliciting an explanation of these phenomena produce no results. The patients are *inaccessible*.

In dealing with the fully developed psychosis it is useful to consider, as in dealing with the mental symptoms of general paresis and the senium, that we have a disease which is typically a dementia from beginning to end, and that upon this groundwork of dementia various psychotic symptoms may be engrafted. True, in certain cases the early symptoms do not indicate the dementia at all well, but then this conception of the disease, as in the other two cases mentioned, I think, aids somewhat in its comprehension. All of the various mental symptoms must be considered as having this demented foundation and as being modified in their expression because of it.

The general symptoms of the disease that are common to all varieties are, as might be expected, the symptoms of mental deterioration, of decreased mental efficiency.

Physical: These patients often emaciate during the early stages of the disease, anorexia and insomnia are common, circulatory disturbances, rapid cardiac action, and cyanosis of the extremities are often seen, as is also dermatographia, the result of vaso-motor paralysis. The deep reflexes are exaggerated and the pupils quite commonly widely dilated. Epileptiform, and especially hysteriform, attacks are quite frequently observed in the early stages.

In the early history many apparently unimportant symptoms may be found, such as headache, vertigo, etc. URSTEIN⁷ calls particular attention to the occurrence of gastric disturbances, often periodically. This is one of the general neurastheniform symptoms one frequently finds in the anamnesis. It would seem as if these patients hardly had force enough to live, that some set of organs was always suffering, there was not enough to go round.

Mode of Onset.—The early manifestations of dementia præcox often go unrecognized for a long time and are diagnosed as other conditions. We must realize that it may often be quite impossible

⁷ Urstein, M.: Die Dementia Præcox und Ihre Stellung zum Manisch-Depressiven Irresein. Berlin und Wien, 1909.

to make a diagnosis by taking a cross section of the mental state at any time, particularly in the prodromal or initial stages. This is particularly true here as the early manifestations may be acute and transitory episodes which clear up promptly. It is only by studying the life history of the individual that we come to realize that these episodes are but the early manifestations of a chronic process, the tendency of which is toward progressive deterioration.

These early manifestations may take the form of the various types of the manic-depressive psychoses, psychasthenia, neurasthenia, hysteria, hypochondria, acute confusion and paranoid states. In all this class of cases, particularly if atypical, a search should be made for the fundamental symptoms as already described, particularly the emotional indifference and the attention disorders.

In describing the varieties of dementia precox they will be considered under five heads: (1) the *dementia simplex*, or *heboidophrenia* of KAHLBAUM; (2) *Hebephrenia*; (3) *Catatonia*; (4) *Paranoid Forms*; (5) *Mixed Forms*.

I. SIMPLE DEMENTIA (HEBOIDOPHRENIA).

In accordance with the conception of dementia precox outlined above, which regards it as primarily a dementia upon which various psychotic symptoms may be engrafted, this variety would constitute the typical, fundamental form of the disease, showing the development of the dementia per se, with few if any of the extraneous symptoms found in abundance in some of the other forms.

The origin of this variety is insidious, and it may be quite impossible to fix its date, largely because at first the beginning symptoms were not appreciated at their true value. The young boy, or girl, as the case may be, quite commonly was, previous to the onset of symptoms, getting on nicely in school, perhaps unusually well, was quite a favorite with the other pupils, took an active interest in school life, and was going on with the young people of the neighborhood, being in every way considered a bright and normal child. The fire may have burned very brightly but it was built of straw.

At first the patient begins to show a lack of interest in things,

ceases going out and associates less and less with other children. There is a general listless, apparently lazy and tired-out attitude towards life assumed, lessons are neglected and not learned, and in school the patient shows a failing ability to assimilate new facts—to acquire knowledge.

This state of affairs is associated with insomnia and often headache, sometimes hysteriform attacks, and not infrequently is mistaken for neurasthenia, or, if the patient is quite inactive, this inactivity is taken to be an expression of the depression of melancholia.

Transitory delusions may occur, which are fully expressed, and fleeting hallucinations may at times occupy the field. These manifestations are usually disagreeable, voices are heard saying disagreeable or insulting things, visions of the devil occur and the like.

Not infrequently these patients show themselves to be quite irritable, and partly as a result there may occur transitory excitements. If, in addition, peculiarities of conduct and strange habits develop, the desire to be alone, some mannerism, or slight evidences of muscular tension and the simpler manifestations of negativism, the close relation between these and the more frequent and more fully developed varieties is shown.

It is in this group that we find the mild and abortive forms that being arrested give one the impression that the peculiarities of the individual are inherent character anomalies. Not a few criminals, hoboes, prostitutes, pseudo-geniuses, cranks, and eccentrics if their history could be accurately traced would show an episode of distinct precox coloring which separated a period of relative efficiency in their lives from a following period of relative inefficiency.

A study of this class of cases shows quite frequently that the patient's resort to a hobo type of existence has been the result of his inability to adapt himself to the ordinarily complex conditions of social life, in other words, that he has slipped from under all responsibilities and all conditions which involved continuity of effort and industry. He goes from one position to another unable to fulfill even the simpler duties because of his lack of continuity and interest. Such cases will show the history of a mild attack, with perhaps the development of a dilapidated and incoherent delusional system which subsides and remains dormant when the

patient gets away from stress. Such patients, when they find themselves under conditions of stress that they cannot escape from, as for example, following enlistment in the military service, quite frequently break down and have to be sent to a hospital.

II. HEBEPHRENIA.

This form of dementia precox is usually of more abrupt onset than the last, although here we may also find that the prodromal period extends over several months, during which time the patient suffers from insomnia, headache, anorexia, and perhaps some loss of flesh.

The symptoms of the onset of the attack are quite generally confusion and symptoms of depression which have an outward semblance to the symptoms of melancholia. The characteristic retardation of manic-depressive psychosis is, however, absent, and hallucinations and delusions occupy a much more prominent place in the picture. These hallucinations are numerous and involve more especially the auditory and visual fields. Both hallucinations and delusions are disagreeable. Voices are heard calling vile names and accusing the patient of immoral practices; delusions are self-accusatory and in harmony with the depression, the patient thinks he is lost for having masturbated and the like. In this condition violent attempts at suicide are not infrequent and only go to add force to the diagnosis of melancholia so often made at this stage of the disease.

After the active symptoms of the first stages are passed the underlying and fundamental defect becomes more apparent. The hallucinations are fleeting, the delusions not firmly fixed but changeable and fantastic or silly in content, though often with a paranoid tinge; thus one patient believes the sheets stick to his feet, another that this is the "wandering planet." These delusions are not supported by reason or logic, and seem not to have been at all assimilated to the mentality of the patient. They are false ideas, disconnected from the general content of thought and existing much as do foreign bodies in various anatomical locations.

The following extract from the history of an old case of precox of the hobo type shows well the looseness of the train of thought, the weakness of judgment shown by the insufficiency of the rea-

sons given for certain conclusions, and the indifference shown by making no effort to explain or understand what would appear to be remarkable occurrences.

Two years ago he went back to the Old Country to see his family. On his way back to Arkansas he says President Roosevelt was on the same train with him, and that the President made him give up his seat. He knew it was Roosevelt because he looked like a man by the name of Rosenthal who owned a hardware store in Batesville, Ark. Patient states that while alone on the farm he read the Bible a great deal, as well as books about spirits; that through their perusal he learned he had become bald-headed and had rheumatism, and had strained his back. As the result of the will of Martin Luther, acting through some mortal, he said his neighbors would keep his cattle, hogs and horses from coming home at night; that the stock became poor and everything seemed to go against him. At night he was troubled by someone who punched him and kept him awake. He was not relieved of this annoyance until he put a piece of money in his shotgun. He recalls seeing two stars travelling toward each other, one from the south pole, the other from the north, and the next night there were seven stars arranged about the moon. He did not know the significance of these phenomena. About the middle of February he said he was playing cards with a friend whom he asked who was elected President. The friend told him that there was no one on the ticket. Patient came to Washington a little later (March 1, 1909) to see if he could not secure the position of President, and also to ask Roosevelt what was meant by making him give up his seat on the train two years ago. On arriving in Washington patient went to the Capitol and inquired about getting a room, told of his trouble with Roosevelt, and was immediately turned over to the Police Department.

The emotional deterioration is prominently in evidence. One patient says enemies are following him, and that he has been killed a number of times; another that the other patients are trying to injure him. These facts are told with no show of emotion, in a decidedly matter of fact way.

In the cases that are not profoundly demented a certain *looseness of the train of thought* is noticeable. One patient tells me that he has been ordained by the Lord to preach—that we are all put here to do the best we can—that the bread in the hospital is impure—that he enlisted on a certain date in a certain regiment—that when he first came to the hospital he was not well in mind or body, etc. This superficiality resembles flight of ideas, but there is none of the pressure of activity of manic-depressive psy-

chosis, and while the changes in direction of the train of thought are abrupt, they are not sudden, and the degree of incoherence is much greater. The speech is deliberate and there does not appear to be any distractibility. The condition is due rather to *loose connection* between the elements in the train of thought and to *poverty of ideas*. In some of the more excited phases of dementia precox we do find a close resemblance to flight of ideas and these patients are often difficult to differentiate from manic-depressives.

These patients, like the cases of heboidophrenia, often exhibit peculiar habits and mannerisms—a tendency to repeat certain phrases, suggestibility, unusual attitudes, or a certain muscular tension, shown by angularity, clumsiness, and restraint in their movements. Among these symptoms is often noted a silly laugh which is frequently developed while the patient is talking to himself, but which may occur at any time with absolutely no apparent cause. If the patient is asked for an explanation of why he laughed he will reply in a characteristic manner, “I don’t know,” or else give some shallow, wholly inadequate, or manifestly false reason. These various symptoms, with the exception perhaps of the silly laugh, all go to show the fundamental alliance between this form of dementia precox and the catatonic variety next to be described.

In conduct these patients usually exhibit a condition of listlessness, apathy and disinterestedness with little tendency to activity or to emotional expression. Alternating conditions of depression and excitement may and often do occur and occasionally the disease is ushered in by an excitement which may lead to a diagnosis of mania, as the opposite onset we have seen may lead to a diagnosis of melancholia.

The alternating conditions may be very mild as in the case of the young soldier mentioned above, who thought he was ordained to preach and that the bread was impure, who will be quiet for several months and then exhibit the opposite condition for a few days by following the doctors and nurses about the ward telling them his troubles. On the contrary, the alternations may be between conditions much more extreme as in the case of the patient who alternates between a state of stupor and a state of

excitement, in which he eats paper, strings, sticks, and bedecks himself with all sorts of trash he collects for that purpose, at times becoming violently angry and cursing every one. This more marked alternation is, however, somewhat more characteristic of catatonia.

In these excited conditions in cases in which dementia is well marked the form of thought becomes greatly deranged, and there is a high grade of incoherence amounting to *confusion* of thought and the speech shows absolute incoherence, a mere jumble of words expressing only fragments of ideas. A veritable *word-salad* (*Salade de mots* of Forel), often with *neologisms*.

The following is a stenogram from such a case. Note the neologism *prestigitis*:

"How old are you?" "Why, I am centuries old, sir." "How long have you been here?" "I have been now on this property on and off for a long time. I cannot say the exact time, because we are absorbed by the air at night, and they bring back people. They kill up everything; they can make you lie; they can talk through your throat." "Who is this?" "Why, the air?" "What is the name of this place?" "This place is called a star." "Who is the doctor in charge of your ward?" "A body just like yours, sir. They can make you black and white. I say good morning, but he just comes through there. At first it was a colony. They said it was heaven. These buildings were not solid at the time, and I am positive this is the same place. They have others just like it. People die and all the microbes talk over there, and *prestigitis* you know is sending you from here to another world." "Do you know what year this is?" "Why, centuries ago." "Do you know who discovered America?" "Yes, sir; Columbus." "What year?" "1492; they have had several discoveries since then, sir." "When was the Civil War?" "That was in 1864-1860-1864." "Who was the President of the United States at that time?" "Well, let me see; they make you over again, sir." "When did you enter the army?" "I entered the army, why it was centuries and centuries ago; not I but a body just like my remembrance around 1903." "Were you ever in Cuba?" "Yes sir; I was there three times. That was centuries ago; not I but my remembrance, because I have been killed; yes, I have been killed, I am positive of that. Over there originally—originally means first—they remake us. There are other stars like this. I was sent by the government to the United States to Washington to some star, and they had a pretty nice country there. Now you have a body like a young man who says he is of the *prestigitis*." "Who was this *prestigitis*?" "Why, you are yourself. You can be a *prestigitis*. They make you say bad things; they can read you; they bring back negroes from the dead."

III. CATATONIA.

Like the other forms of dementia precox which have been described this form is usually of subacute or chronic onset, being preceded by symptoms of insomnia, confusion, headache, loss of appetite, emaciation and the like. The disease, on the contrary, is sometimes of sudden onset, in which case it is apt to be the result of a suddenly depleting cause like the loss of blood or some severe emotional shock such as fright. In these cases the patient may become at once profoundly stuporous.

The initial stages are usually marked by a mild grade of depression, as in other forms, giving the appearance of melancholia. Hysteriform attacks and in some case epileptiform convulsions may occur during this period.

Following the more or less vague symptoms of the prodromal period occur the typical symptoms of the disease which group themselves into two stages which irregularly alternate, viz., *catatonic stupor* and *catatonic excitement*.

In catatonic stupor the principal symptoms are *stupor*, *negativism* and *muscular tension*. In the extreme cases the patient lies perfectly still, without making any movement whatever and not reacting at all to stimuli. Questions are paid no attention to whatever, absolute *mutism* being the rule, while sensory stimuli of very considerable strength may be applied without eliciting any response.

The mutism is one of the manifestations of *negativism* which usually shows itself in various ways. The patient not only refuses to eat, but pays no attention to the calls of nature, permitting the bladder and rectum to become overloaded with urine and faecal matter, often to a serious extent; he likewise allows the saliva to collect in his mouth for hours at a time until putrefactive changes have occurred, and then only perhaps as a result of insistence by the nurse belches forth this mass of stinking fluid. Any effort to get the patient to do anything is immediately met by a response diametrically opposed to the desired act. If asked to show the tongue the lips are tightly closed; if asked to open the eyes they are closed, if already open, or, if closed, the lids are pressed more tightly together by the orbicularis.

Attempts to move the body are met by marked resistance and elicit the condition of *muscular tension*. The limbs are quite

rigid, often stretched out stiffly, the fist perhaps tightly clenched, or, again, the extremities of the body as a whole, perhaps, may rigidly occupy some peculiar position. This muscular tension is often shown in *grimaces*, certain facial muscles continuing in contraction and giving strange and peculiar expressions to the countenance. Thus we find that the patient maintains a constant expression of scowling, or keeps the eyes tightly closed, the cheeks puffed out, or perhaps the lips closed and protruded, producing the condition called by the Germans "Schnauzkrampf."

Quite the reverse of this picture of negativism and muscular tension is seen in other cases. In the place of muscular tension we find a condition of remarkable flexibility, so that the limbs may be molded into any position desired, and though quite unusual, they are maintained there indefinitely—*catalepsy*—if raised, until gravity and fatigue cause them to fall. This condition is known as *flexibilitas cerea* (waxy flexibility).

With this condition is also found the opposite state of negativism, namely, *suggestibility* or *command automatism*. Patients in this condition do mechanically just what they are told. This condition of heightened suggestibility may be so marked as to produce *echolalia*—a repetition of words and phrases spoken to them, and *echopraxia*—a repetition of movements in their presence. These symptoms are often noted during the examination, when it is observed that the questions of the examiner are repeated by the patient—in whole or in part—and that also many of his movements may also be repeated, such, for example, as looking at his watch, putting the hand to the face, and the like.

The condition of catatonic stupor alternates with *catatonic excitement*. Here we find symptoms manifesting themselves by activity as opposed to the general condition of passivity or quiescence in the stuporous patients.

The marked cases of catatonic excitement are constantly talking, shouting, throwing themselves about on the bed, and generally manifesting a condition of increased psychomotor activity, reminding one very much at first of the manic stage of manic-depressive psychosis. The actions are, however, much more absurd, not directed consistently to any end, quite incoherent and often interrupted by attitudinizing, hysteriform attacks and stereotyped movements—the patients repeating over and over again cer-

tain motions, such as swaying the body backwards and forwards, nodding the head, swinging the arms or certain other motions characteristic of the patient and which have no apparent significance. These motions are often accompanied by some sound, such as a grunt or blowing sound, or by the continuous repetition of some phrase.

Verbigeration, often associated with senseless rhyming, is quite common. The following is an example:

"What is your name?" "How old are you?" "About thirty." "How long have you been here?" "A couple of years." "What do you do most of the time?" "Fold shirts in the laundry and mend the clothes." "Do you talk to yourself?" "I do not talk to myself; talk to other people, also talk to all the people I run across." "What do you talk about?" "Talk about the weather, etc." "What is that you say to yourself?" "Locks and keys, keys and locks, locks, keys, keys, locks, locks, locks, keys; just a sort of doggerel [perseveration]. You know some of the attendants might get hold of me and punch me. Locks, keys, keys, locks, locks, keys, keys, locks. You know if they was to run across me making too much noise they might hurt me." "What do you say locks and keys for?" "Just to enjoy myself. You know there are times when there is nothing doing, and I have to do it to pass away the time, and you might just as well say something as nothing." "What did you say the other night to the students?" "Told them about locks and keys." "What else?" "Myriads of us keep growing in numbers, also in largeness; locks and keys, keys, locks, locks, keys, keys, locks, locks, keys, keys, locks. Myriads of us quick-foot full through, ev-er no mat-ter. Locks, keys, keys, locks, locks, keys, keys. Myriads of us ev-er full us as keep lives giant's growths, ev-er lives giant's keeper, ev-er no mat-ter. Locks, keys, keys, locks, locks, keys, keys, locks. Lives giant's wealth, health and pleasures, ev-er no mat-ter. Lives sweet foreigners, ev-er no mat-ter." "Can't you recite some more poetry?" "I cannot give any more; locks, keys, keys, locks, locks, keys, locks. Me don't know any more; locks, keys, keys, locks, locks, keys. I will get in trouble. I have been raking away at it outside and in and inside out again. I have tried to write poetry, but could not write any more than six fools."

The noisy incoherent talk of these cases might readily be thought to indicate flight of ideas but the incoherence is much greater than that found with an equal grade of agitation in manic-depressive psychosis, and there is no trace of a guiding thought in the form of a goal idea. The patient, too, does not show distractibility to the same extent, being, on the contrary, quite inaccessible, paying no attention whatever to what is being said or done by others, not even making any pretense to answer questions, though often repeated.

This illustration shows well the *perseveration* in the field of speech. A single motor impulse gets the field and holds it; the same word or phrase is repeated over and over again. A quite similar disturbance is seen in the various types of *stereotypy*. In the speech field this manifests itself by a tendency to the use of set, unchangeable sentences. One of my patients whom I met every evening on leaving my office used invariably to say: "Doctor, I wish you would go to the city with me this evening, have the electricity shut off, and those parties arrested." This sentence for months was never varied by a word or intonation and was elicited every time I came within speaking distance. Later the last phrase was left off and then the abbreviated form was continued as the other had been. There seems to be a sort of coagulation of the motor reactions; they are not fluid. The same thing occurs in other motor fields.

Quite characteristic of this condition, too, are the *impulsive acts* of these patients. They will suddenly and with absolutely no warning whatever commit some act of violence, such as assaulting another patient or breaking out a window, and quite as suddenly lapse into their previous state. It is quite impossible to get any adequate information as to the cause for these acts. The patient is inaccessible to a degree and either gives some senseless reply to the questions asked, a puerile reason, perhaps, or retires behind an "I don't know" or complete silence. These attacks come out of the clear sky, cannot be foreseen, and make these patients at times very dangerous.

In the milder cases of catatonic excitement, in which the motor excitement is not so pronounced, the patients are quite commonly characterized by the development of certain habits of action in some definite particular. These peculiarities are known as *mannisms*. One patient must slide the right foot backward and forward before beginning to walk, another holds the fork in a peculiar way, another walks close to the wall, not coming out into the center of the ward, another carefully avoids stepping on cracks in the sidewalk, and so on indefinitely.

The following extract from a case record shows the development of many characteristic catatonic symptoms:

Male, æt. 19. Sometime in the early part of September, 1910, after he had been on an alcoholic spree, he returned to the ship and thought he

heard his shipmates making remarks about him and saying they were going to throw him overboard. He left the ship and went to the police station at Newport and asked the police to lock him up; the next morning the master-at-arms came after him and he was locked in the brig of the ship. He still had auditory hallucinations and thought he could hear his mother and little brother talking to him; was kept several days in the Naval Hospital at Newport under observation. He slept little, and felt very nervous. Was admitted to this hospital September 30, 1910. Upon arrival here, he wanted to see a priest—said he was going to die, that he heard people saying they were going to shoot him, said he felt awful scared, and everybody seemed to think he was a spy here.

In October, 1910, visual and auditory hallucinations were the most prominent feature of his case. Voices told him to get out of bed and remain out. For a time he did not eat, saying something prevented his swallowing; again he could not breathe; something closed his nose; his bowels were obstructed and urine was retained; saliva was allowed to accumulate in his mouth. While in bed, he assumed a constrained position; his head was held from the pillow without effort; his facial expression was one of dazed confusion. He was disoriented for time, place and person, said he was not insane, but knew that every one around him thought him so. He had a marked condition of *flexibilitas cerea*. When in bed, his head was frequently raised in turtle-fashion without the support of a pillow. About February 1, 1911, patient began to improve progressively. At that time he was up and dressed and about the ward, talked more freely concerning his past experiences, associated quite freely with the other patients, asked for the privilege of doing some work, and rendered quite efficient service in the ward work. His insight at that time was incomplete and imperfect.

Physical Symptoms.—The physical symptoms of catatonia are much more prominent than in any other form of dementia precox.

Slight differences in the size of the pupils is common. Pupillary unrest (hippus) is sometimes observed; quite frequently a marked degree of mydriasis is present, while the phenomenon of Pilz is sometimes found. The tendon reflexes are usually exaggerated. The cutaneous sensibility is lowered. Vasomotor disturbances are often seen, giving rise to cold, cyanosed extremities in the stuporous cases. With this condition may be associated dermatographia. The secretions are disturbed, the sweat and saliva may be increased, the urine scanty or increased, and constipation may prevail. Loss of weight is common in the active stages of this disease.

IV. PARANOID FORMS.

There has been a great deal of discussion as to just what cases are properly included under this heading. It is inevitable, as long as paranoia itself is so poorly defined, that the paranoid forms of mental disease should also be difficult to classify.

The fundamental fact is that we find here, in dementia precox, cases presenting the paranoid syndrome—delusions of persecution or grandeur, somewhat systematized, with perhaps hallucinations of hearing.

The difficulty is that some writers object to the inclusion of certain forms in the category of dementia precox, others question the propriety of the inclusion of the same forms under the head of paranoia. Many authors, for example, definitely include MAGNAN'S *délire chronique* as a form of paranoid dementia precox.

If dementia precox is to be considered as fundamentally a deterioration psychosis, then we must expect to find symptoms of dementia associated with the paranoid syndrome. KRAEPELIN, however, has included cases that develop late in life, after thirty, and maintain their intellectual integrity for years before marked signs of dementia appear.

The difficulty of differentiating the conditions in their early stages is often very great if not quite impossible. Now that we no longer consider paranoia a purely intellectual disorder we know that its early stages are usually marked by emotional depression. We find this same condition of emotional depression in the prodromal period of dementia precox. If, then, we find a boy eighteen or twenty years old with a fairly well organized delusional system and somewhat depressed, with little evidence of intellectual impairment, perhaps only a desire to seclude himself, with an apparent inability to apply his mind consistently to any end, it is difficult to say whether we are dealing with a case of incipient paranoia or of dementia precox.

When, however, we find a case which gives a history of a comparatively acute onset, with the usual symptoms of insomnia, depression, loss of appetite and some emaciation; and an examination reveals a loosely organized delusional system, the delusions of which are numerous, fantastic and often changeable, associated with numerous fleeting hallucinations, we may feel confident that we are dealing with a case of dementia precox. This diagnosis

is especially warranted if in addition to the above symptoms evidences of muscular tension, stereotypy, verbigeration, automatism, mannerisms, suggestibility or negativism are found, these symptoms, as we have seen, being found in all the varieties of dementia precox in varying degrees and combinations, and seeming to show, as does dementia, the underlying unity of the several different forms.

In some of these paranoid forms the hallucinations play a very prominent part; in others they have less significance. The delusions are not infrequently of a grandiose nature and such patients often decorate themselves very lavishly with all sorts of ornaments and insignia, usually made by themselves. They are the cases that are known as *fantastic paranoiacs*.

The following extract from a case record shows a characteristic type of delusional formation in the paranoid form:

Male, æt. 32 years. On admission to this hospital the patient was well oriented in all spheres, showed no clouding of consciousness, was neat in appearance and tidy in habits, took a normal interest in his surroundings, assisted with the work work, and adapted himself readily to his new environment. He showed no disturbance emotionally as a rule, but when the subject of his sojourn here was broached, he worked himself up into a slight passion. He gave evidence of being slightly suspicious, and on one or two occasions exhibited delusions of reference. "He elaborated a fairly well organized system of persecutory delusions in which many people were involved, among these, some high officials in the Army and Navy, and this delusional system took its inception in the latter part of 1908, while the patient was a member of the Seamen's Gunners' Club at Washington, D. C. He claims that the first trouble started through the instigation of certain false accusations by fellow Masons, that the men at the class tried in every way to make life miserable for him, that he had heard them call him various unmentionable names, with a view of blemishing his character. On one occasion they administered to him an overdose of iron, quinine and strychnin, on another, they tried to poison his food. They refused to eat with him at the same table, had detectives watch him, etc. He says back of all this, stood some high officials of the Navy and Army, that he saw one of these give the sign to the other man to torture the patient, that the reason these officials had them persecuting him was the fact of the patient's invention of some dirigible aero torpedoes with proper detonators, and these officials stole the patent from the patient and then sold it to the combination of three European countries; and it was to their interest to get rid of the patient in some way in order that he should not expose them, as he had knowledge of this treasonable transaction."

V. MIXED STATES.

As previously mentioned the several forms described are not always clean-cut. The simple, hebephrenic and paranoid often present symptoms that are more characteristically developed in the catatonic. These mixed forms are in reality very common indeed and in fact almost constitute the rule.

Course and Progress.—The simple and paranoid forms are the slowest of evolution and almost chronic in course, the paranoid forms often remaining in statu quo for two or three years. The hebephrenic and catatonic forms are more acute in onset and course, leading more rapidly to dementia in the majority of cases, although the catatonic form has rather the better prognosis.

Remissions occur especially in the catatonics. According to KRAEPELIN, 8 per cent. of the hebephrenics (including the group of simple dementia) and 13 per cent. of catatonics make practical recoveries, but some of these cases relapse. The paranoid cases do not get well. The tendency of all forms is to a gradually deepening dementia.

Recently ZABLOCKA⁸ in a study of 515 cases found that 60 per cent. proceeded to light, 18 per cent. to medium, and 22 per cent. to severe dementia. The cases which develop in persons with the "shut in" type of character show the worst outcome.

KÖLPIN⁹ in a recent study of 100 cases tabulates his results as follows:

Cases.	Earliest Beginning.	Latest Beginning.
31 Hebephrenia	14	38
30 Catatonia	17	48
39 Paranoid	16	51

and comes to the additional conclusions regarding the above forms of the disease. The hebephrenic form results in simple dementia in a few cases. There are only rarely remissions and the course is generally continuous, with increasing dementia. Only the severe grades get into the asylum. The origin is more insidious in women than in men. In the catatonic form the origin is acute or subacute. A half of the cases begin with depression, a quarter

⁸ Zablocka, Marie-Emma: Zur Prognosestellung bei der Dementia præcox, Allg. Zeit. f. Psych., Bd. LXV.

⁹ Kölpin: Über Dementia præcox, insbesondere die paranoide Form desselben. Allgemeine Zeitschr. f. Psychiatrie, Mch., 1908.

begin with excitement. There are more often remissions in this form than in hebephrenia. The beginning of the paranoid form is more or less chronic. In four of the cases studied the origin was acute or subacute. The results in this form are:

(a) Systematization of delusions with many hallucinations. These hallucinations may be wonderful, etc. (fantastic paranoia). These cases are not numerous and do not present much defect.

(b) The commonest form, the building of a poor system of delusions, which earlier or later comes to a standstill. There is depression and irritability and not much defect.

(c) The delusions are loosely organized, disappear and become confused or in great numbers and are fantastic. There is no increasing dementia, irritability decreases and the patient becomes comfortable, stupid, confused, the productive with word salad.

The question whether a cure in the sense of a *restitutio ad integrum* ever takes place is still a mooted one, some observers claiming that every case of remission will show defect if examined with sufficient care. Mlle. PASCAL¹⁰ speaks of abortive cases beginning with pseudo-neurasthenia. These abortive cases and the cases of remission in the early stages show defects only of mild degree and largely in the higher faculties. Many of these cases go to swell the ranks of the criminals, the prostitutes, and the hoboos, and are often mistaken for cases of feeble-mindedness. WILMANN¹¹ in a study of 127 vagabonds found 66 cases of dementia precox.

Diagnosis.—The diagnosis of dementia precox, while comparatively easy in the well defined and advanced cases, becomes a matter of great difficulty in certain instances.

Certain forms of manic-depressive psychosis present characteristic difficulties, particularly the mixed forms. Here it is often necessary to find a history of repeated attacks without deterioration in order to feel sure that it is not dementia precox. The depression, which so frequently occurs as an early symptom in precox, may readily be mistaken for the depression of the manic-depressive psychosis, the retardation of this psychosis being very similar in its outward manifestations to the negativism, the an-

¹⁰ Mlle. Pascal: Les rémissions dans la démence précoce, *Revue de Psychiatrie*, 1907.

¹¹ Cited by Mlle. Pascal.

tagonism, the inaccessibility and particularly the lack of interest of the precox patient. If there are delusions, however, the manic-depressive is more apt to have delusions of a self-accusatory type, while the precox type is more likely to have delusions of a grotesque character, and to refer the origin of his delusions to causes outside of himself. The pressure of activity of the manic-depressive has outward similarities to the excitement of the catatonic. In the former, however, the activity, although rapidly changing in its object, characteristically is addressed to some particular purpose, while with the catatonic the activity is more diffuse and has less direction. It is incoherent.

In the early stages the mild depression of the precox may simulate that of the neurasthenic, or the agitated depression may simulate that of the anxiety neurosis. In both instances the precox is more apt to show grotesque delusions and conduct disorders of a bizarre nature, such as tearing up his clothes, mutilating himself, or, on the other hand, characteristic negativistic symptoms, such as retaining the saliva or the urine, withdrawing from all efforts to do for him, refusing to coöperate in changing his clothing, the refusal of food and the like.

The epileptiform and hysteriform episodes may lead to a diagnosis of epilepsy or hysteria. It must not be forgotten, however, that it is possible to have precox complicated with epilepsy, and that many of the symptoms of precox, if taken in their cross section without a study of the life history of the individual, are distinctly hysterical in character.

From the infection and exhaustion psychoses the differentiation is characteristically extremely difficult at the height of the attack, and it is necessary in such patients who are suffering from a distinct type of infection such as typhoid, and who present distinctly precox symptoms, to wait until the subsidence of the infection to see whether the case clears up, as it will if it is merely an infection psychosis. Great care should be exercised in offering a prognosis in these cases. Many of the so-called cases of puerperal insanity are really cases of precox which have been precipitated by the circumstances of the puerperal period, loss of blood, prolonged labor, infection or the mental stress incident to an illegitimate pregnancy.

From paresis the differentiation can usually be made definitely by the Wassermann reaction of the blood serum and the cerebro-

spinal fluid, for both of which it will be positive in paresis, and by an examination of the cell content of the cerebrospinal fluid which will show an increased cell content and quite characteristically the presence of one or more plasma cells to the field in paresis.

From the toxic psychoses, particularly from alcoholic deterioration, the differentiation is often quite difficult. It must be borne in mind in this connection that the relatively normal man deteriorates very slowly from the use of alcohol, while we find in the records of precox cases, who have indulged in alcohol, that the deterioration has come on relatively much earlier. In addition to this, it will be found that the amount of deterioration in the precox case is very much greater than could reasonably be explained by the alcoholic indulgences of the patient. When we find these discrepancies in the history we are justified in suspecting that we are dealing with a fundamentally more serious condition than mere alcoholism. GRAETER¹² in a valuable monograph has recently called attention to this combination of alcohol and precox, and it is extremely important to bear in mind particularly from the point of view of prognosis.

Oftentimes the question of diagnosis will arise as between an acquired defect due to precox and some form of inherent defectiveness. It must be remembered in this connection that precox may develop upon a defective basis, and that in such case the history will characteristically show the symptoms of this defectiveness, such as poor progress in school, and inability to learn in the various occupations in which the patient has been engaged. The symptomatology itself may also indicate this original defect, as for example the following production of such a patient shows quite clearly the lack of knowledge which comes from lack of education at least, and would lead to the suspicion of an inherent defect.

there is signety to vocle word i have the sin i am not edicat every body wall love this sin it will be easy to lorn for you but burden for me i am A labor willen to wark i can do beter if my sine is excaped it wall be grate and wondful for the they will love it to it was A puzzle to be but not to them Silas Johnson of United States Amicar dont think I am crazy i dont know whethe cristfer clumers was or not.

¹² Graeter: *Dementia Præcox mit Alcoholismus Chronicus. Eine klinische Studie über Demenz und chronisch paranoide Psychosen scheinbar alkoholischer Natur.* Leipzig, 1909.

Pathology.—There is very little that is distinctive in the pathology of dementia precox. In the same way that the clinical symptoms are widely diffused and rather indefinite so it is with the pathological findings. A certain amount of degenerative change is often found in the cortical cells, while some observers hold that these cells are fewer in number than normal. The neuroglia is quite frequently found increased in amount. In the other organs the changes are inconsiderable. Beginning degenerative changes may be found in the vessels and tuberculosis is not an infrequent complication.

More recently, however, the way seems to be opening up for something more definite in the pathology of this disorder. ALZHEIMER¹³ has been working on the degeneration products of the nervous tissues and thinks he has found distinctive changes and enough to write down dementia precox as an organic brain disease. SOUTHARD¹⁴ has recently described certain anomalies as scleroses which he has found in precox brains. These anomalies tend to group themselves in certain regions. The frontal region is often involved and it is interesting to note that he finds a cerebellar group of cases corresponding to those presenting catatonic symptoms. His groups roughly correspond to the groups clinically showing most prominently intellectual disorder (paranoia), and motor disorder (catatonia), while the emotional disorders of precox, most prominently seen perhaps in the hebephrenic variety, have been supposed to be due to lesions in certain deep layers of the cortex¹⁵ which have no direct motor or sensory or perhaps associational relations.

Nature of Dementia Precox.—From the discussion of dementia precox up to this point it will be seen that it has certain similarities to the organic brain diseases like paresis on the one hand, and to the more purely functional disorders such as hysteria on the other hand. It would seem to stand midway between the so-called organic and functional psychoses.

¹³ Alzheimer: Beiträge zur Kenntniss der pathologischen Neuroglia und ihrer Beziehungen zu den Abbauvorgängen im Nervengewebe. *Histol. u. Histopath. Arbeiten*, 1910.

¹⁴ Southard, E. E.: A Study of the Dementia Præcox Group in the Light of Certain Cases Showing Anomalies or Scleroses in Particular Brain Regions, *Am. Jour. of Insanity*, July, 1910.

¹⁵ Lugaro, Ernesto: *Modern Problems in Psychiatry*, 1909.

It is allied to paresis, for example, on the anatomical side by its pathology—the degenerations—and on its clinical side by the underlying progressive dementia upon which as a basis all manner of psychotic symptoms may be erected.

It is allied to hysteria by its frequent apparent psychogenic origin and by the similarity of the psychic mechanisms—the “complex” formation and the symptoms to which it gives rise.

KRAEPELIN, taking the more material view, puts forward the hypothesis of toxic origin—from perhaps the sexual glands, since it appears so closely associated with adolescence. JUNG¹⁶ sees more the functional origin and would bring in the toxemia to account for the non-recovery. The symptoms, like hysteria, are fixed, as it were, like the photographic plate by the hypo bath. He¹⁷ thinks the affect which causes the complex may set loose a toxin. The affect-toned complex may cause the mental and physical symptoms of a dementia precox in the same way that an infection may follow a physical trauma.

Reference to the discussion of the relation of mind and body in Chapter II, where mind is considered as reacting by mechanisms which are both psychical and physical—psychical at one extreme and physical at the other extreme—will indicate how a disorder which is ultimately organic in nature may take its origin in purely mental factors.

It is of great importance, however, to define if possible the psychological differences between hysteria and the psychoneuroses, in which we also see the operation of complexes, and precox. In the former no dementia occurs—in the latter dementia is the important symptom.

The difference seems to me to lie in the character of the psychic splitting. In hysteria and the psychoneuroses the splitting is more massive while in precox it is relatively molecular. In hysteria, for example, the symptoms lead back to actual situations, while in precox they lead back only to fragments. For example:

A young woman—an hysteric—believes that she is dead and that her soul has separated from her body. The explanation is

¹⁶ Jung, C. G.: *The Psychology of Dementia Præcox*, Nerv. & Ment. Dis. Monog. Series No. 3.

¹⁷ Bleuler, E., und Jung, C. G.: *Komplexe und Krankheitsursachen bei Dementia præcox*, Zentralb. f. Nervenheilk. u. Psychiatrie, Heft 6, 1908.

that she is married to one man and loves another. Spiritually she belongs to her lover, physically she belongs to her husband and her body is dead because only in this way can she justify the continuation of physical relations. As a further elaboration of this she has a complete anesthesia.

A precox, while having some difficulty on the ward, has to be restrained and cries out "contract," "contract." It appeared on questioning that on this day the mortgage on his father's farm was due. His father had often had to ask him to help pay it. Patient then spoke of a "four-sided contract burial." It had taken four persons to restrain him. Here it will be seen that the associations are only with fragments of situations. There was no other connection with his trouble except that it occurred on the day the mortgage was due and so a quite superficial association was formed.

A young woman precox says she is related to the Empress of Austria, whose name is Charlotte, because she has a cousin and an aunt by the name of Charlotte, and that she had a scarlet (clang association) dress given her when a child.

This molecular splitting of the psyche I would term the *fragmentation of the psyche* and believe it to be the psychological characteristic of dementia precox.

It must not be forgotten that a precox may have, however, complex reactions exactly like that of hysteria and the psychoneuroses. To that extent such a patient is hysterical or psychoneurotic.

Treatment.—The treatment must be entirely symptomatic. A careful search should be made in each case for functional abnormalities and for the origin of mental conflicts and correction applied as far as possible.

These cases will, of necessity, have to spend most of their lives in a hospital. It is therefore desirable to educate them as early as possible in good habits. They should be encouraged to some form of occupation, preferably out of doors. Under the influence of hospital surroundings and farm life these cases may get on very comfortably and the dementing process be considerably retarded.

It seems probable that one of the best methods of approach to the treatment of these cases would be by the method of reëduca-

tion through the agency of industrial training. If this is to be done intelligently, however, it is essential that the patient be not merely put to work in a haphazard way, but that a sufficiently careful analysis of the psychology of his particular condition be made so that it will appear what is the best method of approach to arouse his interests and fix his attention. It is also necessary to bear in mind the motor disturbances, more especially of the catatonic group, because here the education will have to be addressed more or less to restoring certain motor adjustments. The same principles are involved in treatment of this sort as have been long recognized in dealing with the mentally defective. The avenue of approach to the individual must first be worked out before it can be expected that material results will be obtained. In the few cases that have been worked upon in this hospital along these lines the improvement has been prompt, marked, and considerable. Such improvement is of course open to the criticism that it might have taken place any way in the natural course of the disease, and requires further and more elaborate studies to define its possibilities.

One of the most hopeful methods of approach to this problem is by a study of the way in which recovery has been brought about in those cases that get spontaneously well. This may teach us how we can help, and also, what is of equal importance, teach us to avoid doing what will make matters worse. BERTSCHINGER¹⁸ has recently written illuminatingly upon this subject.

Prophylaxis.—Preventive measures are dependent upon the ability to recognize in the child the possibilities of a future precox. The recent studies of character anomalies as found in the anamnesis of precox patients indicates the possibility of foreseeing this result in a certain considerable number of cases, particularly those presenting the "shut in" type of personality.¹⁹

The method of procedure in such cases would be to attempt to overcome the defect present in the particular case by educational methods.²⁰ It would seem that a recognition of the precox character in the child would make it possible to save it from a number

¹⁸ Bertschinger: Heilungsvorgänge bei Schizophrenen, Allg. Zeits. Psychiat., Bd. 68, H. 2.

¹⁹ Hoch, August: Constitutional Factors in the Dementia Præcox Group, Rev. of Neurol. & Psych., Aug., 1910.

²⁰ Jelliffe, S. E.: Predementia Præcox, Am. Jour. Med. Sci., 1907, p. 157.

of stresses that might prove disintegrating factors. Particularly an open, healthy initiation into the mysteries and problems of sex is important, as this is the rock upon which these cases are often shipwrecked. Protection from undue stresses and a careful education along lines of the development of self-sufficiency in the face of difficulties with a full appreciation of the limits of strength and adjustability is the keynote.

CHAPTER XI.

INVOLUTION MELANCHOLIA.

General Considerations.—Under the influence of the German school the term melancholia has been limited to the depressions of advanced life that cannot be classed with any of the other psychoses, as for instance manic-depressive psychosis. The distinction, in the main, is based on the characteristic of anxiety and agitation and the absence of retardation. More careful observation, however, has taught us that while anxiety is quite typical of the depressions of advanced life, it does occur in the young, while retardation, so necessary a part of the picture in the manic-depressive type of depression, is also found in the melancholia of later life. We have thus been rather coming to the belief for some time that perhaps the differences between the depressions at the two periods of life are after all not fundamental, but, to an extent at least, dependent upon the conditions incident to and dependent upon age.

General Characterization.—A psychosis of the involutional period of life characterized by great emotional depression, apprehension and anxiety.

Etiology.—Melancholia is essentially a disease of the period of involution—forty to fifty years in women, rarely before fifty in men. A considerable number, but by no means all, show the beginning of senile decay—gray hair and the early changes of arterio-sclerosis being most noticeable. The menopause seems to be an important etiological factor in women. Heredity does not play as important a rôle here as in some of the other psychoses, being only present in about sixty per cent. of the cases. Marked exciting causes, such as emotional shock, or other conditions of mental stress are unusually frequent. It would seem that this class of causes operating upon a mind under the general stress of the involution period, and perhaps the additional stress of heredity, were the important factors in etiology.

It is coming to be believed that one of the important factors of

the involution period is the atrophy of certain of the ductless glands—particularly the uterus and ovaries, the prostate and testicles, and the adrenals—and that certain of the disturbances of this period of life are dependent upon an unbalanced relationship brought about at this time between these glands.¹

Symptomatology.—The disease commonly has a prodromal period of several months' duration. The symptoms of this period are indefinite and are comprised of certain head symptoms, such as pressure, pain, vertigo, together with anorexia, irritability, insomnia, mental insufficiency, a mild neurasthenic state and some emaciation.

This condition becomes progressively worse and the patients develop a morbid fear of impending danger—*apprehensive depression*. The morbid background for this depression is not infrequently *delusions of sin*. All sorts of acts in the patient's past life are reviewed and considered to be unforgivable sins. Masturbation, a petty theft, the failure to carry out the advice of a priest, in fact almost anything may be looked upon as a terrible sin, even magnified into the *unpardonable sin*, and the patient fears his soul is irretrievably lost, that he will go to hell when he dies and suffer its torments eternally.

The fear and apprehension from such causes may be comparatively slight and the patient show no outward evidences of it except in conversation. Under these circumstances he is quite often able to put his depression in the background and occupy himself with some form of work. In these cases consciousness is unclouded, orientation is unimpaired, and hallucinations, if present, take a minor place in the symptom-complex. In these cases, even when the depression is considerably marked, the patients are quite capable of seeing a joke and the lapse into a moment of light talk and the smile showing forth from a background of profound depression are noteworthy and characteristic.

If the depression becomes more marked the fear and apprehension graduate into a condition of *anxiety*. The patient goes about wringing his hands, moaning and groaning, perhaps repeating over and over again some such phrase as "Oh, my God! Oh, my God!" "It is a fearful thing. Good Lord help me!"

¹ Rémond and Voivenel: Essai sur le rôle de la ménopause en pathologie mentale, L'Encéphale, Feb., 1911.

The fear of impending danger is imminent, the patient is lost and is about to be executed. Whenever the physician visits the ward he is believed to have come to carry out the sentence of execution, and the patient begs and pleads to be spared, not to be taken out and butchered, shot, and cut up into little pieces. Reassurances are in vain. The slamming of a door in an adjoining ward is the report of a gun—a patient has just been shot and they are coming for him. One patient constantly repeats “Doctor, will I be done away with tonight?” and “Then will I be here tonight just the same as last night, and will I be here tomorrow just the same as today?” Another patient believes herself very sinful, refuses to eat because the food should be used for others, walks about in an agitated manner picking her fingers and attempted suicide because she was afraid she was to be put to death. These are the cases of *agitated melancholia*.

Even in these cases consciousness remains unclouded, orientation is little if at all impaired, and the form of thought is maintained.

Quite a different picture is sometimes presented by patients with symptoms of retardation. The milder cases merely show slow movements, slow response to questions with a low voice and remind one of the depressive stage of manic-depressive psychosis. This condition is not uncommon. More marked cases, however, present mutism, inactivity and resistance sufficient to warrant characterizing them as stuporous. This condition, however, may not be altogether due to retardation but may be the result of delusions—*delusional control*—to the effect that they must not speak, that it is wicked to eat, and the like. The mental condition is one of intense apprehensive depression with delusion and often hallucinations. The retardation in these cases by no means constitutes as important a part of the clinical picture as it does in manic-depressive psychosis.

A still further development of anxiety may lead to a condition of marked and continuous motor agitation with insomnia, refusal of food and emaciation, with marked clouding of consciousness, hallucinations and disorientation.

Confusion.—These are the most exaggerated of the cases of involutional melancholia and lead rapidly to a condition of exhaustion.

In these marked cases of apprehension and anxiety there is quite frequently a considerable amount of precordial distress and tachycardia and often a sense of oppression over the chest with a feeling of difficulty of breathing. These symptoms are apt to appear in attacks, at which times the mental depression is most pronounced. Although suicidal tendencies are frequent in this form of psychosis, it is not necessarily at these times that they are most apt to be exaggerated.

FARRAR distinguishes two forms of this psychosis which he quite clearly defines, viz., true melancholia or *melancholia vera* and *anxietas præsenilis*, while he describes a third in which the symptoms are not quite so well marked but are rather of a negative character—*depressio apathetica*.

In *melancholia vera* we have in the main an autopsychosis. The delusions are auto-accusatory, with ideas of sin but with clear consciousness; there is no defect of orientation. The patient believes his soul is lost, that he is to suffer eternal torment hereafter, and about these beliefs there is no doubt, but on the contrary a marked "*subjective certainty*." There may be some slight tendency to somatopsychic delusions, insight is defective, and slight anxiety may be present.

In *anxietas præsenilis* we have, on the contrary, in the main an allopsychosis. There is a very marked "*subjective uncertainty*" which gives an unreal tinge to the outer world, and out of which grows the fear of things unknown, culminating in the marked anxiety which is characteristic of this form of the psychosis. Remorse or dread of future are not elements in the depression; on the contrary, it is the great unknown and overwhelming present that seems about to destroy them. These cases occur later in life than the former, show more evidences of senile decay, such as arterio-sclerosis, and present such symptoms as verbigeneration, rhythmical movements, suggestibility; the prognosis is less favorable.

In *depressio apathetica* there is simply a let-down, a stopping on the part of one who has been leading an active life. Interest abates, the struggle is drawn away from and we have a picture of mild depression with clear consciousness and no disturbance of orientation. There is some "*subjective uncertainty*" delusions and sensory fabrications play little part. The symptoms are negative rather than positive; the prognosis is relatively good.

The danger from suicide is greater in this psychosis than in any other, and every case of melancholia should be considered a potential suicide. One of the principal reasons that a tendency to suicide is so dangerous a symptom here is that the carrying of suicidal tendencies into action is not interfered with by retardation in the way in which it is in manic-depressive psychosis. In manic-depressive psychosis the suicidal impulse is continuously prevented from expressing itself in action by the ever-present difficulty of the release of motor impulses, while here no such difficulty maintains, and the tendency constantly strives to find expression in appropriate action.

The delusional content of consciousness varies widely in this disease. *Hypochondriacal delusions* are quite common and sometimes we find *nihilistic delusions*, *feeling of unreality*, the patient claiming that nothing exists, there are no people, no world and the like. This is the so-called *délire de negation* of the French. Then, again, we not infrequently find that the delusions take on very bizarre, absurd, fantastic forms, indicative of an underlying defect. This condition may occur early in severe cases or come later as evidence of senile decay. The same may be said of *delusions of grandeur*, of great power, and the like, except that they usually appear late in the course of the malady but are equally evidence of deterioration. There may be a strange mixture of depressive and grandiose ideas, as with the patient of WEYGANDT,² who believed she was going to be roasted in a silver kettle. The deterioration and defect of judgment is well shown here.

WEYGANDT² notes the following list of delusions that are found in this psychosis: (1) Hypochondriacal delusions; (2) delusions of sinfulness; (3) delusions of persecution; (4) delusions of poverty; (5) ideas of unworthiness; (6) delusions of explanation; (7) ideas of insignificance; (8) nihilistic ideas; (9) delusions of possession; (10) ideas of grandeur.

Course, Prognosis and Termination.—As compared with other curable psychoses this can hardly be said to be of good prognosis. About forty per cent. get well. The remaining sixty per cent. terminate in various ways: some by suicide, some by death from intercurrent disease, which in their debilitated state

²Weygandt, Wilhelm: Atlas und Grundriss der Psychiatrie. München, J. F. Lehmann, 1902.

is poorly withstood; some by death from general marasmus or the development of tuberculosis; some lapse into chronicity; and, finally, a certain few improve sufficiently to leave the hospital and get on quite well at home, though still somewhat depressed. A certain number of this last class may get worse under home surroundings and have to be returned to the hospital.

This latter class seem to get on quite well in the hospital, but the minute they attempt to take up the cares of life, to assume the worries of the struggle for existence, they break down. Perhaps their already degenerated vessels cannot adjust themselves to the increased demands made upon them by a more active brain.

Unfavorable symptoms are the development of bizarre, absurd and grandiose delusions indicating underlying deterioration. Marked physical evidences of senility are also a poor omen. A contemporaneous improvement of both the physical and mental state is the most favorable sign.

The above statement of the course and prognosis has been thrown very much in doubt by the work of DREYFUS.⁸ He made a careful investigation, so far as possible, of the life histories of the Heidelberg material comprising 81 cases in all. Thirty-four (34) cases were personally investigated. Eight (8) were not personally investigated, and 39 were deceased. As a result of this study he concluded that with the exception of 2 cases undiagnosed, 2 cases in which a mistake in diagnosis had been made, and possibly 2 more doubtful cases, that all were cases of manic-depressive psychosis. This conclusion was reached by finding the fundamental symptoms of this disease present. Of these cases 66 per cent. were recovered, or recovering at time of death, 8 per cent. developed arteriosclerosis, 25 per cent. died unrecovered of intercurrent disease or suicide.

Even admitting all these facts it would seem that the involution period, the age factor, colors the picture materially and DREYFUS himself admits the involution cases as a sub-species of the manic-depressive group. There seems certainly to be a greater number of depressions at this time of life and if they are manic-depressive depressions the attacks are longer and more severe. They seem also more frequently to take on the mixed type.

⁸ Dreyfus, Georges L.: *Die Melancholie; ein Zustandsbild des manisch-depressiven Irreseins*. Jena, Gustav Fischer, 1907.

Many psychiatrists still believe, although KRAEPELIN himself accepts DREYFUS' conclusions, that there is still a place for involution melancholia distinct from the manic-depressive group.

Pathology.—There is very little special pathology of this disease. An increased neuroglia formation in the deeper layers of the cortex has been described and in this disease we find most often as a mode of termination that condition of central neuritis described by MEYER.⁴ The symptoms of this condition are the sudden development of contractions with evidences of degeneration in the motor tracts, emaciation, retraction of lips from teeth, low temperature, semi-coma and death.

Treatment.—The foremost consideration in a great number of these cases is the prevention of suicide. This will require constant surveillance both night and day and in cases where the suicidal tendency is at all developed it is rarely justifiable to attempt this treatment at home, as only in an institution is the problem of taking care of this class of patients appreciated at its true value.

Insomnia is a frequent symptom for which the usual hypnotics, paraldehyde, sulfonal, trional, veronal and chloralamid are useful. In cases with high tension an occasional exhibition of chloral may be of advantage. Artificial feeding often has to be resorted to, as refusal of food is common. This means should not be left as a last resort but begun promptly as soon as the patient shows the results of malnutrition, as this class of cases require supporting treatment much more than cases developing at an earlier age. If the apprehension and anxiety are very marked and associated with much motor agitation and restlessness, opium may be tried—preferably the *Tr. Opii deod.* This will usually relieve the mental distress, but because of the tendency to acquire the opium habit and the chronicity of these cases, this treatment is hardly justifiable except to tide over some exceptional access of anxious depression.

In such cases of extreme agitation, hydrotherapeutic measures are the best means for quieting the patient—the hot pack and more especially the continuous warm bath, the patient being placed in a tub of water at about 98° F. and left in several hours, often

⁴Meyer, Adolf: *On Parenchymatous Systemic Degenerations mainly in the Central Nervous System, Brain, Part XCIII, 1901.*

all day each day and in some cases continuously for days at a time.

Differential Diagnosis.—The principal disease which has to be differentiated is manic-depressive psychosis. Enough has already been said on this point, except to note that the occurrence of previous attacks should be looked into. They would, of course, make for a diagnosis of manic-depressive psychosis, although if the history of these cases is carefully searched there will be found evidences of affect fluctuations as might be expected from what has been said of its relation to the manic-depressive group.

Early senile psychoses are often hard to differentiate and in fact the two graduate into one another. Old cases of melancholia often get to present evidences of senile decay. Arteriosclerosis seems to bridge the space between the two sets of psychoses, the involutional and the senile, and so we find symptoms common to both.

CHAPTER XII.

THE SENILE AND PRESENILE PSYCHOSES.

'A certain degree of involution, regression, failure of both the mental and physical powers is normal to man if he lives beyond the period of his maximum vigor. 'Age, however, is not a matter of years. Some men are older at forty than others are at sixty, and the dictum that states that "a man is as old as his arteries" comes very near the truth.

Causes.—The causes of the senile and presenile psychoses lie in the tissue changes incident to involution. These changes begin much earlier in some persons than in others and in them the element of heredity probably enters as a potent factor. A tendency to early arterial degeneration certainly occurs in families. This tendency may, of course, be aggravated and the changes of senile degeneration hastened by a variety of causes, both mental and physical, among which alcoholism is perhaps the most prominent.

Symptomatology.—When senile involution begins earlier than the sixtieth year we have the condition spoken of as *senium præcox*. BLEULER¹ believes these cases are cases of late dementia præcox. The symptoms of this condition differ usually from those of simple senile involution or even from the more common types of senile dementia developing later, and, as it were, form a connecting link between the cases of involution melancholia and the senile psychoses. The condition has a rather long prodromal period, during which the patient complains of all sorts of sensations, such as vertigo, general malaise and various paresthesias not unlike the beginning symptoms of involution melancholia. 'At the same time he becomes morose, seclusive and irritable. From this condition delusions soon develop which are hypochondriacal and persecutory in character. These delusions, however, being founded upon a demented basis, partake of and show the element of defect in their absurdity. The brain is dried up,

¹ Bleuler: *Dementia Præcox oder Gruppe der Schizophrenien*. 1911.

certain viscera have been removed, bones are broken and like complaints are heard. The persecutory delusions may take the usual form of poisoning and the like, but are apt to take on a sexual type and wife or husband believes their partner to be unfaithful. These delusions remind one of the similar delusions found in chronic alcoholism, but they are much more absurd and built upon the most inconsequential happenings, often originating entirely in the patient's mind. One not infrequently sees, for instance, a wife complaining of the infidelity and sexual dissipations of a husband who is so old and feeble that he can hardly get about. These patients may be very irritable at times and become very angry as a result of what they believe to be going on, but they usually soon quiet down and go right on living quietly and peacefully under the same conditions, making no effort to correct them until the next outbreak occurs. Their mental defect is shown in these evidences of lack of judgment as well as in the absurdity of their delusions.

Consciousness is unclouded and the patients are well oriented. Emotionally there is often some depression, while in the attacks of rage the emotion of anger occupies the foreground. Hallucinations are not prominent but may occur.

The more usual symptoms of *senile involution* occurring after sixty are in the main a loss of memory for recent events, due to lack of impressibility to the extent even that events of only an hour before are completely forgotten, lack of ability to recognize faces, marked egotism, so that others' wants and comforts are not considered, which may be associated with some irritability on interference. There is developed more and more as the years go on a true misoneism, so that the patient will positively not tolerate any change in the usual order of things, everything must be done the same from day to day, the same seat is preëmpted, a particular kind of food demanded, and the like with other comforts. With this misoneism and the lack of memory for recent events goes a marked tendency to reminiscence. The events of youth and the years long past, unlike those of recent occurrence, are vividly recalled and the patient thus really lives in a world of former days, constantly recalling and reiterating things that occurred long ago. This condition becomes progressively worse, the patient leading a vegetative existence almost wholly, no mental

initiative, failure of judgment and a progressive loss of comprehension of the environment, so that there is no adequate grasp of the present at all.

With this mental failure goes a corresponding change on the physical side. The signs of age are evident in the wasted muscles, the wrinkled, inelastic skin, gray hair, the raucous voice, arcus senilis, senile cutaneous affections, and signs of arteriosclerosis in the superficial arteries. In this connection it should be remembered that the condition of the palpable arteries may not indicate at all the condition of the cerebral vessels. The superficial vessels may show marked arteriosclerotic changes, while the cerebral vessels are in relatively good condition, or, on the contrary, the cerebral vessels may be seriously affected in a person whose radials are comparatively soft and whose temporals are not noticeably tortuous.

This condition of senile decay may be said to be normal, although many persons live to advanced years without showing it—it is the condition of the *dotard*. It is, nevertheless, properly speaking, a true dementia.

If upon this background of dementia active psychotic symptoms are developed they are usually shown in delusions, with perhaps hallucinations. The delusions are of a persecutory character and the condition may be spoken of as paranoid. They are not, however, as fixed as in paranoia and because of the dementia there can be little effort at systematization. The emotional attitude varies with the content of the delusion but is often marked by its silly, childish characteristics. Thus one old lady says she has a great deal of money but does not know how much—it is in the Court of Claims and her daughter is coming to take her home and then they will get the money. This is all told in the most matter of fact way, repeated as though it were a formula and not a vital, living fact of her life. This attitude and emotional poverty show fully as well as the absurdity of the delusions the demented foundation of the psychosis.

ALZHEIMER² has described a *presenile dementia*, developing

² Alzheimer: Über eine eigenartige Erkrankung der Hirnrinde (37. Versammlung südwest deutscher Irrenärzte), Ref. Centr. für Nervenheilk. und Psych., Vol. 30, 1907; Über eigenartige Krankheitsfälle des späteren Alters, Zeit. f. gesamte Neurol. u. Psych., Vol. 4, 1911. Perusini: Über

about the fourth decade, which has the pathology of senile dementia and clinically manifests focal symptoms particularly of the paraphasic and apraxic variety.

The senile dement is especially apt to be restless and suffer from insomnia, sleeping, on the contrary, much of the time during the day, even as they sit up in their chairs. Often the restlessness at night takes the form of wandering about the house and during these periods they are apt to be disoriented considerably and to show much *confusion*. This tendency to confusion is, too, often marked when the patient awakes from a sleep, for some time he fails to apprehend his environment, does not know where he is, or what time of day it is. It is as though the cerebral circulation, because perhaps of the diseased vessels, took a very long time to readjust itself to the waking state.

This form of senile dementia is spoken of as *simple senile deterioration*.

Aside from these attacks the patients may be quite well oriented and there may be no clouding of consciousness. On the other hand they may be disoriented, both as to time and place. This is often largely due to their memory defect, lack of attention and impressibility. Such patients will supply deficiencies in their memory by all sorts of fabrications, reminding one of the similar symptoms in paresis and certain alcoholic cases (Korsakow's psychosis). One old man, although just out of bed and so feeble he could hardly stand up, told me he had been working, making some sort of wire affair, for a man on Harrison Street for the past seven months. Another patient told me she could not sleep nights, for somebody spends the entire night shooting her and fills her with bullets, yet while telling this she shows no disturbance whatever, wears a slight smile and talks of these events as if they were the most commonplace affairs of everyday life. These are the cases of *presbyophrenia* which quite closely resemble Korsakow's psychosis.

To those cases in which the symptoms of confusion, which we have seen already occurring in the form of senile deterioration

klinisch und histologisch eigenartige psychische Erkrankung des späteren Lebensalters, Histol. u. histopath. Arbeiten über die Grosshirnrinde von Nissl und Alzheimer, Vol. 3, 1910. Lafora: Beitrag zur Kenntnis der Alzheimer'schen Krankheit oder presenilen Demenz mit Herdsymptomen, Zeitsch. f. d. gesamte Neurol. und Psychiat., Vol. 6, 1911.

just described, especially connected with changes in cerebral circulation, present much more prominently, in which there is marked disorientation and clouding of consciousness, the designation of *senile confusion* is given.

In these cases the confusion is not merely a transitory symptom, occurring upon awakening, but is constant. These patients do not know where they are, will ask if dinner is ready when perhaps five minutes before they have eaten a hearty meal, forget the location of their room, undress and go to bed in the middle of the day, no longer recognize those about them, not even their children, and are difficult to manage, headstrong, peevish, resistive and inaccessible to reason. Various delusions may be expressed, often hypochondriacal in character, but quite characteristically absurd in content.

This variety of senile dementia often follows that of simple deterioration, being in fact but a more pronounced grade of degeneration. In severe cases it may usher in the mental changes.

Certain cases, over sixty years of age, develop a true *paranoid* condition, with delusions of persecution and hallucinations of hearing. These cases may not present marked evidences of senile decay and consciousness may be unclouded, orientation complete and the train of thought well maintained. This condition must be differentiated from an alcoholic delusional psychosis, paranoia and dementia precox which KRAEPELIN says may rarely develop at advanced age.

Among the physical symptoms that may develop in the course of senile deterioration are apoplexy, apoplectiform attacks and senile epilepsy. True apoplexy may, of course, occur and complicate the picture while apoplectiform attacks resulting in transient paralyses, and reminding one of similar attacks of paresis are not uncommon. Epileptic seizures may take the form of either *petit mal* or *grand mal*, and well developed attacks which recur with considerable frequency are not uncommonly developed in the senile. Chorea, of the type of Huntington, or of the post-apoplectic variety, is not infrequently observed in large institutions for the insane.

In an analysis of two hundred cases of senile dementia PICKETT^{*}

^{*} Pickett, William: Senile Dementia: A Clinical Study of Two Hundred Cases with Particular Regard to Types of the Disease, Jour. Nerv. & Ment. Dis., Feb., 1904.

gives the following list of symptoms which he found and which I reproduce in the order of their relative frequency: Wandering in the street; hallucinations prominent; violence; vertigo; persecutory ideas, other than poisoning, conspiracy, etc.; exaltation; night prowling; apoplectiform strokes; headache; suicidal attempts; suspicion of conspiracy; suspicion of poisoning; violence at night; epileptiform attacks; delusions of marital infidelity; setting fire to things; echolalia; chorea.

In addition to the types of cases already discussed a *senile delirium* has been described. This condition is characterized by varied and fleeting delusions, multiform hallucinations, clouding of consciousness, great incoherence and marked motor restlessness, often an occupation delirium. This may usher in a case that has been up to that time following a normal course, or it may occur as an episode in any case of senile psychosis. As in the condition of acute delirious mania, so here I think it should usually be attributed to some bodily cause—pneumonia, nephritis, cystitis. It may clear up but is frequently fatal, and in these cases it is not improbable that the delirium is a manifestation of a *terminal infection*.

Course and Prognosis.—The course of senile dementia is progressive until death. The patients finally become completely demented, so that they are wholly disoriented, confused, know no one around them; in fact may not even know their own name.

It is quite possible to have attacks of other psychoses at this time of life, particularly phases of manic-depressive psychosis. The prognosis of the psychosis is not changed materially by the senium except of course that exhaustion is more apt to occur and terminate the case. The underlying dementia continues the same or perhaps is somewhat worse after the attack passes off. The senile deterioration, being due to actual tissue changes, remains stationary or gets progressively worse, while the psychosis engrafted upon it may or may not be recovered from.

Diagnosis.—Paranoia must be differentiated by the history. Many cases of paranoia develop senile deterioration but the history would show an early development of symptoms.

Dementia precox, if in fact it does occur so late in life, would have to be diagnosed by the disturbances of motility, the catatonic symptoms.

The cases with well-marked arteriosclerosis and multiple areas

of softening present a picture closely resembling paresis. A careful study of the reflexes, both pupillary and tendinous, a consideration of the speech defect which is more truly aphasic, and the age of the patient, with evidences of arteriosclerosis, but without evidences of syphilis, will usually serve to make the distinction.

There are certain borderland cases presenting emotional depression that are difficult to distinguish from involution melancholia. The presence of defect is the criterion to judge by, though these two conditions do undoubtedly graduate into one another and as already stated melancholiacs after a prolonged duration may develop senile deterioration.

Considerable difficulty may arise in distinguishing presbyophrenia from Korsakow's psychosis. Nouët⁴ has recently made a careful differential study of the two conditions. He sets forth the following diagnostic considerations:

Korsakow's psychosis affects persons particularly of adult age; presbyophrenia, on the contrary, belongs to the period of old age, the age of predilection oscillating about seventy years. Presbyophrenia, it is known, is quite uniquely an affection of women, while Korsakow's psychosis is far from being rare among men. The humor of the presbyophrenic is always gay, euphoric and satisfied, quite different from the psychopolyneuritic, who is ordinarily depressed or apathetic, and whose face preserves an invariable immobility. The traits of the presbyophrenic are extreme mobility, they laugh, make grimaces in which the mimic muscles participate. The facies of the psychopolyneuritics, however, are always dull and without expression. Loquacity is a symptom scarcely ever lacking in presbyophrenia; the patients talk without stopping about everything, with equal volubility. This symptom is lacking in Korsakow's psychosis. The presbyophrenic is polite, amiable and cordial, characteristics which one seeks in vain among the psychopolyneuritics. Disorders of consciousness are much more marked in the presbyophrenic. These patients have no understanding of their state of illness and content themselves with laughing when one asks a question relative to their physical or mental health. On the contrary the psychopolyneuritic gives a fairly good account of himself and of his position, and is the first

⁴Nouët: *Presbyophrénie de Wernicke et Les Psychopolynéurites*, L'Encephale, Feb. 10, 1911.

to lament his situation. The judgment of these patients, even in the chronic forms, is less noticeably affected, and their degree of intellectual enfeeblement less marked. The amnesia, finally, is more profound in the presbyophrenic, and besides in this affection the patient does not possess at all a knowledge of this amnesia—the inverse of what one observes in the chronic forms of Korsakow's disease, where the subjects speak spontaneously to their interlocutors of the profound troubles of their memory. Presbyophrenia is rare in its typical forms, but common in the *formes frustes*. Where the symptoms only approach, or where certain of them are lacking, the presbyophrenia has, perhaps, the distinctive characteristics of arteriosclerosis, which are seen much more among these patients than among simple senile dementes. Patients die nearly always of cerebral hemorrhage, and their nervous centers present at autopsy pronounced atheromatous lesions.

Pathology.—Grossly the brain shows signs of atrophy and decreased weight. The dura may be adherent to the calvarium and may present internal hemorrhagic pachymeningitis. The pachionian granulations are increased in size. The leptomeninges are thickened, especially the pia, which is turbid from lymph exudate. The sub-arachnoid space is filled with fluid, which takes the place of the atrophied convolutions—hydrocephalus ex vacuo. The convolutions are shrunken and the fissures between them widened. The blood vessels may or may not show the changes of arteriosclerosis, there may be thrombosis, or the lumen of some of the smaller ones may be very greatly reduced, thus impairing the nutrition of the area, to which they are distributed. Miliary aneurisms may occur and hemorrhage from rupture of them is not infrequent. Multiple areas of softening may be present from these various sources, more especially in the cortex.

Microscopically the cells show degenerative changes, especially an increase in yellow pigment amounting to a pigmentary degeneration. There is also a disappearance of fibers, especially the tangential. These having association functions their disappearance accounts in a measure for the dementia. The neuroglia is increased and sclerosis of the cortex is commonly found.

There is a pure senile atrophy which is not associated with arteriosclerosis. In this condition there is a diffuse atrophy of the nervous parenchyma with increase of neuroglia but the vessels

show nothing. In this condition REDLICH⁵ has described certain small patches—miliary necroses—which are not softening and not associated in any way with the vessels. FISCHER⁶ has shown that the axis cylinders in these patches show peculiar gland-like enlargements which he thinks specific of the pathology of presbyophrenia.

There have been described by various authors basket-like neuroglia structures surrounding the ganglion cells. These neuroglia and satellite basket formations and ganglion cell incrustations have been well described by ACHÚCARRO.⁷

Aside from these changes other organs are usually found affected, particularly the heart and kidneys, the former showing degenerative changes in the myocardium, the latter evidences of chronic nephritis.

Treatment.—The mild cases, especially those that maintain their orientation fairly well, can be cared for at home. Those with marked confusion, especially with a tendency to wandering, need an attendant to be with them. There is danger of their becoming lost and coming to grief, or if they wander about the house at night they are apt to meet with some accident, more often to fall down stairs and sustain fractures. Patients who are very resistive, present surgical troubles, are filthy in habits, or show a tendency to commit sexual crimes, should be cared for in an institution.

As regards the more special treatment, little is to be said. Hygienic surroundings, a simple diet, looking after the emunctories, and if insomnia is present the occasional exhibition of a hypnotic constitutes about all there is to be done. In this class of cases, more perhaps than in any other, is the use of alcohol as a hypnotic indicated. A little whiskey and hot water, or a glass of beer or ale acts very nicely. It should be given, however,

⁵ Redlich: Ueber Miliaren Sklerosen der Hirnrinde bei seniler Atrophie, *Jahrb. f. Psych. u. Neurol.*, Bd. XVII, 1898.

⁶ Fischer: Miliare Nekrosen mit drüsen Wucherungen der Neurofibrillen, eine regelmässige Veränderung der Hirnrinde bei seniler Demenz, *Monatschr. f. Psych. u. Neurol.*, Bd. XXII. *Der Histopathologie der Presbyophrenie*, Jahresvers. d. Deutscher Ver. f. Psych. zu Berlin, 24-25, April, 1908; *Ref. Allg. Ztsch. f. Psych.*, Bd. LXV, p. 500.

⁷ Achúcarro, Nicolás: Some Pathological Findings in the Neuroglia and in the Ganglion Cells of the Cortex in Senile Conditions. *Bulletin No. 2, Govt. Hosp. for the Insane*, 1910.

strictly under medical authority and supervision, as these patients are apt to be susceptible to its influences. In the earlier stages of the disease potassium iodide is the drug par excellence for its general alterative properties and its effect on the arterial tension.

THE EPOCHAL PSYCHOSES IN GENERAL.

Our description of the epochal psychoses, *i. e.*, the psychoses of adolescence, involution and the senium has shown that in general the psychoses that are characteristic of these periods of life tend to dementia. Recalling our previous remarks along these lines, that persons with deficient developmental force tend to break down at that period of life to which their developmental forces have been able to carry them, it seems that it would be fair to assume, and BOLTON^{*} in a recent excellent study has in fact attempted to prove, that *dementia* is the expression of "*neuronic degeneration*," he believes in every instance "*following insufficient durability*." As a further result of his studies he describes the condition of *amentia* as occupying a mid-position between these dementias on the one hand and normal individuals on the other hand, and states the underlying condition to be "*deficient neuronic development*."

In the past it has been common to describe certain other psychoses occurring at physiological epochs and to give them the name of the epoch during which they occurred. Thus we find the group of *puerperal psychoses*, especially *puerperal mania*, and the *lactational psychoses*.

The causes operating at these periods to produce mental disturbances are in the man two—infection and exhaustion. A large number of these psychoses therefore naturally group themselves under the infection-exhaustion types to be described in the next chapter. It will be understood, however, that the strains incident to pregnancy, parturition, the puerperium and lactation may produce outbreaks of other psychoses, particularly *dementia precox*.

We see, therefore, that there is no such thing, for example, as a puerperal psychosis, strictly speaking. Mental disorder frequently occurs during the puerperium but must be classified in accordance with the symptoms it presents rather than the time at which it occurs.

^{*} Bolton, Joseph Shaw: *Amentia and Dementia: A Clinico-Pathological Study*, Jour. Ment. Sci., Vols. 51, 52, 53, 54, 1905-8.

CHAPTER XIII.

THE INFECTION-EXHAUSTION PSYCHOSES.

The infection and exhaustion psychoses are classified together in this chapter partly because of the closely similar picture their respective psychoses present and partly because of the fact that the two conditions are so closely and so frequently found associated clinically. It would be difficult, for example, to discriminate the two factors in a post-partum case where there had been infection following a prolonged and difficult labor with considerable hemorrhage. Then, again, it is probable that the immediate causes are not altogether dissimilar in the two conditions, as it seems to be fairly well demonstrated that the symptoms of fatigue are due to a toxemia, the result of the development of poisonous substances in the body from the chemical breaking down of tissue.

In this chapter it will be necessary to frequently use the terms *confusion* and *delirium*. By confusion is meant a state of disorientation in all the three spheres—temporal, spatial and personal. The confusion and consequent disorientation may be of any degree. By delirium is meant a confused and clouded state of consciousness associated with and symptomatic of fever. The two terms are not clearly differentiated, as we speak of pre-febrile delirium.

In previous chapters I have emphasized the fact that the condition of permanent mental impairment—dementia—modified the symptoms of a psychosis, so, for example, if there was a delusional state, the delusions tended more to take on strange, bizarre, fantastic characters because of the lack of judgment and of the critical faculty. What has been said in this respect of the permanent mental impairment of dementia may be as well said of the more acute, transitory states of mental impairment—confusion and delirium. In these conditions with disorientation and clouding of consciousness the judgment is also greatly impaired and the critical faculty practically in abeyance. As a result, we

see here also the most fantastic delusions. The delusions, however, are less apt to have any fixity because of the multiplicity and changeableness of the symptoms in the psychosensory field on which they are largely dependent.

PRE-FEBRILE, FEBRILE AND POST-FEBRILE PSYCHOSES.

Speaking generally fever and infection may be said to be measures of the mental stability of an individual. While some persons will remain mentally clear with a fever of 106° , others will become delirious with only a slight rise in temperature. Some persons will go through an attack of typhoid, for instance, with little or no delirium, while in other cases delirium is an early symptom and continues throughout the course of the disease. The lack of resistance is sometimes very marked indeed. I recall a young man who developed marked symptoms as a result of a very slight infection of a finger. There was only a drop or two of pus, no ascending lymphangitis and only about a degree of temperature, yet his resistance was so poor that he was temporarily deranged. In general, these cases are of poorer prognosis than the more resistive. It is generally considered, for instance, that the early development of delirium in typhoid is a bad sign, indicating that the nervous system is seriously involved and that the case is going to be a severe one.

Infection Delirium.—Under this head are included the mental disturbances which develop early in the infectious diseases, either before the fever appears at all or else when it is still so low that the mental disturbance cannot be attributed to it and therefore must be due solely to the infectious agent—(*initial delirium*). This condition is found associated with typhoid, typhus, smallpox, malaria and hydrophobia. It usually takes the form of an acute confusion, but there may be delusions of a consistently disagreeable character, generally persecutory. The condition in hydrophobia is rather one of change of character, irritability, and great sensitiveness to sensory impressions, restlessness, usually depression, verging into a delirium with confusion, hallucinations, apprehensiveness and excitement as the disease progresses, with which are usually mixed many symptoms of psychogenic origin. In those cases especially in which the delirium is a very early symptom, occurring before the fever, the diagnosis is very difficult and

may be quite impossible until the infectious disease is frankly established.

Febrile Delirium.—A condition tending to confusion of variable intensity, usually following in its degrees the febrile movement. The milder cases usually exhibit symptoms only as night approaches.

It may be described in four stages according to the degree of severity. In the first stage: headache, irritability, sensitiveness to noises and light, restlessness, and disturbing dreams. In the second stage hallucinations appear, especially in the visual field. The hallucinations are of a dream-like character and the patient may still be made to react clearly. In the third stage the motor disturbance is greater and takes on the character of jactitation. The fourth stage: profound dulling of consciousness, uncertain and ataxic movements, coma and death.

The onset and severity of the delirium is, to an extent, a measure of the mental stability of the patient. Delirium develops much more readily in the unstable and those predisposed to the development of psychotic symptoms.

BONHOEFFER¹ describes several forms of fever delirium. An *epileptiform excitement* and an *infectious dream state* (ZIEHEN), an *hallucinosi*s, and *hallucinatory, catatonic, and incoherent confusional states*.

Post-Febrile Psychoses.—These conditions either develop as a result of the delirium of the febrile state, continuing after the fever has subsided, or may take their origin from the first during the post-febrile period. In the latter case the disease is essentially an exhaustion psychosis.

In this period also we may have epileptiform excitements and dream states. BONHOEFFER² calls attention to the fact that there may also be a retrospective falsification of memory that gives somewhat the appearance of Korsakow's psychosis.

The mental state during defervescence is usually one of confusion, with multiform hallucinations—the patient sees strange faces peering at him from the pictures on the wall, he can see through the walls into the next house, the pictures turn about and

¹ Bonhoeffer: Die symptomatischen Psychosen im Gefolge von akuten Infektionen und inneren Erkrankungen. Pub. by Deuticke, Leipzig und Wien, 1910.

² Bonhoeffer: Die symptomatischen Psychosen.

change places—there is a marked disorientation and delusions usually of a persecutory nature—poison is administered in the medicine. This condition may become more severe, the delirium more active, the utterances very incoherent and finally a stuporous state may develop with a tendency to catalepsy. Grandiose ideas may also occur at this time.

The exhaustion in most of these cases may be profound and terminate fatally; a certain few go on to the development of a chronic delusional state. Improvement in the general physical state is accompanied by mental improvement.

EXHAUSTION PSYCHOSES.

These conditions develop after severe exhaustion from any cause—loss of blood, parturition, prolonged anxiety and worry, severe mental shock, prolonged convalescence from the acute fevers, such as typhoid, pneumonia, the exanthemata, etc.

Collapse Delirium.—This is the *delirium grave* or the *acute delirious mania* of the older authors.

The disease may present a prodromal period of restless irritability and insomnia, after which a condition of confusion develops which may be very mild, constituting only a slight degree of perplexity or more usually manifesting hallucinations, clouding of consciousness, disorientation and dreamy delusions. Psychomotor excitement is common, the patient being very active and inclined to acts of violence and destructiveness.

The degree of excitement in these cases may become very great indeed, in fact exceeding anything we see in the other psychoses. When this extreme form was the only one recognized the disease was supposed to have a uniformly fatal termination.

In these severe cases the incoherence becomes absolute, disorientation complete, clouding of consciousness profound. Temperature usually develops and may be very high— 106° . Gastro-intestinal symptoms are common, there is almost complete anorexia, coated tongue, a frothy, offensive diarrhea, a high grade of indicanuria and great emaciation, a severe grade of exhaustion, with typhoid symptoms followed in a large proportion of cases by coma and death.

Stupor with catalepsy may constitute an episode or be sufficiently in evidence to give its character to the attack.

Though the severe cases almost all die, the milder cases usually

make good recoveries. Of all cases, perhaps fifty per cent. are fatal.

Many of these cases show at autopsy some acute disease, such as pneumonia, or nephritis, that accounts for the symptoms. It is, of course, readily seen how difficult the diagnosis of conditions dependent on careful physical examination must be in these wildly excited cases.

These cases have a short duration, ending in recovery or death in a few days or at most a few weeks.

Acute Hallucinatory Confusion.—This psychosis is less acute than the former but of the same general nature, and may be described as an acute primary psychosis, characterized by clouding of consciousness, confusion, multiform and usually fleeting hallucinations in the various sensory areas, changing delusions, the emotional attitude being variable and in general corresponding to the content of the delusions. It may be of considerable duration, often many months. The course is somewhat irregular and not infrequently interrupted by *lucid intervals* which may be of only a few minutes' duration or may last a day or two. This is important to know, so that a lucid interval will not be definitely stated to be the beginning of permanent recovery.

As in the preceding form, stuporous states may intervene and for a considerable time dominate the picture.

Course.—BONHOEFFER³ describes as occurring late in the course of the infection psychoses certain *hyperesthetic-emotional states of weakness, amnesic states*, resembling the Korsakow syndrome, the *collapse delirium* just described, and a *meningitic type* leading to coma and death.

Diagnosis.—The diagnosis is to be made in general from the association of acute confusion, multiform hallucinations, changeable delusions, disorientation, clouding of consciousness and variable emotional reactions, with specific infection, or coupled with the physical signs of exhaustion, great emaciation and fever. It must not be forgotten that certain other psychoses, particularly dementia precox and manic-depressive psychosis, may originate under the same conditions which lead to the development of the infection-exhaustion psychoses, and further, that aside from the conditions of confusion described (*primary confusion*), states of

³ Bonhoeffer: Die symptomatischen Psychosen.

infection and exhaustion may complicate any psychosis, producing a confusion engrafted on the original mental disorder (*secondary confusion*). Recurring attacks of confusion should cause us to consider the possibility of some other psychosis.

Special care should be exercised in excluding delirium tremens and epileptic dream states. The characteristic hallucinations of delirium tremens are not present, while the anamnesis or scars about the head and face will indicate the presence of epilepsy.

Catatonic excitement is not accompanied by the signs of such great exhaustion or by such marked emaciation.

It will be seen, in general, that during the course of an infection-exhaustion psychosis symptoms may arise that closely simulate other conditions. It may be necessary to defer making a final diagnosis for a considerable time. Because of the frequency with which such psychoses as dementia precox arise as a result of acute illness one should be very guarded in the diagnosis and prognosis until the situation fully warrants definite statements.

Treatment.—The treatment must, of course, where a specific disease, such as typhoid is present, be in the main the treatment of the underlying disease. Otherwise the treatment is supporting and sedative.

For the excitement the continuous bath or wet pack with the occasional exhibition of a hypnotic.

Forced feeding should be begun as soon as the patient begins to refuse food, as these cases have no strength to spare for the experiment of waiting to see whether they will eat.

The gastric disturbance in many of these cases is so marked that if the usual feeding is given it will be promptly vomited. Such cases should be fed small amounts often.

In the extreme exhaustion of the later stages hypodermoclysis may be used with beneficial results.

In a recently developed theory STODDART⁴ accounts for the symptomatology by the dissociation of the neurones. He calls attention to certain symptoms of defect. On the psychological side defects in perception and on the neurological side anæsthesia. These defects are brought about he thinks by dissociation due to heightened resistances at the neuronc synapses. He recommends strychnia on the principle of its action in lessening synaptic resistance.

⁴ Stoddart, W. H. B.: A Theory of the Toxic and Exhaustion Psychoses, Jour. Ment. Sci., July, 1910.

CHAPTER XIV.

THE TOXIC PSYCHOSES.

Toxins may be classified on the basis of whether they originate within the body—*endogenous*—or are introduced from without—*exogenous*. The former are often spoken of as *auto-toxins* and the conditions resulting from them as *auto-toxic* states or as *auto-intoxications*.

The psychoses resulting from endogenous toxins, dependent as they are upon various bodily diseases, will be discussed in the chapter on the symptomatic psychoses.

ALCOHOL.

The rôle that alcohol plays in the production of psychoses, while admittedly an important one, is not fully understood. Recent¹ statistics, conservatively interpreted, would indicate that about 12 per cent. of the insane confined in public institutions in the United States are there because of its influence, direct or indirect. When, however, the multitudinous ways in which alcohol may enter as a factor in the production of mental disease and the far-reaching effects it produces are considered it is readily seen that no statistical study can begin to fathom the problem.

While the psychoses considered under this heading seem to be closely associated with alcohol and in the main present fairly constant and characteristic pictures, it must not be forgotten that alcohol may enter as an etiological factor in the production of symptoms ordinarily considered to be quite distinct from the alcoholic psychoses properly so-called, such as the manic-depressive and dementia precox psychoses, while it is considered by some to be a very important causative agent in paresis.

When attacks of these psychoses are brought about by alcoholic indulgence it is probable that they are considerably modified as a result and present a somewhat atypical picture.

¹ The Physiological Aspect of the Liquor Problem. Edited by John S. Billings, Boston and New York, Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1903.

That the psychoses produced as the result of abuse of alcohol are dependent, in the last analysis, upon something besides the alcohol, namely, upon some peculiarity of make-up of the individual is well shown by the fact that while a history of abuse of alcohol is frequent in cases admitted to hospitals for the insane, it is very rare to find at autopsy what in general hospitals is considered so typical of alcoholism, namely, cirrhosis of the liver.² This means that the *locus minoris resistentiæ* in these cases was the brain and that mental disease supervened before the liver was involved.

Psychology.—Alcohol has long been supposed to be a stimulant. Such supposition, however, was based largely upon false interpretations of subjective experiences. For example, one feels rested from fatigue by a small dose of alcohol. The rested feeling was supposed to be due to stimulation. On the contrary, it is due to inhibition of the sensory channels conveying the sense impressions that make up the feeling of fatigue.

It has long been supposed that small doses of alcohol produced an increase in the power of muscular work and an increase in efficiency in the performing of simple mental tasks. This stimulation was supposed to continue for twenty minutes to one half hour. The recent work of RIVERS and WEBBER³ indicate that such small doses produce no effect whatever. If they are correct alcohol then remains a depressant and paralyzant from the first without any effects of stimulation whatever.

The types of persons who drink and the reasons for drinking are many and varied. While there are certain social factors involved, the more important of the conditions lie in the make-up of the individual.

First we have the cases in which the drinking is the expression of a psychosis and in no wise its cause. Here we find especially the early cases of paresis and the mild cases of manic-depressive psychosis. The alcoholic symptoms may completely cloud the picture for some time.

² Mott, F. W.: The Psychoses of Chronic Alcoholism. *Compte Rendu des Travaux du 1^{er} Congrès International de Psychiatrie, de Neurologie, de Psychologie et de l'Assistance des aliénés.* Amsterdam, 2 à 7 Sept., 1907.

³ Rivers and Webber: The Influence of Small Doses of Alcohol on the Capacity for Manual Work, *British Jour. of Psychol.*, Jan., 1908.

Secondly there is a considerable group, to which belong those who drink "to drown their troubles," who attempt to escape from reality by introducing a veil between it and them, by making themselves less accessible to the world of reality by dulling their sensorium. These cases are comprised of hysterics and members of that large group of psychasthenics. It should be remembered that the expressions of their difficulties are often periodic and that it is generally upon such a groundwork that dipsomania is found.

Thirdly there is a considerable group who are especially susceptible to alcohol and although not consuming large quantities manifest an exaggerated reaction to small doses. Here we have especially the post-traumatic constitution—cases following head injury and sunstroke—and arteriosclerotic and senile cases. These are the unresistive types, and alcohol, like fever, proves to be a measure of their resistance and stability.

Fourthly we have alcoholism entering into, and complicating, and modifying the picture of other psychoses, particularly dementia precox. Not infrequently precox cases are supposed to be alcoholic in their early stages because of the prominence of the alcoholic features.

Finally there appear to be certain purely alcoholic psychoses—that is psychosis dependent upon alcohol per se. Of these psychoses those clearly dependent upon the effects of alcohol are the acute states of intoxication, including pathological drunkenness, while delirium tremens, alcoholic hallucinosis, Korsakow's psychosis, and the chronic alcoholic psychoses generally are dependent upon long indulgence in the poison, and whether they are directly the further expression of chronic alcoholism or are in some way dependent upon the secondary elaboration of toxins, the result of disordered nutrition, they certainly need something besides the simple ingestion of a toxic dose of alcohol. KRAEPELIN proposes to call them, after the manner of the psychoses due to syphilis, the meta-alcoholic psychoses.

Drunkenness.—Alcohol, like fever, may be said to be a measure of cerebral resistance, the unstable, predisposed individual becoming intoxicated much more readily than the normal.

The phenomena of drunkenness are, from the first, phenomena of paralysis. In the early stages it is only the higher psychic functions, which are largely inhibitive, that are affected, so we

get apparent stimulation, in the excitement produced, with flight of ideas, pressure of activity, loss of the sense of propriety, degradation of the moral tone and loss of power of voluntary attention. The lower centers then become paralyzed and then appears muscular incoördination, manifesting itself first in the hands and facial muscles and the muscles controlling articulation, the speech becomes thick and the gait unsteady. Sensory disturbances appear, such as diplopia, tinnitus aurium, and the senses of touch and pain are blunted. If the paralyzing action of the alcohol continues coma results, which may be fatal. The mood during intoxication may be a pleasant one, and frequently is one of boisterous exaltation, constituting the *exalted type*; on the other hand, a sad, depressed, lachrymose mood may prevail, constituting the *depressed type*.

Pathological Drunkenness.—Among certain predisposed individuals alcohol produces unusual and much more severe symptoms. In this condition we may find hallucinations and delusions dominating the field of consciousness, the delusions being usually of a persecutory character. In other cases the excitement may issue in a wild maniacal frenzy or the depression may be so profound as to result in attempts at suicide. In some persons the paralyzing effects of alcohol are unusually pronounced and coma appears early on the scene. Those who have latent hysterical tendencies may have hysterical attacks during intoxication, while alcohol frequently produces convulsions in epileptics. Aside from this latter action, however, the convulsive properties of alcohol alone are capable of producing convulsions in persons who have long indulged and are profoundly degenerated, though some claim such persons must be of epileptogenic make-up.

In these cases of pathological drunkenness in which the reaction to alcohol is so pronounced it is quite common to find *amnesia* for periods of profound intoxication.

Delirium Tremens.—This disorder usually occurs as the result of a prolonged drunken debauch in a chronic alcoholic, during which the patient has had insufficient food and rest. According to some authors, it may result directly from the withdrawal of alcohol. It may, however, appear in the moderate but continuous drinker as the result of a single excess following a traumatism or as the initial symptom of an acute illness.

The whole question of the occurrence of an *abstinence delirium* is a mooted one. The recent researches of HOLITSCHER* on this point are illuminating. The conclusions appear to indicate that abstinence delirium, if it occurs at all, is extremely rare. Care must be taken in reaching a conclusion to eliminate, as possible causes, wounds, infectious diseases, psychic shocks, operations, etc. We must remember also that in many cases the delirium has had a prodromal period of a number of days, and that one of the symptoms of this period is a disgust for liquor. The delirium, therefore, occurs in spite of, not because of abstinence. The disease may appear suddenly, but there is generally a prodromal period during which the patient is nervous, with coated tongue, suffering from anorexia, restlessness, tremulousness, disturbed sleep and insomnia. This condition rapidly advances with the onset of the attack, the characteristic symptoms of which are rapidly developed. They are tremor, delirium and albuminuria.

The *tremor* involves more particularly the small muscles of the hand, face and tongue, but may also affect the entire musculature. It is increased by muscular tension, such as forcibly spreading the fingers apart.

The *delirium* is an acute hallucinatory confusion.

Disorientation is often quite complete, the patient, although perhaps fastened in bed, believes himself in his office or home, surrounded by familiar faces. The predominating hallucinations are visual and characteristically take on the form of animals. The patient sees all sorts of horrible creatures, snakes, rats, mice, alligators, etc., which are uniformly in motion. Surrounded by these loathsome creatures and by horribly grimacing faces, terrified by screams and shrieks (auditory hallucinations), he presents a picture of abject terror. In addition to these symptoms, the patient may complain that insects or worms are crawling under his skin (paresthesia) and mistake spots upon the bed or walls for bugs, mice, etc. (illusions). At the height of his excitement the patient is in constant motion, picking insects from his night-dress, repelling the approach of terrible animals; in the extreme frenzy of his fright, he may make murderous assaults on those about him, believing them to be his enemies, or perhaps attempt

*Holitscher: Zur Frage von den Abstinenzdelirien, Psychiat. Neurol. Wochen., Nos. 14, 15, 16, 17, 1908.

his own life to escape from his horrible surroundings. During all this time the patient is constantly talking, shrieking in fear at times, at others carrying on an incoherent discourse with imaginary persons, fragments of which often relate to his former occupation and friends.

The character of the delirious experiences varies greatly. One patient left the house in his night clothes and went a distance of several miles attired thus to the house of his sister. On reaching there he told them that his father and some Chinamen were going to kill him. Another patient came to the hospital with the history that he suddenly became disturbed one night and told his wife that he saw a troop of darkies dancing in his bedroom; they appeared to be rehearsing a play; he saw a strange man of giant stature jump off his bookcase into his wife's bed. He tried to chase these strangers from the room, and as they vanished he could see the skirts of the women and the heels of the men flitting past the doors; they would invariably return; their faces mocked him.

Some patients do not present this picture of extreme restlessness and the pressure of activity is not communicated to such a degree to the function of speech. Such patients may present an alert appearance, be fairly calm and can often be taken in the lecture room before the class.

The *mood*, too, may be quite different; from being in a condition of constant apprehension and fear of an overwhelming and terrifying environment, they may be calm, interested and amused by their delirious experiences. The patient quoted above on his second day in the hospital was highly entertained by the appearance in the ward of a man with a monkey's body walking along the floor in a barrel, the bottom of which had been knocked out. Then there was the "human ironing board." This was a man's head nailed to an ironing board on wheels; the man spit tobacco juice about the floor and water squirted from his eyes. The patient was much amused by these experiences and told the doctor how he loved to lie in bed and watch it come and go. He thought these two monstrosities the property of the government and that they were intended for the amusement of the patient.

Another patient saw flocks of partridges about his room and a turkey an inch high on his window sill. Spiders and thousand-

legged bugs came crawling on his bed. These hallucinations produced no surprise or disgust. He merely cited them as of passing interest while talking. His aunt's face was lying next to him on the bed and he tried to kiss it. Another patient in the hospital saw about him numerous men of Lilliputian dimensions and displayed the liveliest interest in these strange little people.

Often dreamy hallucinations and delusions relate altogether to his occupation and the patient busies himself with his usual pursuits—*occupation delirium*. Physically he is in a condition of acute exhaustion. The pulse is rapid and of low tension, the temperature normal or only slightly elevated (occasionally high, the *febrile delirium tremens of Magnan*), the body bathed in a profuse perspiration and constantly agitated by muscular shocks and tremors. Occasionally one sees cases ushered in by all the typical prodromal symptoms, sweating, atonic dyspepsia, restlessness, tremor, precordial distress, anxiety and disturbed sleep, which do not proceed to the typical condition of mental confusion with multiform hallucinations. This is the so-called *abortive type*, the *delirium sine delirio* of Dollken.

During the course of the disease almost any experience the patient may have, any impression made upon his sensorium is woven into the warp and woof of his delirious experiences—*sensory flight of ideas*. Hallucinations seem to arise spontaneously or are easily produced by pressure on the eyeball or merely by getting the patient to look at a blank piece of paper. *Paraphasia* and *paralexia* are commonly present.

Albuminuria is found in a considerable proportion of cases, probably considerably over 50 per cent., during the early stages. At the height of the delirium *leucocytosis* has been found. It must not be forgotten, too, that here, as in acute toxic states generally, a sluggish reaction of the pupil to light and even complete Argyll-Robertson pupil may be found. This sign disappears, however, on recovery. This is an important fact to be borne in mind in the matter of diagnosis. Whether it means the presence of syphilis, as some suppose, cannot as yet be definitely stated.

Acute cardiac dilatation may develop at the height of the disease.

Course and Duration.—The psychosis runs an acute course of about three days and terminates in recovery in the majority of cases. The delirium usually ends in a long sleep. About 10 to 15 per cent. die.

Pathology.—Degenerative conditions are found in the central nervous system—acute degenerations of the ganglion cells, and recent hemorrhages. The ganglion cells are found shrunk and there is increase in the glia and some vascular proliferation with slight round-celled infiltration. There may be a chronic leptomeningitis and some narrowing of the cell layers of the convolutions. Changes are also found in the cerebellum. The alterations in the Purkinje cells are supposed to be correlated with the motor symptoms—tremor and ataxia (KRAEPELIN, ALLERS).

WASSERMAYER is of the opinion that the pathology indicates that the delirium results from an increase in the chronic alcohol poisoning rather than a metabolism poison.

Chronic Alcoholism.—The effects of chronic alcohol poisoning are exhibited in every organ of the body, more particularly the central nervous organs, stomach, pancreas, liver, kidneys and blood vessels, and give rise to characteristic symptoms as a result, the most prominent of which are tremor, gastric catarrh, arteriosclerosis, albuminuria and progressive mental enfeeblement.

The effects on the nervous system are shown in disturbances of sensation, motion and the intellect. The *sensory* disturbances are paresthesia (prickling, tingling, formication), hyperesthesia, hyperalgesia and anesthesia. The sensory disorders of the special senses involve principally the eye and ear, producing illusions and hallucinations, *muscæ volitantes*, photopsia, amblyopia and amaurosis, diminution of the acuteness of hearing with the production of subjective noises (hissing, ringing, roaring, etc.), due to middle or internal ear disease.

The *motor* disturbances are tremor, spasms and cramps, epileptiform attacks, general motor enfeeblement with paresis.

The *mental* changes are gradual and progressive, the intellect is obtunded, the judgment overthrown, the moral sense blunted, and mendacity appears in its most bizarre forms; delusions may develop, the most characteristic of which is marital infidelity and jealousy, and the patient sinks gradually into a condition of permanent mental enfeeblement.

Diagnosis.—Alcoholic dementia is to be differentiated from other dementias largely by the history. 'Alcoholic dementia will have a history of progressive mental enfeeblement closely associated with alcoholic indulgence.

GRAETER⁵ has recently called particular attention to the association of alcoholism and dementia præcox. Many of the cases of mental deterioration associated with over-indulgence in alcohol will be found to be true cases of præcox in which the alcohol is only an incidental and associated feature.

Alcoholic Pseudo-Paresis.—On a groundwork of mental enfeeblement the alcoholic may develop a true expansive delirium which, combined with the signs of alcoholism (ataxia, speech defects, tremor, pupillary anomalies and muscular weakness), may make the distinction from paresis difficult—*alcoholic pseudo-paresis*. This similarity to paresis is noticeable even when the expansive delirium is absent in cases in which the mental reduction is marked, but becomes greatest when the symptom complex above outlined is ushered in by epileptiform attacks.

Diagnosis.—The distinction from true paresis can usually be made. Pupillary inequality is more common and the permanent results of apoplectic insults (hemiplegia, aphasia) more often found in the alcoholic form than in the true. The results of polyneuritis should be looked for and if found suggest alcoholism. The most reliable differential sign is found in the course of the two maladies. True paresis is progressive, tending toward ever-increasing degradation, while in the alcoholic form removal of the poison results very shortly in a remission of all the symptoms, even, in some cases, amounting to a recovery. The symptoms, however, reappear subsequently if drinking habits are returned to.

It must not be forgotten that an Argyll-Robertson pupil may be transiently present. It is an open question whether both this sign and the whole pseudo-paresis picture may not be dependent upon the presence of syphilis.

Alcoholic Epilepsy.—As a result of chronic alcoholic toxemia, the symptoms of which are marked throughout by their explosive character, it is not strange that actual convulsions, alcoholic epilepsy, should complicate the morbid picture. These convulsions, so far as their individual characteristics are concerned, are indistinguishable from true epilepsy. Occurring, however, in a person beyond the period of adolescence who is addicted to the immoderate use of alcohol, their origin should be suspected. The diagnosis is made clear if they cease upon the withdrawal of

⁵ Graeter: *Dementia Præcox mit Alcoholismus Chronicus*, Leipzig, 1909.

alcohol. 'As this sometimes does not occur the diagnosis can be made only by excluding the causes both of true and symptomatic epilepsy other than from alcohol.

Alcoholic Hallucinosis.—This psychosis may come on suddenly in a chronic alcoholic, as the result of an unusual excess, or it may be of gradual evolution. It is sometimes preceded by one or more attacks of delirium tremens. It is characterized by hallucinations, auditory predominating, thus contrasting strongly with the predominance of the visual hallucinations in delirium tremens.

The delusions are of a persecutory nature, in which the sexual element is frequently prominent and show a tendency to systematization. The system, however, is of rapid growth and loosely organized.

Whether of sudden or gradual onset, the first symptoms are hallucinations, with which persecutory delusions are intimately bound up. The patient hears voices making all sorts of inimical remarks, telling him that his children are not his own, calling him an onanist, reviling or threatening him. In every way his persecutors annoy him by their malign comments. Visual hallucinations are rare. Hallucinations of smell and taste are not infrequent. The auditory hallucinations, quite characteristically, tend to fall into rhythm with outside sounds, as, for example, in one of my cases,⁶ the humming of a dynamo.

The delusions of this state harmonize well with the hallucinations. The patient is persecuted by invisible enemies who inject noxious vapors into his room at night, poison his food, draw off his semen, and produce nocturnal pollutions.

One patient heard voices of enemies whispering at the windows; they were going to kill him, called him a variety of unpleasant names and accused him of all sorts of crimes. The patient attempted suicide. He gives a history of being troubled with noises in his ears for a considerable time, resembling the click of a telegraph machine. When he is drinking these noises become voices. Another patient thought he heard different people talking about him, cursing him, and calling him vile names. Then later he thought he heard his thoughts repeated. While on

⁶ White: A Case of Unilateral Hallucinosis (Alcoholic), Bulletin No. 1, Govt. Hosp. for the Insane.

his drinking bout he wandered about aimlessly, felt that he was being pursued and heard threats made against him. Bought a knife and walked into the water. In the hospital he heard his old friends accusing him of sexual perversions, pederasty, etc. Tells of having heard his associates say, "He is no good; we will get him out of the army," and "He is a sucker for fixing a horse instead of allowing the veterinary to do it," etc. Another patient, a sailor, had been drinking heavily while on shore. When three days out at sea he began to hear threats against him. He heard the men say that they would kill him, they would cut his heart out, and cut him into fifty thousand pieces. On the evening of the third day he could stand it no longer and thinking that he saw land ahead he jumped overboard.

Grandiose delusions do, however, occasionally occur though they are not sufficiently controlling to modify the picture in any essential way. A case cited by MITCHELL⁷ shows how they usually manifest themselves. In this case, in the midst of an active hallucinosis, during which the patient was constantly hearing voices coming from the air, and out of the floor, and the passing trains were whistling his name, and while he saw faces staring at him from the walls, he had an episode during which he assumed charge of affairs, gave orders, and threatened with death the doctors who refused to obey. BONHOEFFER⁸ only gives one case with grandiose ideas, which, however, were only of temporary duration during the course of an hallucinosis with auditory hallucinations of a distinctly threatening character, and one case in which the patient heard music, but otherwise had disagreeable hallucinations.

In this state the patient is depressed, apprehensive, often fearful of impending danger, may have anxious and angry states, and often reacts by attacking his supposed persecutors. Throughout this condition the patient is well oriented and consciousness is clear.

Some of these cases run a long course and become chronic.

Diagnosis.—The diagnosis from delirium tremens is made by the absence of disorientation and by the marked prevalence of

⁷ Mitchell: Types of Alcoholic Insanity, with Analysis of Cases, Am. Jour. of Insanity, Oct., 1904.

⁸ Bonhoeffer, K.: Die akuten Geisteskrankheiten der Gewohnheitstrinker. Verlag von Gustav Fischer in Jena, 1901.

auditory hallucinations in the form of threatening voices. It must not be forgotten that there exist cases that are intermediate in their symptomatology between delirium tremens and acute hallucinosis. From paranoia the distinction is made by the very rapid systematization of the delusional system, as opposed to the slow evolution in that disease.

Alcoholic Pseudo-Paranoia.—In some cases of chronic alcoholism a paranoid state is developed, in which psycho-sensory disturbances (hallucinations) may be of secondary importance or not present at all. The characteristic delusion in these cases is that of marital infidelity.

While some of these cases develop primarily upon a background of chronic alcoholism, others may follow directly upon an attack of hallucinosis or delirium tremens.

These cases have a long course, poor prognosis and may terminate in considerable impairment.

Diagnosis.—This delusion of marital infidelity and jealousy may not be accompanied by any noticeable degree of impairment of judgment or mental enfeeblement, and in these cases it may be extremely difficult to make a differential diagnosis between this form of alcoholic psychosis and true paranoia. Particularly is it difficult to recognize paranoia with subsequent or coincident alcoholic indulgence.

Certain other paranoid conditions, especially of the involution period, may present this picture with the characteristic delusions of jealousy.

Differentiation is made by excluding alcohol in the anamnesis.

Korsakow's Psychosis.—The mental state of this psychosis accompanies polyneuritis and is usually of alcoholic origin, but may be caused by other poisons, as those of typhus, tuberculosis, influenza, diabetes, the metallic poisons, etc., and the Korsakow syndrome is seen not infrequently in general paresis and in senility. The signs of polyneuritis may be very slight.

Symptoms.—The patient is a chronic alcoholic and may enter the hospital suffering from delirium tremens. The delirium instead of clearing completely, as is usual, merges into Korsakow's psychosis which has often been called chronic alcoholic delirium in contradistinction from delirium tremens which is an acute alcoholic delirium.

The mental symptoms are the result of a characteristic combination of attention and memory disorder. The result is a peculiar type of amnesia. There is a defect in the recording of present events resulting in an anterograde amnesia. In more severe cases this amnesia may reach back a considerable distance—retrograde amnesia—but the events of early life and long distant occurrences are well remembered.

This defect of memory is associated with a composed bearing and apparent lucidity on casual questioning. A more careful examination, however, will show not only this memory defect, but probably also that the patient is disoriented as to time and place.

The characteristic symptom is associated with the amnesia and consists of a peculiar *falsification of memory*. The gaps in memory are filled by all sorts of *fabrications* which are narrated in great detail and with a perfect appearance of lucidity—*opportune confabulation*.

A patient who had been confined to his bed for days with foot-and wrist-drop tells me, when asked where he was the day before, about having gone to the races and details his conversation with different persons, describes the events, tells what horses won and the like.

One such patient says to the physician on approaching the bed: "I am pretty sleepy. I have just had a nap over home and I came over here to lie down again." Asked if his wife had been to see him lately (she had called the day before), said that he saw her two days ago and added: "I was just out there at the front window a few moments ago to see if she was coming." Being questioned as to what he had for dinner yesterday (he was on a milk diet), said he had "Some delicious New York plums, the usual vegetables, and cocoa."

Often delirious experiences seem to be related to the neuritic pain. This same patient told once how a big, black, burly, ugly negro grabbed his sore legs two days before and how it made him angry.

Another patient tells how two years ago he was chloroformed by unknown parties. He awoke just as they had escaped from the room and saw a machine on his right foot. (He suffers from pain and weakness in this foot and ankle.) This was crushing the tendons of the instep. He immediately dropped off to sleep

again. When he awoke the next morning the instrument of torture had been removed, but he suffered from pain and weakness in that right foot and also to some extent in the left foot.

In many cases the fabrications can be suggested by leading questions and the patient may be led to make almost any statements, no matter how contradictory—*suggestion confabulation*.

One patient, confined to bed, asked what he did the day before, replied: "I took the horse and buggy out and took a drive, my father being in Baltimore; I don't know whereabouts I had him fed; I went down Pennsylvania Ave. and Fourteenth Street."

Another patient, when asked what she had for breakfast, proceeded to give a bill of fare, none of the articles of which she really had had.

These *pseudo-reminiscences* are usually unstable and fleeting, or at least seldom told twice alike. Such for instance is the following: "A few weeks ago I was out walking on the Washington Heights, you know, just beyond the Treasury, with a friend. It was during lunch hour at the office. We saw some cattle grazing on the hillside and we thought we would have a little shooting match. I went down to the man and he gave me a gun and I fired away and hit a steer right behind the ear. It, of course, killed him. They all laughed and considered me a crack shot. They sent me a check for it the next day. It was for a pretty large amount but I do not remember just how much. I suppose by looking up the records I could find just how much they did give me."

Sometimes, however, some of them become fixed. It is fairly common, for example, for women to believe and act as though they had a baby in bed with them.

With this state of mind the patient is usually very poorly oriented if not completely disoriented. His time sense is particularly affected.

Physically the patient typically has all the signs of a polyneuritis which of course differs in its distribution according to the etiological factor. In the alcoholic type, which is the most common, wrist- and foot-drop are characteristic symptoms. Of course various unusual and anomalous involvements may occur, for example, of the cranial nerves. Bulbar and vagus involvement are naturally most serious.

Inasmuch as the *pathology* of the disease shows that it is not confined to the peripheral nerves, but is general, involving the whole of the nervous system, cord, basal ganglia, and cortex and inasmuch also as there seems to be some tendency to the focalization of the pathologic process, we might expect to find, and as a matter of fact do find in certain cases, focal symptoms. These are the various types of aphasia, apraxia, reading and writing disturbances, homonymous hemianopia, etc.

Pupillary disturbances are not infrequent. Inequality of the pupils, sluggishness to light and accommodation reflexes, and transitory Argyll-Robertson pupil may be present. More rarely various kinds of ocular palsies or muscular weaknesses occur.

Clinical Forms.—Various clinical types of the disease have been described according to the prominence of special symptoms. Thus DUPRÉ⁹ describes five as follows: (1) Amnesic, (2) confusional, (3) delusional, (4) anxious, and (5) demented. KNAPP¹⁰ describes eleven forms: (1) Delirious, (2) stuporous, (3) demented, (4) hallucinatory without systematization of false ideas, (5) hallucinatory with systematization of false ideas, (6) paranoid, (7) anxious, (8) expansive, (9) manic and melancholic, (10) polyneuritic motility psychosis (of WERNICKE), and (11) anomalous. Of course it will be understood that this separation of forms of the disease is nothing more than giving the name of the most prominent symptom. Thus in the stuporous type stupor is especially in evidence, etc.

Diagnosis.—The association of the peculiar falsification of memory with confabulation and usually disorientation with foot- and wrist-drop is characteristic. Paresis is to be distinguished by the absence of evidences of polyneuritis.

Dream States.—Less common and more unusual effects of alcohol are the conditions of so-called *trance*, *automatism*, *double consciousness*, *spontaneous somnambulism*, which are followed by *amnesia*. In these conditions the subject of alcoholism may do almost anything imaginable, make contracts, transfer property, commit criminal acts, take long journeys, enter into complicated business or professional transactions, and later have absolutely no

⁹ Cited by Jelliffe: The Alcoholic Psychoses. Chronic Alcoholic Delirium (Korsakoff's Psychosis), New York Med. Jour., Oct. 24, 1908.

¹⁰ Knapp: cited by Jelliffe, loc. cit.

knowledge of what he has done. During a protracted debauch the subject may suddenly start off on a journey and travel under an assumed name, meanwhile conducting himself in such a manner as not to lead to any comment on the part of those whom he meets. Suddenly, without warning or after a night's sleep, he "wakes up" to a realization of his true situation with absolutely no memory of how he got where he is or what he has been doing since he started away from home. As the name indicates, this condition has been described as one of automatism, but a moment's consideration will serve to show that acts of such a complex character cannot be automatic acts. The fact that no recollection remains of what was done has been used to argue unconsciousness, but that is equally inconceivable. Hundreds of miles could not be travelled by an unconscious man without attracting attention. The mere fact that the patient has forgotten what occurred is no reason why he must necessarily have been unconscious. I have been fully able to demonstrate that consciousness actually did exist in certain cases that I have studied which were followed by amnesia, and as a result I am convinced that the same condition might be found to exist in others. Some persons are especially liable to this form of mental disturbance, and it may repeat itself on the occasion of renewed intoxication. Its psychopathological basis is probably a dissociation of consciousness.

Dipsomania—a periodical impulse to drink—is an expression of deep-seated neuropathic taint.

Course.—Chronic alcoholism, whether interrupted or not by any of the forms of mental disturbance described in this chapter, tends to an ever-increasing dementia, *alcoholic dementia*. Mental enfeeblement is a symptom from the outset and is noticeable at first in the esthetic and moral sphere. The previously proud, well-dressed man becomes slovenly in his habits and unkempt in his appearance. Incapable of the close and continuous mental application of former years it becomes impossible for him to meet the requirements of his business or professional life and lying is resorted to in finding excuses. This is followed by moral obliquities of a more serious nature in which the sexual element is apt to predominate and result in medico-legal complications. Memory is early and noticeably affected. The everyday affairs of life are forgotten, so that the subject of alcoholism neglects to keep ap-

pointments, forgets important business engagements, etc. Judgment and the reasoning faculties are similarly enfeebled, until finally the most profound degree of dementia is reached, hastened perhaps by apoplectic insults which are not uncommon.

Pathology.—The gross pathology of alcoholism has already been indicated. Cirrhotic liver, chronic nephritis, fatty heart, chronic gastritis, arteriocapillary fibrosis, cerebral arteriosclerosis and cerebral hemorrhage.

The principal lesions found in the brain are pachymeningitis, edema, congestion, thickening and opacity of the piaarachnoid, atrophy of the convolutions, sclerosis of the vessels, degeneration of the cells and increase of neuroglia.

Treatment.—The treatment of *delirium tremens* and the other acute alcoholic psychoses should be supporting; liquid concentrated food predigested if necessary. The bowels should be kept free and the kidneys kept flushed by a goodly supply of fluid. Heart stimulants are often necessary, digitalis, caffeine, strychnine, to combat cardiac failure, and hypnotics to induce sleep and give rest. The latter should be carefully selected with reference to the patient's condition, depressing agents, such as chloral, giving place to safer ones as trional if there is much heart embarrassment. The after-treatment consists of abstinence from alcohol, tonics, nourishing food and regulation of the emunctories.

For the excitement especially hydrotherapy in the form of the continuous bath is valuable. The thing to be kept constantly in mind in these cases is the matter of nourishment. If the patient does not take sufficient food tube feeding should be begun at once without any delay in temporizing. Food alone will often ameliorate in a remarkable manner the excitement and the insomnia.

The medicinal treatment of *chronic alcoholism* should be tonic and supporting. Strychnine for a general nervous and cardiac stimulant, ergot if there be symptoms of "wet brain," capsicum and bitter tonics for the gastric condition of anorexia; attention to the emunctories, moderate exercise, baths, massage and electricity for their general tonic effects; sedatives and hypnotics with caution; a modified "rest treatment" if there is marked neurasthenia, and later a sufficient amount of mental and bodily

exercise to keep the patient healthfully occupied. LAMBERT has had marked success with Livingston's¹¹ solution.

The matter of isolation is an important one. I feel convinced that in all cases in which the habit is firmly fixed isolation is highly desirable, if not imperative, as in these cases the patient is unable to resist temptation and, as soon as opportunity presents itself, will lapse. After confinement for a few months, during which the patient is restored as far as possible to physical health, he is in condition to abstain if he wants to and is able; if he does not wish to or if he suffers from too great weakness of will, he will return to his old practices and his case is hopeless. If he does wish to stop drinking, however, he has been given the best possible opportunity, an opportunity which should be early extended in all cases and not offered when by long-continued indulgence the case is of necessity hopeless.

OPIMUM.

Causes.—As in other varieties of narcomania the most important cause is the neuropathic diathesis. In this class of patients the habit is often initiated by the use of morphine to relieve the periodic pains of neuralgia, tabes, dysmenorrhea, rheumatism, etc., or the mental depression incident to worry, loss of position, grief and the like. A great many cases are unfortunately traced to the carelessness of physicians in prescribing the drug, and as if in retribution medical men furnish the largest quota of sufferers (fifteen per cent.).

Symptoms and Diagnosis.—The symptoms of a single dose are at first those of mild stimulation of the mental faculties followed by a period of quiet, half-waking, half-sleeping, interrupted by multiform pleasant hallucinations (predominantly visual) which show no tendency to delusive elaboration in the waking state. This condition is followed by malaise, headache, dry mouth, constipation and nausea.

The physical symptoms of prolonged use of opium in any of its forms are anorexia, irregular action of bowels, constipation

¹¹ Livingston's solution is one drachm solid extract ergot dissolved in an ounce of sterile water + three drops chloroform and three grains chloretone and filtered. Give thirty drops hypodermically every two to four hours into muscles of gluteal region or deltoid—never subcutaneously.

alternating with diarrhea, cardiac weakness, general muscular weakness and tremor, miosis and sluggish pupils, impotence, amenorrhea, diminished sensibility, paresthesias, sensation of coldness.

- ((Mentally there is a gradual degradation. The memory and power of attention become impaired and the capacity for initiative is lost. There is marked impairment in the ethical feelings and previously honest persons will begin by lying out of business engagements and about the taking of the drug and end by associating with the most degraded persons and resorting to any means whatever, even criminal, to obtain the drug.

Some persons who have taken opium in some form for a considerable time and in large doses develop an hallucinated state that may be of paranoid coloring or may be distinctly deliriod. Thus one patient (laudanum and whiskey) on admission to the hospital said that her food was poisoned. Another patient (morphine) was restless and excited, had hallucinations of hearing and carried on conversation with imaginary persons. Sometimes her language was violent and abusive, she threatened her imaginary persecutors and would jump out of bed and run through the hallway looking for the people she thought were after her.

The diagnosis can often not be made without the anamnestic data. The patients frequently deny their habit—mendacity is a prominent symptom, and they are often cute enough to find means of indulgence even though carefully watched. The moral degradation is pronounced and they will go any length to obtain their drug. Symptoms which should excite suspicion are periods of torpor and languor in marked contrast to the activity of alcoholism, amounting at times to an inability to even sit up, occasional signs of stimulation, small pin-point pupils, yellowish-brown cachectic complexion, and, above all, the numerous scars of hypodermic injections. In conditions in which a diagnosis is necessary it is to be remembered that morphine can be recovered from the urine and stomach.

The least serious method of taking the drug is by smoking, the next worst serious by mouth, and the most serious method is the hypodermic. Morphine is distinctly more dangerous, more dominating after habituation, than the other forms. It is, too, more serious in its effects upon the general health.

Prognosis.—The prognosis is not good and except in such cases as are not complicated by neurotic or psychopathic taint or disorders relieved by opium, recovery is hardly to be expected.

Pathology.—Opium has much less tendency to produce tissue degeneration than alcohol and many persons continue for years to take small doses with no apparent harm.

Treatment.—The treatment of morphinism has to do with the removal of the drug and the symptoms of abstinence. Isolation is more necessary than in alcoholism, as these patients make more effort to obtain their accustomed stimulant surreptitiously. It is well, in accordance with DERCUM's suggestion, not to begin stopping the drug until the patient has been under treatment for a time, confidence established, and the general health raised to the best standard. The *ration de luxe* can then be rapidly withdrawn, in accordance with the method of ERLÉNMEYER,¹² leaving the patient on about 0.15 to 0.20 gm. morphine per diem, below which amount serious symptoms are apt to present themselves. From this point on the withdrawal should be gradual. Symptoms of abstinence, if they appear, are referable to the heart, stomach, bowels and nervous system; they are circulatory failure, respiratory disturbance, pyrosis, vomiting, diarrhea, tremor, general debility, an hallucinatory delirium and sometimes profound collapse. BALL has called attention to pollutions and erotomania which may result from abstinence. For the cardiac weakness digitalis or sparteine hypodermically should be used, for the pyrosis, bicarbonate of soda; vomiting and diarrhea should be treated in accordance with general principles (bismuth, etc.), opium being avoided. If the mental and physical symptoms become grave morphine should be given and will usually relieve them. The evening dose should be omitted last, to combat any tendency to insomnia, and full feeding, massage and hydrotherapy are valuable adjuncts.

Meco-narceine (Duquesnel's solution) has been used by JENNINGS as a substitute for morphine for a few days only after entire discontinuance. Livingston's solution may be used as in alcoholism (see p. 212). It is necessary to call attention to the danger of cocaine for this purpose. Codeine has also sunk into disuse and the synthetized derivatives of morphine, heroin, dionin

¹² Erlenmeyer, Albrecht: On the Treatment of the Morphine Habit, 1889.

and peronin cannot be said to be any better. Their use is founded on a wrong theory and is fraught with danger. Cases of serious addiction to codeine and heroin have been reported.

COCAINE.

Cause.—Addiction to this drug has in a great many cases come about by attempting to substitute it for morphine, and as a result pure cases of cocaineism were formerly more rare than at present. Cocaine has been used so much of late in dentistry, minor surgery, and especially nose and throat work, that a knowledge of it has become more or less general. The victims are often those who have commenced its use for its analgesic effects and are frequently physicians.

Symptoms.—The symptoms resulting from the use of cocaine are those of marked stimulation. The pulse is increased, the pupils dilated. The patients are active and extremely talkative, often repeating remarks a number of times; they are constantly busy, some of them writing endless letters, and their whole appearance indicates an acute intoxication. The effects are, however, very fleeting and the dose has to be frequently renewed. Chronic addictions result in marked emaciation, cachectic anemia, insomnia, sometimes epileptiform attacks and various paresthesias, the most marked of which is a sensation of crawling under the skin ("cocaine bug"). In the psychic sphere occur incapacity for mental application, lessened moral sense, mendacity, irritability, impaired judgment and sometimes the delusion of marital infidelity. These symptoms may be followed by mental confusion with hallucinations, but more characteristically by a paranoid state. From true paranoia this is differentiated by the greater variety of delusions, those of paranoia being less variable, rather noticeable for their monotony. In the paranoid state of alcoholism, on the other hand, the hallucinations are more stereotyped.

The abstinence symptoms are not so severe as with morphine and may not appear for several days. ERLÉNMEYER has called attention to a profoundly depressed, lachrymose, demoralized condition, with moaning and sighing which may supervene. The persecutory delirium may persist for a long time and constitute the patient a very dangerous individual.

Treatment.—Isolation should be insisted upon. The drug may be withdrawn rapidly as the symptoms of abstinence are not as marked as in morphine. Livingston's solution may be used (see p. 212). The prognosis of deprivation is good, but relapses are pretty apt to occur.

MISCELLANEOUS INTOXICANTS.

Various other drugs may produce marked mental disturbances as a result of acute or chronic poisoning or habituation. The limits of this work permit only of their mention. They are chloral, cannabis indica, somnal, sulfonal, aspirin, paraldehyde, ether, chloroform, antipyrin, phenacetin, trional, chloralamid, iodoform, belladonna, hyoscyamus, salicylic acid, quinine, the preparations of lead, arsenic and mercury and the bromides.

It should be realized that many of these drugs are drugs in common use and that unless the possibilities of their producing a psychosis are borne in mind such an accident may arise as the result of large doses or even of moderate doses in especially susceptible persons. It is just such cases as these, together with the cases that arise as the result of taking several drugs, analgesics and hypnotics, that one meets and finds that no suspicion has arisen as to the true cause of the trouble. Attention has recently been called to the frequency of bromide delirium (O'MALLEY and FRANZ,¹³ CASAMAJOR¹⁴). CASAMAJOR has called particular attention to the frequency with which bromide delirium is produced in the treatment of alcoholism.

The character of the delirium in these cases is best described as dream-like. The content of the delirious experiences remind one of delirium tremens, while the tendency to confabulation reminds one of Korsakow's psychosis. The patients are not usually apprehensive and restless as in delirium tremens, but more composed and may be dull and stupid, though there are not infrequently outbreaks of violence dependent upon paranoid experiences. The following extracts from cases will illustrate these points:

The patient, a woman, æt. 36, had been taking morphine hypodermically

¹³ O'Malley and Franz: A Case of Delirium Produced by Bromides, Bulletin No. 1, Govt. Hosp. Insane.

¹⁴ Casamajor: Bromide Intolerance and Bromide Poisoning, Jour. Nerv. and Ment. Dis., June, 1911.

and bromides, chloral, and hyoscine hydrobromate. On admission saw men in rubber garbs who stay in the water and look at her constantly. She also sees the king and queen, bugs and snakes, and bull-dogs with huge open mouths. Says the king and queen congratulated her when she picked up the broken glass at F—'s on 9th St. She hears bull-dogs scream and answers imaginary voices. Electricity is played on her by Dr. B— and she feels snakes which crawl about her neck. Says there are men who throw green powder about the room.

Another patient, woman, æt. 38, had been taking antirheumatic treatment with aspirin to relieve pain and later morphine and hyoscin. She related the following delirious experience that occurred just before admission:

"I believed that a party of us were going down in the country on a picnic and that a cavalry regiment had been ordered out. When we got started, we found that a whole regiment of Indians and negroes were following us. We went to the place in the country where I was born and brought up, and there we found a hospital which was to be used for caring for us until the negroes and Indians were allowed to kill us. The patients in the hospital were all in little beds just like at Providence but were all sitting up. The doors were locked so that we could not get out, but I could hear the negroes and Indians talking about killing us. They decided to divide the party up and take us to their different camps. They also talked of blowing the hospital up with dynamite. They talked of setting fire to a haystack that was situated near my mother's home. I heard them preparing fuse which was to be used in exploding the dynamite. I was dreadfully afraid all the time I was at Providence Hospital and felt that I was among enemies. I thought the nurses were trying to do the best they could for me but that they were in the employ of the Indians and negroes."

Another patient, female, æt. 37, took "bromo-quinine" for two weeks, when she developed a delirium. The following is the substance of a letter she wrote while suffering from the delirious experiences. "Just go there, I cannot talk, I am under a terrible spell, I do not know what it is, but it is the most wonderful experience I ever had. I am hypo, I am hypnotized. I may be in a trance for three months. Do not for God's sake, bury me alive—Molly. Keep me out of the grave four or five months. It will be all right. You will hear some things that will surprise you. Ben, go in that room for God's sake, there is a man in there, he scares everybody dumb, I cannot talk, but for God's sake, break down that door. Take Jack, he has got a good strong arm, break that door down. That poor man is suffering, I saw him do something terrible, and it awed me so I am half paralyzed. For God's sake, break that door down, hurry up."

A case of bromide delirium (reported by O'MALLEY and FRANZ) had taken on an average 300 grains of bromide daily for fifteen days. Her case illustrates well the dream-like character of the hallucinatory and delusional experiences. She was disoriented on admission. Three days later said she had spent the night in the city, was with a large crowd of men and women,

that her husband was dead and that she had seen his body buried. The next day asked where she had been the night before said, "I was over to the gypsy camp; I went over in northeast Washington and saw them kill my husband—smash his head; his brother, who is a sculptor, made a form of his head; I saw it; he will be buried tomorrow." A few minutes later her husband visited her. She told him she thought he was dead, took him to task severely for putting her in the hospital and being unkind to her, but throughout the visit insisted that he had been killed. Six days after admission she still had visual hallucinations—saw cats and rabbits. Thought some of the women patients were men, thought she had to walk on cat's heads when she left her bed and that the physicians were watching her from the register plate in her room. Later she complained that she was "spirited away every night by some influence."

In the *treatment* of these cases the principal thing is, of course, the removal of the drug, though often the underlying condition, for which the drug was taken—pain, insomnia—must then be treated. It must be borne in mind that it may take several weeks for the patient to clear up after all drugs are discontinued.

CHAPTER XV.

PSYCHOSES ASSOCIATED WITH ORGANIC DISEASES AND INJURY OF THE BRAIN.

Epilepsy.—The word epilepsy does not stand for a thoroughly well defined disease, but includes a multiplicity of conditions, so that it is really more proper to avoid its use altogether unless it is limited to a special group of cases (*i. e.*, the cases with disease of Ammon's horn as suggested by ALZHEIMER) and speak of *the epilepsies*.

Convulsions may occur in a great variety of conditions, *i. e.*, the functional psychoneuroses (hysteria), toxæmias (alcohol, uremia), organic brain disease (tumor, softenings, paresis), defects of cerebral development (idiocy). Those occurring late in life are generally dependent upon some organic changes, such as cerebral arteriosclerosis or upon toxæmias and are for convenience often spoken of as *late epilepsies* in distinction from those epilepsies which occur in early life and which are correspondingly known as *early epilepsies*.

The form of epilepsy dealt with here is that form ordinarily known as *idiopathic epilepsy*, *i. e.*, epilepsy which is not, apparently at least, symptomatic of some other condition. The mental disturbances associated with and due to epilepsy may be considered as divided into the *paroxysmal* and the *interparoxysmal*.

Paroxysmal.—The most characteristic and almost invariable mental disturbance due to epilepsy is the *unconsciousness* associated with the convulsion. This may be very transitory or may pass into a deep stupor of some hours' duration.

In a great many epileptics there is a marked disturbance preceding the convulsion, sometimes of several days' duration, and those who are accustomed to the patient can tell that a fit is impending. This change manifests itself in increased irritability, complaining, sometimes by depression or dullness, and there may be associated disturbances of the sensorium, hypochondriacal com-

plaints and hallucinations. 'All these conditions are commonly promptly relieved by the fit.

Immediately after the convulsion there is often a temporary condition of confusion. The patient rises clumsily, looks about him in a bewildered manner and often does some semi-automatic acts, such as taking off his clothes.

Just before or more commonly after the convulsion a condition of active excitement may occur which may reach the stage of frenzy. In this state the patient is a veritable wild man—*epileptic furor*. He is liable to kill anyone who approaches or even himself. Fortunately his efforts are diffuse and not coherently directed. During this attack, which is usually brief, he has to be restrained and at the end is quite completely exhausted.

An attack of mental disturbance may take the place of the confusion and thus become an *epileptic equivalent*. These attacks of *psychic epilepsy* frequently take the form of so-called *epileptic automatism* or *epileptic dream states*. In this condition the patient may do almost anything and when he comes to himself he has absolutely no recollection of what has happened. Usually the attacks are of short duration and the acts rather simple—more simple than in the dream states of alcohol or hysteria. However they may last for days, all sorts of things may be done, crimes may even be committed, so that the condition often becomes of great medico-legal importance. The crimes of violence are often noted for their ferocity and brutality.

It must not be forgotten that these states may be associated with a seizure that was so slight as not to have been noticed. Evidences of such a seizure, especially in medico-legal cases, should always be looked for.

Transitory conditions of *depression, excitement, confusion* and *stupor* may develop and quite characteristically a condition of *ecstasy* with hallucinations. The patient sees the gates of heaven open and as the heavenly hosts appear he hears himself addressed by the voice of God.

Interparoxysmal.—The interparoxysmal condition constitutes in the main the *epileptic character*. The epileptic is apt to be morose, irritable, suspicious and hypochondriacal. He is quite characteristically unreliable and with it all frequently presents a very aggressive form of sentimental, shallow religiosity. While

we do find good-natured, even-tempered, well-disposed epileptics, they are more apt to be most difficult problems to get along with, and as a class in the hospital they are extremely difficult to care for. Passing attacks of mental disturbance occur in the inter-paroxysmal period without apparent relation to seizures. Attacks of *transitory ill-humor*, according to ASCHAFFENBERG, occur in 78 per cent. of cases. This is a condition of irritability, unreasonableness, sometimes associated with delusions and hallucinations. The patient is in a *noli me tangere* state and very apt to get into quarrels or make attacks. Rarely the disturbance is expansive in type and in these cases may be associated with religious fervor.

A study of the sexual characteristics of epileptics has recently been made by MAEDER.¹ As a result, he finds the sexuality of the epileptic still largely undeveloped, still only little removed from the infantile stage. The sexual feelings are very prominent and are aroused in many ways: autogenically, constituting *auto-erotism*, and giving rise to such phenomena as masturbation, and by stimuli from without, constituting *alloerotism*, which gives rise to a normal libido (heterosexuality), homosexuality, exhibitionism, etc. MAEDER uses the term *polyvalent* to describe this characteristic of the epileptic sexuality which permits it to be aroused by many kinds of excitants.

The epileptic state leads in a certain proportion of cases, if it has begun in early life, to conditions of feeble-mindedness, imbecility, and idiocy, or, depending upon the same causes, is associated with these conditions. Epilepsy tends, in many cases, to produce a general mental deterioration—*epileptic dementia*—which may become very profound.

Diagnosis.—It must be recalled that epilepsy is no longer considered as a disease but that the term as used covers a group of conditions which differ widely from one another. The above descriptions were intended to apply only to genuine or what used to be called idiopathic epilepsy.

In addition to genuine epilepsy, which usually begins early in life—*early epilepsy*—various *late epilepsies* have been described. The principal of these are the *toxic* (alcohol, lead), the *arterio-*

¹ Maeder: Sexualität und Epilepsie, Jahrb. f. Psychoanalytische u. Psychopathologische Forschungen, 1909.

sclerotic (post-hemiplegic), the *syphilitic* and the *traumatic*. Many epileptiform attacks are very similar to genuine epilepsy, such, for example, as uremic convulsions, paretic seizures and sometimes hysteria, while the various functional conditions, particularly hysteria (sometimes psychasthenia), should be borne in mind.

Never forget the possibility of exclusively nocturnal attacks—*nocturnal epilepsy*. Always be suspicious of the patient who awakes tired and lame as if his muscles had been beaten, particularly if he shows conjunctival ecchymoses, a wounded tongue, and flecks of blood on the pillow. A localized muscular weakness that passed off promptly would add certainty to the diagnosis.

Recently SCRIPTURE and CLARK² have described the epileptic voice sign and found it in 75 per cent. of cases. The voice has been studied by the "air puff" method of recording on the kymograph. A measure of the wave gives the rates of vibration. A line connecting the tops of the ordinates produces the "melody plot." Normally each vowel has a rising and falling melody. In epilepsy the vowels run along on an even tone—"plateau speech." This is very characteristic and easily recognized.

Pathology.—The following groups of epilepsy are given by ALZHEIMER³ as a result of the histological examination of 63 cases:

A. Cases with very obscure etiology (genuine epilepsy).

1. This group comprises 60 per cent. of the cases.
 - a. with sclerotic changes in Ammon's horn.
 - b. with superficial gliosis of the hemispheres.
 - c. with signs of an acute process (status) besides a and b.

B. Cases due to external poisons.

1. Alcohol: Different anatomical changes as in chronic alcoholism. Besides these sometimes acute changes as in delirium.
2. Lead: Different changes. Experimentally lead produces a genuine encephalitis.

²Scripture & Clark: Researches on the Epileptic Voice, Proc. N. Y. Neurol. Soc., Nov. 12, 1907.

³Alzheimer und Vogt: Die Gruppierung der Epilepsie, Jahresversammlung des deutschen Vereins für Psychiatrie, 1907; Ref. Allg. Ztschr. f. Psych., Bd. 64, 1907.

C. General diseases.

1. Syphilis: Different forms of brain syphilis. Especially the endarteritis of the finer vessels (NISSL, 'ALZHEIMER).

2. Arteriosclerosis.

D. Focal diseases: Most of the cases in this group are cases of epilepsy with idiocy after encephalitis.

E. Arrests of development:

1. Stadium verrucosum (RANCKE).

2. Sclerosis tuberosa.

Treatment.—The treatment is the treatment of epilepsy. When dangerous tendencies are associated with the attacks the patient should be confined in an appropriate institution.

Tumor.—Mental symptoms are more apt to occur when the tumor is located in the prefrontal region. They are change of character, irritability, childishness, emotional instability, with a tendency to hebetude and some clouding of consciousness. Hallucinations may develop as the result of the invasion by the growth of sensory areas. Tumors, especially of the frontal region, are sometimes associated with a jovial, happy frame of mind and a tendency to joke and make fun. This symptom has been given the name *Witselsucht* by the Germans.

Diagnosis.—The diagnosis is made from the presence of the classical symptoms of tumor and a study of the localizing signs. The disease most apt to be confounded with tumor is paresis. Cases are seen on the one hand to present quite clear local symptoms and subsequently turn out to be paresis; while on the other hand cases are seen without local symptoms and which appear to be paresis but which turn out to be tumor.

Syphilis.—An acute delirium may develop during the early secondary manifestations of the disease. Later marked manifestations may be connected with local or general disease of the brain. Gumma are rare and give the symptoms of tumor. The most common condition is a progressive disease of the cerebral vessels, often with thrombosis.

The mental symptoms are those of dementia, to which are added local symptoms as a result of thrombosis. The symptoms will of course vary according to the location of the softening.

PLAUT⁴ in a recent article classifies the syphilitic psychoses as follows: (1) *Simple luetic weakness of mind*—generally accompanied by hemiplegia or monoplegia, which may be transitory or permanent. (2) *Syphilitic pseudo-paralysis*—the presence of hallucinations of hearing have great weight in the diagnosis of this form and speak against true paresis. (3) *Paranoid forms combined with tabes*—remaining stationary for long periods, little dementia, rarely delusions of persecution, numerous hallucinations of hearing, disturbances of common sensation. (4) *Paranoid forms without tabetic symptoms*, for example, with auditory hallucinations and delusions of jealousy. (5) *Certain epileptic forms*, due to endarteritic changes. (6) *Short hallucinatory confused states*. (7) *Psychotic disturbances associated with syphilitic cardiac disease*, observed also as a result of syphilitic aortitis. (8) *Psychoses resembling manic-depressive psychosis*, particularly manic excitement. (9) *Mental disorder*, due to syphilis as a *psychic trauma*. (10) Various grades of *weak-mindedness, psychopathic constitution*, etc.

Diagnosis.—Many of these cases are extremely difficult to differentiate from paresis. Brain syphilis occurs a shorter period after luetic infection, the patient is younger, it is more marked by localizing symptoms, often is associated with severe headaches, which are usually worse at night, and the symptoms, with the exception of those due to destructive lesions, may yield to anti-syphilitic medication.

A most careful neurological examination is of the first importance. It must not be forgotten that a sluggish light reflex and even an Argyll-Robertson pupil may be found in cerebral lues.

PLAUT believes that only the metasymphilitic diseases (tabes and paresis) give the Wassermann reaction with the cerebrospinal fluid. It would therefore be absent in cerebral lues but the reaction would be present with the blood serum.

Pathology.—According to ALZHEIMER⁵ syphilitic affections of the brain show the following anatomical forms:

I. Isolated gummatous tumors.

⁴ Plaut, F.: Die luetischen Geistesstörungen, Centralb. f. Nerven- und Psych., XXXII.

⁵ Alzheimer: Histologische Studien zur Differentialdiagnose der Progressiven Paralyse, Histol. u. histopath. Arbeiten, Bd. I, 1904.

II. Extensive meningitic infiltrations (meningo-encephalitis), with or without gummatous nodules.

(a) Of the base.

(b) Of the convexity.

Cases involving both base and convexity are rare.

III. Endarteritis luetica.

(a) Heubner's endarteritis.

(b) NISSL and ALZHEIMER's endarteritis of the smaller vessels.

Number II (meningo-encephalitis) is the most apt to be mistaken for paresis.

A spirochæta septicemia may also occur.

It must not be forgotten that the pathological lesions of both paresis and lues may be found in the same brain.

Apoplexy.—The mental condition⁶ following apoplexy is usually one of impairment which, if the lesion is considerable, progresses to marked dementia. If the softening involves the speech area, especially if it produce sensory aphasia, the dementia is much more rapid in progress, as it must be remembered that these patients are often senile. Epilepsy often develops as a result of a localized area of softening. These patients often express an exaggerated emotivity on being asked the simplest question.

The neurological signs of hemiplegia are present, also often the signs of senility and not infrequently of arteriosclerosis.

Arteriosclerosis.—This condition is associated with a progressive failure of the mental faculties and local symptoms, due to areas of softening. Because of the diffuseness of the lesions the picture often closely resembles paresis, but the patient is much further advanced in years than is usual for the paretic. Cerebral arteriosclerosis furnishes the connecting link between the psychoses of involution and of the senium. Many of the late depressions present the picture of beginning senility, and in general the later the depressions come on the worse the prognosis, for many of these cases drift over into a senile, or arteriosclerotic dementia.

In the anamnesis we may find alcohol, syphilis and hard mental work. It is therefore important in those cases resembling paresis

⁶ Ricksher, Charles: A Review of the Mental Symptoms Accompanying Apoplexy, *Am. Jour. of Insanity*, July, 1906.

to examine the cerebrospinal fluid both as to the nature of the cell content and its reaction to the Wassermann complement fixation test.

'ALZHEIMER' has described four varieties of the disease which are to an extent differentiated clinically.

1. *Arteriosclerotic Brain Atrophy*.—This occurs in two forms, a mild form with severe arterial sclerosis but an absence of focal brain lesions. The symptoms are easy fatigue, slight failure of memory, dizziness and headache. The severe type may resemble the mild at first but is progressive, leads to profound dementia and presents in its course apoplectiform and epileptiform attacks and focal symptoms.

2. *Subcortical encephalitis* of BINSWANGER.⁸ In this condition the white matter is largely involved as a result of the disease in the long medullary arteries. Apoplectiform and epileptiform attacks occur and also transitory attacks of confusion, aphasia and paresis, disturbances suggesting focal lesions. Focal lesions are not found extensively but areas of softening often occur in the basal ganglia.

3. *Perivascular Gliosis*.—In this condition there is a disappearance of nervous elements about the diseased vessels and replacement by neuroglia.

4. *Senile Cortical Devastation*.—Here we find extensive destruction of cortical areas in the vascular territories of the diseased vessels.

PICK⁹ has very thoroughly described certain large atrophies involving whole lobes or portions of lobes. The occipital lobes may be involved, producing blindness, or the temporal, producing deafness, for example. The atrophy, however, does not always follow a vascular area, and so, while it is generally supposed to

⁸ Alzheimer: Histol. u. histopat. Arb., Bd. I, 1904. Allg. Ztschr. f. Psych., LI, LIII, and LIX. Die Seelenstörungen auf arteriosclerotischer Grundlage, Allg. Zeitschr. f. Psych., Vol. 59, cited by Barret, Albert M.: A Study of Mental Disease Associated with Cerebral Arterio-Sclerosis, Am. Jour. Insanity, July, 1905.

⁹ Binswanger: Die Begrenzung der Allgemeinen Paralyse, Allg. Zeitschr. f. Psych., Vol. 51. Cited by Barrett, loc. cit.

⁹ Pick: Zur Symptomatologie der linkseitigen Schläfenlappen atrophie, Monatschr. f. Psychiat. u. Neurol., Vol. 16, 1904, and, Die umschriebene senile Hirnatrophie als Gegenstand klinischer und anatomischer Forschung, Arbeiten aus der deutsch. psych. Klinik in Prag, Berlin, 1908.

be due to arteriosclerotic disturbances in the irrigation of these territories, the cause is not always altogether clear.

Symptomatology.—Some of the cases develop only nervous symptoms, irritability, forgetfulness, hypochondriacal ideas or perhaps ideas with a paranoid trend, but remain in a practically stationary condition for a long time. Other cases are progressive, with epileptiform seizures, the development of focal symptoms, and an advancing dementia that becomes profound.

Diagnosis.—The disease most apt to be confounded with arteriosclerotic dementia is paresis. It is extremely difficult to differentiate many cases of paresis with focal lesions. In general paresis occurs earlier in life and presents more uniform impairment. In arteriosclerotic dementia the patient has better insight into his condition, the delusions are more closely related to his previous life, to the vocation and social position of the patient, they are less unnatural, the "nucleus of the personality"¹⁰ is better retained. The disease commonly lasts much longer than paresis.

The focal lesions may give rise to a mistaken diagnosis of brain tumor.

Arteriosclerosis and the involution of the senium are so closely associated that it is often practically impossible to separate them clinically. A careful anamnesis and neurological examination is important in every case. It must not be forgotten that many cases with localized brain lesions, aphasics and even apraxics pass for demented though analysis may show a comparatively clear intelligence.

Treatment.—In the main the treatment should be to so regulate the life as to take all unnecessary strain from the cardiovascular system. Easily assimilated food, care of the emunctories, moderate exercise, freedom from worry and from mental or physical exertion. For the insomnia alcohol in the form of a small dose of whiskey and water at night is excellent, but should be given with great care and its administration carefully guarded, as these patients are especially susceptible to it and often develop periods of confusion from very small doses.

Traumatism.—The most frequent symptoms following trauma are those of hysteria and neurasthenia. Dementia precox, manic-depressive psychosis and paresis may follow an injury.

¹⁰ Weber, L. W.: Zur Klinik der arteriosklerotischen Seelenstörungen, Monatschr. f. Psych. u. Neurol., Bd. XXIII, 1908.

After the injury a delirium may develop. Aside from this, mental symptoms may not occur for a considerable time, and when they do they usually consist of an apathetic dementia, often with irritability. There are often memory defects, especially amnesia for the time of the injury, and these defects may be filled in with fabrications. There is almost always intolerance of alcohol.

MEYER¹¹ classifies the effects of traumatism in the nervous system as follows:

1. The direct focal and the more diffuse destruction of the nerve-tissue or of parts of it; and the reaction of the tissues.

- (a) The immediate effects—edema.

- (b) The scar formation.

2. The distinctly diffuse commotions in which the general reaction and the psychic elements preponderate, including the remote reactive results of exaggerations of vasomotor and emotional responsiveness.

He classifies the psychoses developing as follows:

1. *Post-traumatic deliria*, including febrile reactions, the *delirium nervosum* of Dupuytren, not differing from post-operative delirium, the delirium of the slow solution of coma in alcoholic as well as non-alcoholic subjects, protracted deliria with confabulation with or without alcoholic or senile basis.

2. *Post-traumatic Constitution*.—Excessive reaction to alcohol, la grippe, etc., the vasomotor neurosis of Friedman, the "explosive diathesis" of Kaplan, hysteroid or epileptoid episodes, with or without convulsions, paranoid states.

3. *Traumatic Defect Conditions*.—Conditions allied to aphasia, deterioration with epilepsy, deterioration due to the progressive alteration of the primarily injured parts, with or without arteriosclerosis.

4. *Psychoses in which trauma is merely a contributory factor*.—Paresis, manic-depressive, dementia precox.

5. *Traumatic psychoses from injury not directly affecting the head*.

To state the case simply there are certain transitory conditions of delirioid experiences following trauma which may have a per-

¹¹ Meyer, Adolf: The Anatomical Facts and Clinical Varieties of Traumatic Insanity, Am. Jour. Insanity, Jan., 1904.

manent constitutional change or not. Then there are certain very slowly progressive dementias which can only be appreciated by taking a longitudinal section of the patient's life. We will find then that a life that has been efficient up to a certain point where it was punctuated by the trauma has fallen off in efficiency progressively since. Then there are the endogenous psychoses for which the trauma may be only the exciting cause.¹²

This group of the traumatic psychoses includes also the *post-operative psychoses*, the psychoses following operations on the eye, *ophthalmic psychoses*, and *insolation psychoses*.

¹² Glueck: Traumatic Psychoses and Post-Traumatic Psychopathic States, Jour. Am. Med. Ass., April 1, 1911.

CHAPTER XVI.

THE SYMPTOMATIC PSYCHOSES.

In this group of the symptomatic psychoses are included those mental disorders that are associated with and are symptomatic of various bodily diseases. BONHOEFFER¹ includes in this group the psychoses of the infections and of fever delirium and deferescence.

AUTO-TOXIC PSYCHOSES.

Uremia.—The auto-intoxication which develops as a result of renal disease produces mental symptoms of an acute confusion with changeable delusions, hallucinations, clouding of consciousness, restlessness, and often an occupation delirium. The character of the delusions may be more or less consistently grandiose, giving rise to an *expansive form*, or depressive, giving rise to the *depressive form*. In subacute cases a condition of suspicion, anxiety, with loosely systematized delusions of persecution, sometimes develops.

It must not be forgotten that in some cases of acute uremia distinctly focal symptoms develop. These cases associated with headache, vomiting, and dimness of vision, often closely resemble brain tumor.

The uremic convulsions cannot be distinguished in appearance from the epileptic and the development afterwards of a dream state makes the resemblance closer still.

Here, as in all toxic conditions, the characteristic dream-like hallucinatory delirium, which has been called "cinematographic," is the characteristic mental symptom (for examples see alcohol).

Diagnosis.—The diagnosis is to be made from the association of an acute confusion with the uremic state. The subacute cases may mislead as they have the outward semblance of a chronic psychosis. The history will, however, show an acute onset and the physical examination will disclose evidences of renal disease.

¹ Bonhoeffer: Die Symptomatischen Psychosen.

Diabetes.—The mental disorder associated with diabetes is usually of a mild chronic type. It is usually a depression, with melancholic ideas of sin, ruin and usually also hypochondriacal ideas, especially with reference to the excretion of sugar. There is liable to be marked somnolence with some confusion and disorientation in the semi-somnolent state. Persecutory delusions are quite frequently developed, ideas of poisoning and the like.

It must be remembered that diabetes produces arteriosclerosis, so that certain of the mental symptoms may depend upon the degenerative changes in the cerebral vessels.

Diagnosis.—The persecutory type must be differentiated from the chronic psychoses. Otherwise the diagnosis is made by the association of the mental symptoms with glycosuria. A diabetic pseudo-general paresis has been described.

Gastro-Intestinal.—Certain cases of acute confusion develop, associated with a profuse, offensive diarrhea, a high grade of indicanuria, vomiting, low fever and perhaps mild albuminuria. Some of these cases go on to acute delirium, with high fever, typhoid state, profound exhaustion, coma and death.

THYROGENOUS PSYCHOSES.

The thyroigenous psychoses may be divided in two classes: Those due to defect of secretions—myxoedema and cretinism—and those due to hypersecretion—exophthalmic goitre.

Myxoedema.—Associated with the physical symptoms of myxoedema is a mental state of stupidity, indifference and apathy, deepening into dementia. There is gradual failure of memory, lack of power of voluntary attention, slow association of ideas and difficulty of apprehension. Sometimes a moderate degree of confusion with excitement develops.

Cretinism.—Associated with the physical signs of cretinism is a mental state, due to lack of development, which may range all the way from the profound degradation of idiocy to mild grades of imbecility.

Exophthalmic Goitre.—The prevailing mental tone associated with this disease is fear and apprehension.

It is not infrequently associated with hallucinations of hearing and vision; voices may be heard saying disagreeable things. With these hallucinations occur anxious and agitated states. The prognosis in these cases is bad. Many of them die.

Severe cases of *acute thyroidism* with active delirium are occasionally seen following operations upon the gland and may be due to the expression of its secretions by handling it and subsequent absorption.

NERVOUS DISEASES.

Sydenham's Chorea.—Patients with chorea are usually impatient, irritable, fretful and emotionally unstable. Some of the cases develop terrifying dreams and hallucinations, especially at night. Marked psychotic symptoms develop in the variety of the disease known as *chorea insaniens*, an acute confusion, sometimes of violent type, develops with hallucinations and often a paranoid condition with delusions of persecution. Sometimes a condition of stupor is observed.

Korsakow's psychosis is sometimes seen as a result of polyneuritis from overtreatment with arsenic.

Diagnosis.—The diagnosis is made by the association of the mental symptoms with the characteristic choreic movements.

Huntington's Chorea.—This disease is associated on the psychical side with gradual mental impairment.

Paralysis Agitans.—This disease is often associated with a mild degree of mental enfeeblement.

Multiple Sclerosis.—The mental condition is usually one of slight impairment, especially with emotional instability. The patient laughs and cries very easily.

Diagnosis.—The disease must be differentiated from paresis which it often closely resembles.

Polyneuritis.—See Korsakow's Psychosis, Chapter XV.

Pellagra.—There has been very little study of the mental symptoms of pellagra of late years. From the few cases I have seen and from talking with those who have had it under observation there seems to be a variety of symptom pictures.

Many cases present no nervous or mental symptoms at all. In those who do there seems to be a tendency toward a variable localization of the disease process. There seem to be cases in which the spinal cord suffers most and others in which the brain suffers most. In this latter group a condition of very *acute delirium* may be developed running a rapid course to fatal termination and reminding one of the acute forms of paresis. The

more frequent condition, of which I have seen a number of cases, seems to be more in the nature of a *simple retardation*. The patient moves slowly or not at all, and answers questions after a long delay in a low tone of voice and in monosyllables. There does not go with this retardation however an emotional depression as in melancholia. I have also seen *pellagrophobia* in an infected territory.

With this disease, as with many others, we must not forget that it may be associated with various psychoses without having any other relation to them. This is particularly so in this country as the large groups of cases which have occurred have been in hospitals for the insane.

Perhaps GREGOR² has made the most careful recent clinical study of the mental symptoms. He considers his cases under the following seven categories: (1) Pellagrous neurasthenia, (2) stuporous group, (3) mental aberration, (4) acute delirium, (5) katatonia, (6) anxiety psychosis, (7) manic-depressive group. It does not seem clear however just what is the connection in all of these cases between the pellagra and the psychosis.

Heart Disease.—Depressive states are most in evidence here. Mental symptoms, however, are most apt to be associated with failure of compensation. With precordial distress goes typically a mental state of anxiousness. Transitory confusions with dreamy hallucinations occur with compensation disturbances and edema.

Treatment.—The treatment of all these conditions is the treatment of the underlying disease.

DISEASES OTHER THAN NERVOUS.

Various other diseases have from time to time mental symptoms associated with them. The great majority of such diseases, if not all of them, have elements of infection or toxemia and exhaustion combined with or part of them. We therefore see the mental symptom-complex of confusion arise most typically. In some cases, especially, the less acute paranoid conditions occur and hallucinosis is of occasional occurrence.

HEAD has shown that certain visceral diseases, especially of cardiovascular and pulmonary origin, often have associated men-

² Gregor, A.: Beiträge zur Kenntnis der pellagrösen Geistesstörungen, Jahrb. f. Psychiat. u. Neurol., 1907.

tal symptoms, although they may not appear except on the most careful examination. The symptoms found are: (1) Hallucinations of vision, hearing and smell; (2) moods, either of depression or exaltation, and (3) suspicions usually occurring when a depression has persisted for some time.

These conditions take their origin in part as a result of reflected visceral pains. Each spinal segment has both a visceral and a cutaneous representation. Disease occurring in the visceral area is referred to the cutaneous surface supplied by the same segment. The cutaneous distribution of the fifth nerve corresponds to the visceral distribution of the vagus, so pain occurring in the vagus territory will be referred to the scalp and thus occur points of tenderness in this region with which the hallucinations are associated. The mood of exaltation is essentially transitory and arises as a contrast phenomenon of the depression and as a result of the disappearance or lessening of the reflected somatic pain.

CHAPTER XVII.

BORDERLAND AND EPISODIC STATES.

THE PSYCHONEUROSES.

Neurasthenia.—*Symptoms:* The manifestations of neurasthenia are protean and numerous. The disease may be hereditary, constituting so-called *constitutional* neurasthenia, or it may be *acquired* by exhausting and debilitating conditions, usually acting over a considerable period. Symptoms of hysteria are not infrequently combined with those of neurasthenia, constituting *hystero-neurasthenia*. Neurasthenia is usually classified in accordance with the organs about which the symptoms most prominently group themselves into *cerebral, spinal, genital, gastric, angiopathic*, or in accordance with the cause as *lithæmic* and *traumatic*.

The fundamental symptom of neurasthenia is *fatigueability*, both mental and physical. With this fatigueability there goes a condition of irritability—*irritable weakness*—and inability to concentrate the attention for any length of time. This attention disorder is often responsible for what appear to be amnesias. As a matter of fact little or no attention was paid to the event supposed to have been forgotten so that it never was adequately impressed in the first case.

The mood is pessimistic, often hypochondriacal. The simple depression that goes with this state is often of the nature of a symptomatic depression. The hypochondriacal ideas referable to the particular viscera are to no small extent fostered by the treatment, in many cases, which centers the patient's attention upon his various bodily functions.

To the condition of those patients who pay marked and more or less continuous attention to the functions of their bodily organs the name *hypochondria* is given.

Causes.—The cause of neurasthenia is usually put down as overstrain, mental or physical. The so-called strenuous life of the present day is believed to be responsible for many cases. The

strenuous life, however, has offered material for criticism for hundreds of years. Cicero wrote against it in the old Roman days. What, to my mind is more characteristic of the times, not in opposition to all other times, but in distinction from the period of the immediate past is idleness, especially of the women. The women of the well-to-do classes have literally nothing to do. Immense corporations make and provide, not only all the necessities but all the luxuries. Servants do all the manual work and there is nothing left for her. She is therefore constrained to lead a life of comparative uselessness and idleness. It is a life, however, that does not satisfy. In addition to its uselessness it becomes a life of longing for something usually indefinable, a life of shattered hopes, of ambitious longings that don't come true, of unfulfillment. Having no outer interests the thoughts naturally turn to self and in this factor is laid the foundation of the hypochondria that these patients suffer from, the eternal complaining of little nothings. Having lost their touch with reality and become self-centered their own ego occupies a too prominent place in their perspective. Their world is a world in which they occupy the central point, everything has some relation to them, they become suspicious, carping critics, gossips and scandal mongers. To try and escape from this inner suffering they often engage in a delirious round of social functions and break down apparently from overexertion in keeping up their social duties. This is, however, only the obvious cause; the real cause lies much deeper. Being somewhat physically tired, having failed, having no real interests, she is indifferent to all except her personal sufferings. Exertion is only exertion and serves no special end, fits in nowhere as a link in a well-connected, coherent chain of events, so they end by being unable to exert themselves at all. Even getting up and dressing is too much; they stay in bed.

This is the usual picture of neurasthenia which of course may be varied in innumerable details. The important thing to get from the illustration is the importance of the mental factor.

Diagnosis.—The early stages of paresis not infrequently present neurasthenic symptoms. An examination of the physical signs, particularly the tendon and pupillary reflexes, will usually clear up the difficulty. If any doubt remains an examination of the cerebrospinal fluid will settle it.

The prodromes of dementia precox may be extremely difficult to differentiate. The emotional indifference of precox is in marked contrast to the emotional state of neurasthenia.

The mild depressions of manic-depressive psychosis may resemble neurasthenia. A demonstration of retardation will be about the only way to differentiate some of these cases except by the lapse of time and a study of the course.

It must be remembered that many conditions, both mental and physical, may have neurasthenic symptoms associated. This is especially important to recall of brain tumor, the persistent headache of which has been mistaken for a neurasthenic headache.

Treatment.—In the main the treatment should be tonic and restorative. The Weir Mitchell rest cure is effective in many of these cases and accomplishes its results quite as much, in many cases, because of the effect on the mind of the patient as because of the result in improvement of bodily health. This group of cases are especially favorable for a rational psychotherapy.

In the class of cases I have described the real problem is to get them out of themselves and into healthy touch with the world of reality. This can only be done by awakening new interests and training them gradually in healthy view-points, and the continuity of effort, in endeavoring to establish the habit of work. This is an easy thing to say but one of the most difficult of therapeutic problems.

The normal individual does not know, from his sensations at least, that he has a heart, a stomach, or nerves. A form of treatment that centers the patient's attention upon his bodily functions may therefore do harm. It is a commonplace that if the attention is directed to any part of the body, sensations will soon begin to flow from that part. Very carefully devised dietaries carried out with great precision as to detail may, therefore, do much to fix the patient's hypochondriacal ideas with reference to his digestive organs. Similarly with other organs.

Hysteria.—The nature of hysterical manifestations has been a matter for discussion and theorizing for centuries. About the only ground upon which all can meet to-day is that the manifestations are mental in origin although some still maintain the possibility of isolated symptoms not susceptible of this explanation. BABINSKI¹

¹Babinski: My Conception of Hysteria and Hypnotism, *Alienist and Neurologist*, Vol. XXIX, Feb., 1908.

has laid down the dictum that no symptom can be hysterical which cannot be produced by suggestion and removed by persuasion. To the condition in this group of cases in which the symptoms are capable of being produced by suggestion and removed by persuasion BABINSKI has given the name *pithiatism*.

The most important theories² of hysteria are: that of SOLLIER³ who regards it as the result of the going to sleep more or less locally or generally of the cerebral centers. The hysteric is a vigilambulist.

JANET⁴ says that hysteria is "a form of mental depression characterized by the retraction of the field of personal consciousness and by the tendency to the dissociation and the emancipation of systems of ideas and of functions which by their synthesis constitute the personality."

His theory perhaps comes as close as any to throwing real light on the situation. From the standpoint of the nature of hysteria his theory is enlightening as tending to show that the fundamental trouble is a loose organization, a faulty synthesis of the personality. SNYDER⁵ and HELLPACH⁶ have particularly laid stress upon this, that hysteria is a disorder, a type of reaction belonging to people who in mental organization are still children: people in whom the elements that go to make up the personality are still only loosely bound together, they are in the adjustable stage of development.

The most important theory of hysteria to-day is that of FREUD.⁷ He regards hysteria as due to the operation of buried sexual complexes. The symptoms that result are due to the *conversion* of the affect of the complex into physical symptoms (see Chap. VI).

Conversion is the essential feature of the symptomatology of hysteria according to FREUD while the essential feature of his theory of the origin of the painful complex is that it is due to a psychic conflict of a sexual nature, a conflict between desire as

² White: Mental Mechanisms, No. 8 of this series.

³ Sollier: Hystérie et Sommeil, Arch. de Neurol., Mai et Juin, 1907.

⁴ Janet: Les Névroses. Paris, 1909.

⁵ Snyder: Definition et nature de l'hystérie, L'Encéphale, Aout, 1907.

⁶ Hellpach: Cited by Jelliffe: Hysteria and the Reëducation Method of Dubois, N. Y. Med. Jour., May 16, 1908.

⁷ Freud: Selected Papers on Hysteria and other Psychoneuroses, Nerv. and Ment. Dis. Monog. Series No. 4, New York, 1912.

represented by buried complexes and attitudes of mind the result of education.

We find, therefore, according to this author an infantile sexual complex which has been repressed. In certain individuals this repression results in an independent activity of the repressed complexes. These repressed complexes condition erotic fancies which take forms incompatible with the personality and are in turn repressed. The repressed ideas are rendered harmless, greatly weakened, by the transformation of their affective excitement into bodily innervation—a process FREUD calls “conversion” while the mental symptoms of the attack represent the incursions of the erotic day dreams to the surface. Thus in FREUD’S words: “Psychoanalysis of hysterical individuals shows that the malady is the result of the conflict between the libido and the sexual repression, and that their symptoms have the value of a compromise between both psychic streams.”

The mental symptoms of hysteria for practical purposes have for a long time been divided into those constant phenomena which are present throughout the course of the malady—the symptoms of the *interparoxysmal period*, the so-called *mental stigmata*, and those more or less closely connected with the paroxysms—the *episodic phenomena*.

Mental Stigmata.—The principal symptoms of the interparoxysmal period are: *Anesthesias*—disseminated, segmental, hemianesthesia, *hyperesthesias* usually disseminated. *Motor disturbances*—contractions, catalepsy, paralysis. *Amnesias*—partial or general. *Debility of the emotions*—loss of will power, suggestibility.

It must be fully understood that all these symptoms, even the sensory and motor disturbances, are purely mental.

Episodic Phenomena.—These phenomena may precede or follow an hysterical crisis, or, as in epilepsy, may be substituted for one. They are principally states of *exaltation*, *depression*, *delusions*, *lethargy*, *somnambulism*, *fixed ideas*, *delirium*, *choreiform movements*.

Conditions of *delirium* with great confusion, clouding of consciousness and hallucinations are common.

Dream states are also quite characteristic of this disease, as they are of epilepsy and alcoholism.

A characteristic of these episodic manifestations is their very frequent association with amnesia.⁸

It will be found that the crises of hysteria are associated with certain subconscious ideas, that are connected with some previous experience, having a large content of painful emotion, which has been forgotten.

In fact the psychology of hysteria is the psychology of these subconscious states and their method of growth by a process of dissociation, or splitting of the normal consciousness. Following these periods of subconscious activity the patient may have absolutely no recollection of what has occurred, so that the phenomena have often been looked upon as disturbances of memory.

While in the normal individual, however, memories lapse by a process of gradual subsidence in the face of the intensive present, in these other conditions the events cannot be said to lapse in this way as they no longer are in direct connection with the personal consciousness. In these instances a dissociation has taken place, there has been a fault, a line of cleavage which separates them much more completely.

This cleavage with the resulting dissociation is an abnormal phenomenon and the manifestations which follow result from a split-off state in the subconscious which tends always to become dynamic.

This condition of dissociation has its origin in a severe emotional shock, or in a series of small shocks. It occurs more particularly in young people, being more readily brought about in that condition of lability incident to development and as at this time the sexual preëmpts a very prominent place in mental life the resulting picture is correspondingly colored.

The dissociation in its beginning may be of any extent. A certain portion of the then consciousness of the individual at the time of the accident is separated by a plane of cleavage from his subsequent mental existence and in relation to that mental existence is said to be subconscious.

The process of dissociation, having once begun, tends to continue and new material is constantly being added to this secondary state by further cleavage and also by assimilation by this state itself as it begins to lead an independent existence. Thus the

⁸ Sidis and White: *Mental Dissociation in Functional Psychosis* in Sidis: *Psychopathological Researches*, New York, 1902.

tendency is for it to continually grow, and when that growth takes place by repeated cleavage, to grow at the expense of the personal consciousness.

This is the process of dissociation but associated with it is the dynamogenic quality of the dissociated states spoken of above and which is responsible largely for the manifestations that have attracted attention. How can this factor be explained?

In the normally functioning mind there is constantly going on a "battle of motives," a struggle for supremacy between the several elements, much like the struggle recently described as between the physical elements of the body which results in certain structural types. The result of this is that differences of tension tend to occur in different areas, but as these areas are all organically connected, discharge taking place along the lines of least resistance drains those at high tension. Inhibition by drainage (McDOUGALL⁹) occurs.

Now in these dissociated states, separated from the personal consciousness by a plane of cleavage a plus tension finds no relief. The energy not being drained as normally, accumulates to the point of explosion, and breaking over the gap which separates it from the upper strata manifests itself in waves of disturbance therein. Thus we have the phenomena of epileptiform and hysteriform crises, transient deliria, episodic depressions and a multitude of other sensori-motor expressions. These expressions recur and naturally tend to become periodic.

On the other hand, during periods of inactivity of the upper consciousness, as in hypnotic, hypnoidal (SIDIS¹⁰) and dream states the secondary states tend to assume the ascendancy.

Whether the secondary states ever assume the dignity of a personality or not is merely a question of degree. They tend to organize and to grow and if the process keeps up it is only a question of time when a new personality will be born. If these states grow largely at the expense of the personal consciousness this latter may finally assume a relative position of inferiority.

⁹ McDougall: *The Nature of Inhibitory Processes within the Nervous System, Brain*, 1903.

¹⁰ Sidis: *Psychopathological Researches*, New York, 1902. *An Experimental Study of Sleep*, *Jour. Ab. Psych.*, Vol. III, Nos. 1, 2 and 3, 1908. *Studies in Psychopathology*, *Boston Med. and Surg. Jour.*, Vol. CLVI, Nos. 11, 12, 13, 14, and 15, 1907.

Hysterical Insanity.—Hysterical delirium, stupor, and dream states especially may be, and usually are, only transitory disturbances but they may be of considerable duration and in any case, while they last, are veritable psychoses.

Aside from these acute episodes there are a few cases that throughout a prolonged attack seem to present only hysterical symptoms. There are other cases while presenting predominantly hysterical symptoms present also other symptoms which ally them to some other psychosis.

Just where these cases belong is doubtful. We must, however, concede the possibility of hysterical symptoms developing in connection with almost any other psychosis. A certain few cases start as apparently purely hysterical and after a more or less prolonged course deteriorate, the *degenerative hysteria*, of the older writers.

The trouble is that we have not as yet been able to define with sufficient accuracy the limits of hysteria.

Diagnosis.—Epilepsy is the most difficult disease from which to differentiate hysteria. This is particularly so because of the convulsive attacks in each. The diagnosis must often rest upon the presence of the hysterical stigmata in the interparoxysmal period, as the attacks are often not seen and cannot be distinguished by the description given. The presence of these stigmata will usually suffice, as hysterical convulsions and true epileptic convulsions seldom occur in the same patient. Hystero-epilepsy is not a combination of the two diseases, but hysteria with associated epileptiform attacks.

The amnesia of hysteria is peculiar in that careful questioning will disclose islands of memory throughout the amnesic period. These islands will often not be the same on repeatedly going over the ground. The field of memory fluctuates.

The differentiation from the other psychoses is to be made from the history and the presence of hysterical stigmata.

The whole question of the relation of hysteria to other diseases, to mental diseases such as dementia precox, to neuroses such as epilepsy, to multiple sclerosis, chorea, etc., has been admirably and sanely reviewed by Voss¹¹ in his recent work.

¹¹ Voss: *Klinische Beiträge zur Lehre von der Hysterie*. Jena, Gustav Fischer, 1909.

If, as seems to be generally acknowledged, the hysterical Anlage, the tendency to hysteria, or hysterisability as BERNHEIM would have it, may remain indefinitely latent until something happens to produce the characteristic response, then I do not see why the so-called hysteriform accompaniments of these various diseases cannot properly be considered as true hysteria. Why should not a multiple sclerosis be the activating agent in breaking down the resistance to the outcrop of the hysterical reaction?

All these efforts to limit, to bind in, to define hysteria within certain prescribed boundaries are not at all convincing and they fail, it seems to me, simply because hysteria does not confine its manifestations to any definite limits. It spreads out into all the available and adjoining territory and is indefinite and hazy in its outlines quite like other natural phenomena. We must not forget that definitions are human devices—nature has few sharply defined boundaries.

The effort of BABINSKI to exclude all phenomena which seem to be physical in character seems to rest on entirely inadequate conceptions. The whole field of psychopathology has too long been dominated by that bug-a-boo, the relation of the mental and the physical and the implied necessity of conceiving of each as in essence different from the other. This is but another example of an attempt to define an artificial boundary where none exists.

As between the most definitely physical of bodily processes on the one hand and the highest psychic on the other, an infinity of gradations exists and at no point can it be said that what was one has become the other. It is much more stimulating and effective to stick to facts wherever they may lead us than to create arbitrary boundaries which later on only serve to cut off our entrance to certain territories.

It seems to be very well demonstrated that the individual reacts to conditions by the development and organization of mechanisms which in their complex manifestations may include both physical and mental components.

It seems to me that in a consideration of such facts we may find an explanation for the association of physiological disturbances with hysteria, such as the false gastropathies for instance, and also an explanation of those cases which start as hysteria

apparently but which later on show symptoms of permanent mental deterioration. Those cases, which lead to a change of diagnosis from hysteria to dementia precox, also lead to the belief that the original diagnosis was in error. Why? Could it not be possible for a hysterical type of reaction in a badly organized individual to gradually unloose bits of physiological mechanism until organic changes had wrought permanent damage?

And so I think we must come to recognize the hysterical type of reaction wherever we see it, whether in connection with other conditions or alone. By so doing we will have a broader understanding of our cases than by always insisting upon a one-disease diagnosis.

Treatment.—The principle of treatment is to reëstablish the broken associations. This is generally best accomplished by inducing a semi-sleeping state—the hypnoidal state of SIDIS—tapping the subconscious in this way, and then by a gradual arousing of the patient bridging the gap between it and the upper consciousness.

It is sufficient to effect a cure of the special manifestations, in many cases, to secure a full recollection by the patient for the events forgotten and which include the events of the psychic traumatism. If these events are recalled and lived through, the patient reacting emotionally fully to them their abnormal effects will disappear. This is the so-called “cathartic” method of treatment.

Psychasthenia.—Under this term JANET¹² includes obsessions, impulsions, insanity of doubt, tics, agitations, phobias, delirium of contact, anguishes, neurasthenias and the bizarre feelings of strangeness and of depersonalization often described under the name of cerebrocardiac neuropathy or disease of KRISHABER. By considering all of these varied conditions together as results of a fundamental underlying state he would thus erect psychasthenia into a psychoneurosis.

This psychoneurosis represents at the mental end of the scale the conditions which at the physical are represented in neurasthenia. In fact there is a tendency recently manifested to consider only two great psychoneuroses, viz., hysteria and psychasthenia. This psychoneurosis has as its fundamental symptom the

¹² Janet: *Les Obsessions et la psychasthénie*. Paris, 1903.

lowering of the psychological tension. If we can think of our mental force in mechanical terms and conceive of it as flowing along the fiber tracts like steam in a pipe, then we may believe that this force has to be maintained at a certain tension in order that the perceptions from the outside world may be appreciated at their true value. If attention is lowered the perceptions are not acute. This lack of acuteness gives origin to feelings on the part of the patient of incompleteness and insufficiency. Now this state of affairs involves a certain deficiency in the perception of reality which requires a certain concentration and complexity of content, in other words, a high psychological tension.

This lowering of psychological tension, feelings of incompleteness and deficiency in the "*function of the real*" constitutes the fundamental feature of all this class of phenomena.

To use another illustration. I have said that the perception of reality required a high psychological tension. It is as if the normal response to reality were represented by the explosion of say 100 grains of gunpowder: the psychasthenic response would be represented by 70 grains. In other words, unless the tension is high, the potential up to a certain point, the resulting explosion is an inadequate reaction, gives but a faint idea of what it really should be.

The psychasthenic symptoms are based upon this inadequate perception of reality. The hazy view of the world resulting from the lowered psychological tension results in hazy, inaccurate ways of thinking. The trends toward mysticism in art and literature are results in point. While lack of efficient perception makes the world of reality seem strange, unknowable, and at times of stress it seems to the psychasthenic that this vast external world of reality would close in upon him and crush him. It is the strange, the not understood, the mysterious of which we are afraid and so are accounted for the states of fear and anguish.

The lowered tension gives rise to various symptoms in proportion to the degree of lowering. If the mental functions are erected into a hierarchy in proportion to the difficulty of their accomplishment, it will be seen that the accurate estimation of reality stands first, revery and imagination come lower down, and muscular movements last. As the tension is lowered reactions will tend to follow in the order of this psychological hierarchy.

Psychasthenia stands midway between epilepsy and hysteria. In both psychasthenia and epilepsy the fundamental condition JANET thinks is this lowering of psychological tension. In epilepsy this lowering is sudden, very profound, leading even to unconsciousness, and is then practically completely recovered from, while in psychasthenia it is more or less constant but of much less degree. Thus psychasthenia is attenuated and chronic epilepsy. Hysteria, on the other hand, is characterized by a "retraction of the field of consciousness." While in psychasthenia the defect is more or less uniform over the whole field of consciousness, in hysteria the portions of the field retained may be quite up to normal or even hypernormal.

The classification of the various symptoms of psychasthenia is difficult because of their multiplicity and variability. Using the word obsessions in a broad sense to include the conditions I have described as obsessions, fixed ideas and impulses, in the chapter on General Symptomatology, because of the desirability of considering them under different heads, we may divide obsessions into *emotional*, *intellectual* and *volitional*, in accordance with their predominating characters, realizing meantime that the distinctions are only general ones and the lines of differentiation not hard and fast.

Emotional obsessions include the various *phobias* and the *morbid desires*. Some of the more common phobias are *agoraphobia*, fear of open places—the subject is afraid to cross an open square, hugs to railings and keeps close to the houses. *Claustrophobia*, fear of close spaces, crowded rooms. *Astraphobia*, fear of thunder and lightning. *Aërophobia*, fear of being in high places, etc.

These phobias come on suddenly, overwhelm the patient, who is seized with trembling, pallor, sweating and all the signs of fear, despite the fact that he appreciates fully meantime that there is no reason for fear but has a full understanding of the morbid character of his obsessions.

The morbid desires are in the main the desires for liquor and drugs. In *dipsomania* the patient has periodical attacks of discomfort, often with feeling of pressure on the head and tachycardia; this continues to grow worse until the desire to take liquor is yielded to. We have somewhat similar conditions with desire for morphine, cocaine, etc.

Volitional obsessions include the various *manias*. Some of the more common manias are kleptomania—impulses to theft, the patient often taking what is not wanted and what he could afford to buy. *Pyromania*, an impulse to set fire to things. *Arithmomania*, the impulse to count everything, the letters in a word, objects passed in the street, etc. *Onomatomania*, the obsession of a word, usually the impulse to repeat it over and over again or to seek for it in one's memory.

These manias, as in dipsomania, make the patient uncomfortable until yielded to; although the patient appreciates the abnormal character of the obsession, the tendency has finally to be yielded to. This is the characteristic described by the German Zwang.

Intellectual obsessions are the obsessions which do not lead to action and which have not a large emotional control. Here would be included the *doubters*, who are always asking themselves questions about trivial things, though often in regard to religious matters, wondering if there is a God and the like. The so-called *metaphysicians* especially are occupied with abstract questions on the nature of the universe, problems of matter and mind and the like.

RÉGIS¹³ makes a class of *aboulie obsessions* which lead to inhibition of all action, producing such symptoms as *astasia-abasia*—inability to stand and walk. This symptom, however, is usually hysterical.

The peculiarity of all psychasthenic symptoms is that they occur with clear consciousness, the patient fully recognizing their abnormal nature.

Course and Prognosis.—The course of psychasthenia is episodic and the outlook in the main is not very good as to recovery, as there is usually a pronounced neuropathic basis for the symptoms. The psychasthenic, like the neurasthenic state, is found associated with many conditions and as part of various psychoses.

Treatment.—The treatment should be directed to improving the general health, but the main line of treatment is mental and requires the most detailed regulation and reëducation of the mental life.

A rational psychotherapy is indicated. This should include a careful regulation of the mental life within the powers of the individual, a getting away from old and vicious habits of thought

¹³ Régis: A Practical Manual of Mental Medicine, 1898.

by being shown their error, but, better, by being directed into new channels. The treatment involves a reëducation and is quite as delicate and skillful a matter as the reëducation of the muscular habits in ticquers. It is no field for the novice, much less the charlatan.

Compulsion Neurosis.—A very similar mechanism to that of hysteria, according to FREUD, is at work in the compulsion neurosis. He classifies the phobias and obsessions under this heading instead of following the lead of JANET and considering them as symptoms of psychasthenia.

In this class of cases the affect, instead of being converted into physical symptoms, is changed over by *displacement* to some indifferent idea. The disagreeable idea thus remains suppressed but the patient cannot understand the insistence and emotional coloring of the idea to which the affect has been displaced.

FREUD¹⁴ believes the complex in this case as in hysteria has its origin in the sexual life and says: "The obsession represents a compensation or substitute for the unbearable sexual idea, and takes its place in consciousness."

Anxiety Neurosis of Freud.¹⁵—Out of the great mass of material composing the psychoneuroses and which otherwise would be classed as neurasthenia, hysteria, or psychasthenia, FREUD has separated out certain cases which he thinks have a definite grouping of symptoms and so are entitled to consideration as a nosological entity.

The symptoms of this neurosis are in the main a *general irritability, anxious expectation, vertigo, phobias, and paræsthesias*. The anxiety aside from being more or less constant in the form of anxious expectation, or apprehension, comes in attacks which are of various forms, the principal ones of which are *cardiac disturbances, respiratory disturbances, profuse perspiration, trembling and shaking, inordinate appetite* often with *dizziness, diarrhea, locomotor dizziness, congestions* (vasomotor neurasthenia), *paræsthesias*.

Unlike hysteria and the compulsion neurosis the origin of the

¹⁴ Freud: Selected Papers on Hysteria and Other Psychoneuroses, Nerv. and Ment. Dis. Monogr. Series, No. 4. Cited by Brill: Freud's Conception of the Psychoneuroses, N. Y. Med. Record, Dec. 25, 1909.

¹⁵ Freud: Selected Papers on Hysteria and Other Psychoneuroses, Nerv. and Ment. Dis. Monogr. Series, No. 4.

trouble is not in the psychic sphere but in a lack of harmonious adjustment of the physiological functions of the sexual organs. This failure of physiological adjustment manifests itself in the psychic sphere as anxiety. The anxiety not having a mental origin is free to unite with any idea. There comes to be then "a quantum of freely floating anxiety which controls the choice of ideas by expectation and is forever ready to unite itself with any suitable ideation."¹⁶

Psychopathic Constitution.—There are many anomalies of character which because normal or usual to the individual cannot be said to properly constitute a psychosis, but because they lead to a rather inefficient type of adjustment of the individual to his environment, and because persons exhibiting these peculiarities often become actively disordered, may be considered as borderland conditions.

We have already in previous chapters, learned something of the *hysteric* and *epileptic* characters. We know the general type of inefficiency of the *neurasthenic* and latterly have described the *psychasthenic* character, and attention has been called to the *unresistive* and the *post-traumatic* types with the intolerance of alcohol and fever. We probably also have a *manic-depressive* type and lately we have had our attention directed to the "*shut-in*" type as the type par excellence found in those cases which develop dementia precox.

Besides these there are the "*cranks*," who, with some pet scheme, closely approach the paranoiac type and that host of *ill-balanced, eccentric* individuals who may be superficially brilliant but lack continuity of purpose and capacity for the continuous expenditure of effort in any one direction. Their life, to use the well chosen words of RÉGIS,¹⁷ is one "long contradiction between the apparent wealth of means and poverty of results."

We have also the *pathological liar*, or *pseudologia phantastica*, and certain types of *swindlers*.

Constitutional anomalies of mood are seen, those who are always depressed for no particular reason—*psychopathic depression*—and the opposite state—*psychopathic exaltation*. Other cases never seem to be quite able to successfully cope with con-

¹⁶ Freud: Selected Papers on Hysteria and Other Psychoneuroses, Nerv. and Ment. Dis. Monogr. Series, No. 4.

¹⁷ Régis: A Practical Manual of Mental Medicine, 1898.

ditions; they are the failures of life, the cases of *constitutional inferiority*.

Conditions of *psychogenic depression* occur quite often in psychopathic individuals. Should a beautiful young woman severely scald her face, so that a permanent disfigurement was inevitable, a considerable depression would be quite natural. Should the depression lead to suicidal attempts and perhaps delusions, the psychopathic basis would be evident. Many weak characters who are led into crime develop a symptomatic depression when caught and sentenced. More pronounced defects of character are seen in the *criminal* classes, many of whom lack the ordinary moral inhibitions and are properly *moral imbeciles*.

There are many psychogenic states that occur in psychopathic individuals—*degenerates*. The so-called *prison psychoses*¹⁸ are types and come about as the patient's reaction to the difficulties in which he finds himself. They may be hysterical, catatonic, paranoid, according to the type of individual. They clear up promptly when the stress is removed—pardon, expiration of sentence, commutation of death sentence, etc.

'ANOMALIES OF THE SEXUAL INSTINCT.

Quantitative Anomalies.—These are *frigidity* or lack of desire for sexual congress—*sexual anæsthesia*—or *eroticism*—*sexual hyperæsthesia*.

Qualitative Anomalies.—These are *inversions* and *perversions*. Inversion consists of a lack of harmony between the physical and the psychical sex and leads to *homosexuality* or desire for persons of the same sex. Various physical anomalies are often found in these persons. For example, the general conformation of the body, pilosity, etc., may indicate one sex, while the genitalia are of the other.

Sex inheritance is *alternative*. That is both male and female characters are present in the germ and only one normally develops. Sometimes there seems to be an uncertainty as to which will develop and the result is a certain mixture which may take place either in the bodily or psychic sphere alone or in both.

¹⁸ Glueck: A Contribution to the Study of Psychogenesis in the Psychoses, Am. Jour. Insanity, Jan., 1912.

The perversions are many and include the various abnormal means of gratifying the sexual appetite.

With respect both to inversion and perversion we must remember that in the young child the sexual sense has not developed and later as it develops and comes into prominence it differentiates and tends to specialize by centering its aims in a special direction, *i. e.*, towards the opposite sex and normal coitus. The child, before this takes place, is, to use a term of FREUD'S *polymorphous-perverse*. He may be developed in any direction by appropriate influences or he may stay in the undeveloped, infantile stage.

The most important of the perversions are:

Masturbation.—Masturbation is very frequent among psychopaths and very often a result rather than a cause of mental anomalies though undoubtedly an important factor in some cases of acute psychosis. A transient period of onanism in infancy is probably normal and serves to focalize the sexual sensations on the normal erogenous zones.¹⁹

Active Allogagnia (Sadism).—The gratification of the sexual feeling by the infliction or sight of pain—real or simulated—in the latter case the sadism is *symbolic*. As the male is normally the more active and aggressive in the sexual relation we find, as might be expected, this anomaly more frequently in men.

Passive Allogagnia (Masochism).—The gratification of the sexual feeling by suffering pain—real or simulated. In the latter case it is *symbolic*. The female, being the more passive of the two sexes in the sexual relation, so we find an exaggeration of this passivity more common among women.

Homosexuality.—Sexual desire for the same sex.

Narcissism.—A form of homosexuality in which a person is desired who has the family resemblance.

Fetichism.—Sexual excitement and gratification by the sight, contact or possession of some object or part of the body. The object is usually some wearing apparel, such as shoes, handkerchief, petticoat or a part of the body other than the sexual organs.

Bestiality.—Sexual relation with animals.

Exhibitionism.—Sexual gratification by exposing the genital organs.

Necrophilia.—The desire to have sexual congress with a dead body.

¹⁹ Freud: Three Contributions to the Sexual Theory, No. 7 of this series.

CHAPTER XVIII.

IDIOCY AND IMBECILITY.

In drawing a distinction between dementia and idiocy, ESQUIROL well said: "The demented man is deprived of the good that he formerly enjoyed; he is a rich man become poor; the idiot has always lived in misfortune and poverty." The idiot, the imbecile, the feeble-minded lack something; the insane are suffering from a disorder of that which they possess.

The distinction is here clearly drawn between a psychosis and idiocy and imbecility. The former is a breaking down, a disorder of mind, the other is the result of a certain lack of mind. In making this distinction we must not lose sight of the fact that the feeble-minded, imbecile and idiot may develop a psychosis, and transient attacks of mental disturbance of this sort are not infrequently observed among them.

The various grades of idiocy and imbecility may take their origin at any point in the development of the individual, during intrauterine life, at birth as a result of injury, after birth as a result of injury or disease which interferes with further development.

Thus various defect conditions fall rather naturally into certain groups, but the same difficulty is experienced in endeavoring to classify them from any one standpoint, as was experienced in the realm of the psychoses. They have been classified under the following heads.

Feeble-mindedness.—A condition of slight mental defectiveness capable of much improvement by educational methods. The afflicted individual may ultimately take a place in the world and be self-supporting under favorable circumstances.

Imbecility.—A condition of mental deficiency which can, however, be materially improved by training, but not sufficiently for the subject to take a place in the world.

Moral Imbecility is a condition of mental defectiveness which is shown predominantly in the absence of the highest functions,

particularly the moral; capable of training to a considerable degree, but always a menace to society.

Idio-Imbecility is a condition midway between idiocy and imbecility.

Idiocy is a condition of profound mental defectiveness. The lower grades are unteachable, while the higher may be trained slightly in self-help, *i. e.*, to attend to the calls of nature.

More recently a definite effort has been made, by means of the Binet-Simon measuring scale of intelligence, to determine the exact psychological age of the child as distinguished from its chronological age (see Chap. XXI). In accordance with the results attained by this scale the American Association for the Study of the Feeble-minded have defined the terms idiot and imbecile anew. An *idiot* possesses a degree of mentality that does not go beyond the normal child of three years, an *imbecile* can not go beyond seven years, and from seven to twelve inclusive the individual is known as a *moron*.

Cause.—The causes of idiocy, like those of the psychoses, are numerous and varied. Hereditary defects are found in the ascendants in a large proportion of cases. Accidents and injuries, especially those associated with prolonged labor and instrumental delivery, are common causes, while diseases involving the brain, such as the acute infections—pneumonia, typhoid, the exanthemata—and syphilis often play a rôle. Alcoholism in one or both parents, especially drunkenness at the time of conception, is probably a very frequent factor, while any infection, including syphilis, or debilitating condition of the parents is important. Fright of the mother probably is a potent factor as indicated by the statistics of births during sieges.

The popular idea that consanguineous marriages are productive of idiocy in the offspring is not borne out by statistics. Consanguineous marriages are probably no more dangerous than any others. They would only produce unduly direful results when a bad family strain is present in both parties and is thus cumulative in the offspring.

General Considerations.—The symptoms which should attract attention to the mental state of a child, aside from marked physical abnormalities, are a stupid and vacant look, prolonged and unprovoked crying and difficulty in taking the breast.

Later on it is noticeable that the several faculties do not develop when they should. The child neither learns to walk or to talk as early as other children, and a study of other psychic qualities would develop the same fact. The degree of defect may be measured by the stage of development reached as compared with the average normal child. For such detailed comparisons the student is referred to special works.

The idiot is usually comparatively quiet or very excitable and has been correspondingly classified generally as *apathetic* and *excitable*. Certain of the excitable idiots keep up certain definite and characteristic movements almost continuously—these are the *rhythmic idiots*. Many other motor anomalies are found frequently, such as paralysis, athetosis and epilepsy.

The well-recognized clinical types, most of which have been known for many years, will be briefly described as follows:

Amaurotic Family Idiocy.—This form of idiocy, described by Sachs, seems to occur almost exclusively among Jewish children. The principal symptoms are idiocy, paralysis, usually spastic, of all four extremities and progressive blindness from optic nerve atrophy. The patients usually die during infancy.

Thyroigenous Idiocy.—This form includes idiocy due to endemic and sporadic cretinism and also cases due to myxedema. They present the characteristic symptoms of these diseases with those of idiocy.

Hydrocephalic Idiocy.—Idiocy associated with hydrocephaly. Although hydrocephalus usually leads to early death, life may be prolonged to an advanced age and marked degrees of the malady may occur without the profound defects of idiocy. A case of most pronounced hydrocephalus recently died in the hospital upwards of fifty years of age. During his earlier life he had made a livelihood by the simple process of ringing a church bell. During the latter months of his life he deteriorated very profoundly, became absolutely blind and deaf, unable to lift his tremendous head from the pillow and died in coma. All of the symptoms were undoubtedly due to the pressure, as the brain was found post-mortem to be little else than a bag of water.

Microcephalic Idiocy.—Idiocy associated with extreme smallness of head. No definite rule can of course be laid down as to the definite size of head that shall be considered as microcephalic,

but IRELAND¹ says in general that all heads below seventeen inches in circumference (431 millimeters) may be so considered.

Paralytic Idiocy.—Idiocy associated with paralysis. The commoner paralyses are the monoplegias and diplegias. These conditions are consequent upon gross cerebral lesions, such as the lack of cerebral substance, resulting in a cyst connected with the ventricle—*true porencephalus*, or due to cysts not connecting with the ventricles and resulting from softening, hemorrhage or inflammation—*false porencephalus*. It depends entirely upon the location of the lesions as to the symptoms.

Epileptic Idiocy.—Idiocy with epilepsy. Epilepsy is a common associate of idiocy, especially in those cases where there are gross cerebral lesions as in the paralytic idiots. The term epileptic idiocy should be reserved for those cases where the idiocy may reasonably be supposed to depend on the epilepsy.

Traumatic Idiocy.—Idiocy the result of trauma. The most common traumas are those associated with prolonged and difficult labor with instrumental delivery.

Sensorial Idiocy.—Idiocy by deprivation. This is the idiocy that results when a child is deprived of two or more of the principal senses, such as sight and hearing. 'As knowledge and education are dependent in the first instance upon the integrity of the sensorium, such a serious defect, making it impossible for the child to receive the material out of which knowledge is elaborated, results in a lack of development of the mind.

Inflammatory Idiocy.—Here we find idiocy due to the various forms of inflammatory conditions of the brain and meninges. The cause of these inflammations may be any of the infectious fevers, as pneumonia, typhoid, the exanthemata. The inflammation may be meningitic or include the brain proper, as in Strümpell's infantile encephalitis of the motor region analogous to anterior poliomyelitis. The physical symptoms vary according to the location and the extent of destruction of tissue resulting.

Sclerotic Idiocy.—Idiocy found not infrequently associated with the condition known as *tuberous sclerosis*. These cases usually die young, being greatly reduced by frequent epileptic attacks. The post-mortem discloses numerous areas of firm con-

¹ Ireland: The Mental Affections of Children, Idiocy, Imbecility, and Insanity. London, 1898.

sistence and white color in which the nervous elements are lacking. The cause of the condition is not fully determined.

Idiots-Savants.—These are rare cases who, although idiots, still have some special faculty wonderfully developed. It may be music, calculation, memory for some certain variety of facts, etc.

The calculators can name the answer to mathematical problems almost instantly; the musical prodigies often play well and even improvise; one of my cases could instantly name the day of the week for any date for years back. Many of these cases have a capacity for mimicry and buffoonery, and from this class undoubtedly were recruited, in the old days, many of the court fools.

The psychology of these cases is not understood. The patients themselves are quite unable to give an explanation of their abilities.

Idiots are further spoken of by general descriptive terms that indicate their resemblance to certain types. Thus we have the *Mongolian*, *American Indian* and *Negroid* types.

A considerable deal of study has been devoted of late years to all sorts of defective conditions. Some of them I have mentioned elsewhere. In this connection I will call attention to certain developmental conditions in which the body, or the mind, or both, retain the child-like type. These conditions of *infantilism* are distinctly higher in the scale than the various types discussed above. Anton² has specially studied these cases, and divides infantilism into general and partial. Under the causes of general infantilism he lays particular stress upon the balanced relations of the ductless glands. In the cases of partial infantilism he calls attention to the cases with lack of development of the sexual organs, the cardiovascular system, the vocal organs, the hair, and finally describes a form of pure psychic infantilism.

Course and Prognosis.—The condition of these defectives usually remains stationary, though sometimes severe epilepsy or severe illness may reduce them still further. Some may actually develop psychoses with hallucinations, abnormal activities, and, if the mentality permits, delusions. The prognosis is absolutely bad as to recovery and poor even as to life, the mortality of idiots being far above that of the general population.

² Anton: Vier Vorträge über Entwicklungsstörungen beim Kinde, Berlin, 1908.

Treatment.—Aside from the thyroid treatment in the cretinous forms the main treatment is educational. This can, of course, only develop what is already there and in the main should be practical, teaching the child to care for itself. The most is to be hoped for in the sensory types, where there may be no real defect of brain, only an absence of sense organs. The well-known cases of Laura Bridgman and Helen Keller illustrate the wonderful results that may be accomplished in this class of cases. To get results at all requires in the highest degree patience, tireless application and ingenuity, qualities few persons possess.

CHAPTER XIX.

PRINCIPLES AND METHODS OF EXAMINATION.

In no department of medicine is a complete examination of the patient more important than in the department of psychiatry. This examination must not only include the symptoms that the patient may present when seen, but must also include the most detailed obtainable anamnesis. It must be borne in mind that a psychosis is a condition of an individual who was previously sane and that above all it is not a something that comes from without, attacks and seizes on the patient like, for example, a pathogenic microorganism, but is rather to be considered as a type of reaction of the individual to certain inimical conditions. In order, therefore, to understand a particular case it is of the highest importance to have, as fully as possible, a conception of the individual before he became afflicted, so that we may understand the symptoms which are the expressions of this reaction.

The scheme of examination which follows is directed primarily to elucidating the mental state. It is taken for granted that the student is familiar with the various methods of physical examination. The omission of specific directions as to the physical examination is not, however, to be taken as an indication that it is considered unimportant. On the contrary a physical examination in minute detail is of the utmost importance and unless it is made the risk is bound to be run that the key to the whole situation will be overlooked.

Mental disorders at best are obscure phenomena and no pains should be spared to illuminate them from every quarter. It is not, of course, expected that every possible physical test will be applied to each case. For example, it would be quite foolish to stain for the malarial parasite unless there was some clinical evidence of malarial infection. The usual examination of heart, lungs and urine should, however, be made in each instance. Similarly with the neurological examination: Trousseau's or Chvostek's signs would hardly be thought of unless tetany were suspected, while in every case the reaction of the pupils to light and accom-

modation and the patellar tendon reflex should be recorded and in patients suspected of organic brain disease or paresis the Babinski reflex and Biernacki's sign would be examined for.

In indicating what is important to bring out in the examination, the specific character of the information desired is set forth for the most part by questions, while for more detailed information special tests, which are given in full, have been devised.

The complete examination will be considered under the following five headings, the first three of which relate entirely to the anamnesis and the last two to the examination of the patient himself.

- I. HISTORY OF THE FAMILY.
- II. HISTORY OF THE PATIENT.
- III. HISTORY OF THE PRESENT ILLNESS.
- IV. GENERAL OBSERVATION OF THE PATIENT.
- V. SPECIAL EXAMINATION OF THE PATIENT.
 - A. PHYSICAL.
 - B. NEUROLOGICAL.
 - C. MENTAL.

}	GENERAL.
}	SPECIAL.
}	SPECIAL TESTS.

I. HISTORY OF FAMILY.

Parents:

Were parents of patient related, or did they differ greatly in age?

Mental Characteristics of Father and Mother:

What were their mental characteristics (*i. e.*, disposition, temperament, etc.)?

Did either have extraordinary gifts, one-sided talents, or abnormal traits?

Nervous and Mental Disorders:

Was either nervous? What were the symptoms?

Did either have convulsions?

Did either have periodical headaches, migraine or hemicrania?

Was either neurasthenic?

Was either ever insane?

Was either at any time a patient in a hospital for nervous or mental diseases? Where? When, and how long did he or she remain? What age at the time? How long after or before the patient was born?

Did either have any other disorders (tics, etc.)?

Other Diseases:

Did either have constitutional diseases? Syphilis? Tuberculosis? Diabetes? Arthritis?

Alcohol:

Was either addicted to the use of alcohol? How much did they take (in day, week, month, etc.)?

How long was it taken (years)?

What was the result? Did either have delirium tremens?

Crime and Suicide:

Was either a criminal? What crimes did either commit? Was he or she punished by law? What was the punishment?

Did either commit or attempt suicide? Under what circumstances?

*Defects of Siblings:*¹

Did the siblings of either father or mother die young? What were the causes of death?

Were the siblings of either congenitally deformed? Were any blind? Deaf? Dumb?

Did siblings of either have convulsions or other nervous disease?

Were any insane, or patients in a hospital for nervous or mental diseases?

Grandparents:

If there appears to be a hereditary taint, get details as in the above questions for both the maternal and the paternal grandparents.

Siblings of Patient:

Are or were there siblings of patient? Give in order (noting male and female), and get age, if living, or age at and cause of death. Inquire regarding nervous and mental diseases as in questions above.

II. HISTORY OF PATIENT.

Full Name and Age:

(In years and months.)

Address:

What is the address of the patient? How long has he lived there?

¹ Siblings is a convenient term used to denote children of the same parent.

Occupation:

What is the business, profession or occupation of the patient?

How long has he been thus occupied?

What previous occupations has he had? Get the details of how long he has retained each position, how successful he was in each one, and why he left.

Birth:

At the time of the birth of the patient did the mother have difficult labor? Were instruments used? What was the cause of the obstetrical difficulty?

Early Childhood:

Had the patient convulsions in childhood? How old was he or she when these began? How many years did they continue? How long was each seizure? Give details regarding their character (*e. g.*, loss of consciousness; local or general; how brought on; etc.).

Had the patient rickets?

What other diseases in childhood did the patient have? When, and with what result?

When did he learn to walk?

When did he learn to talk?

School:

When did he first attend school? Where did he go? How long did he remain at school? Why did he leave? In school was he bright, average, or stupid?

Injuries and Diseases in Later Life:

Has the patient had any head injuries or convulsions (*i. e.*, beyond what was mentioned in answer to question above)?

Has he had gonorrhea?

Has he had syphilis?

What treatment for the latter did he receive, and what were the after effects?

What other diseases has patient had? What were the after effects?

Alcohol:

Has patient taken alcohol in any form (beer, wine, whiskey, tonic, medicine, etc.)? How much of each has he taken, by the day, week, or month? How long has he been taking alcohol? Has he become drunk? Has he ever had delirium

tremens? Has the alcohol made him pleasant or disagreeable?

Other Habits:

Has the patient taken drugs, such as cocaine, morphine, opium, or any others for long periods of time?

Has he used tobacco? Did he smoke, chew or snuff? How much tobacco did he use in a day; in a week?

Marriage and Children:

Is or has the patient been married? When was he married?

Is the (husband) wife still living? How many times has he been married?

Has the married life been happy? If not, why not?

Has the patient or wife any gynecological or menstrual difficulties? When did catamenia begin? Has it been regular? When did catamenia end?

Has the patient or wife had abortions or miscarriages? Give the details (.How often, when, and how were they brought about?)

How many children has patient had? Give them in order, noting sex, ages, nervous and mental diseases, etc.

Previous Attacks:

Has the patient had similar attacks before? What were the symptoms? How long did the condition last? Did he go to a hospital for nervous or mental diseases?

If he has not had similar attacks before, inquire if he has had periods of depression or of exaltation, how long these lasted, what was done during these attacks, etc.

Get any further details about the disposition of the patient; how he got on with his companions, whether or not he was sociable, moody, inclined to look on the bright or the dark side of things, etc.

III. HISTORY OF THE PRESENT ILLNESS.

Cause and Onset:

Did the present illness come on as the result of an accident or disease? Did the patient have a physical or a mental shock? Has he been under extraordinary strain for some time? Is the present attack thought to be due to excess of any sort? Specify.

Did the attack come on gradually or suddenly?

General Physical and Mental Changes:

Has there been a change of character in the patient? Has he been agreeable to his wife (husband) and children, to friends and neighbors?

Has he appeared to be dazed, or quiet, or restless? Has he been excited?

Has he been tidy in feeding and in his other habits?

Has he spoken much or little, or has he been dumb?

Has he slept well? How many hours has he slept each night?

Has he slept regularly?

Has he eaten well, or little? Has he had a perverse or abnormal appetite? Has he taken his meals regularly? Does he give any explanation for his poor appetite or his refusal to eat food?

What was the patient's weight before the illness began?

What other changes in the physical condition of the patient have been noted since the beginning of the illness? Has he been tremulous in hands or in speech? Has he become bald or has the hair whitened?

Emotional Condition:

Has the patient been depressed, or unduly joyful, or apathetic?

Has he been passionate, or inclined to anger, or threatening?

Hallucinations and Delusions:

Has he heard imaginary voices? What have they said?

Did he go through the house looking under the beds and the furniture, and in the cupboards? Did he listen in corners, or at the walls? Did he look at definite points for some time?

Has he had ideas of persecution, or of grandeur?

Do the delusions change?

Suicide and Homicide:

Has he made attempts at suicide; at homicide? What were the exciting causes?

Intellectual and Memory Defects:

Has he shown any intellectual defect? Has he been able to carry on his business in the proper manner? Has he made peculiar or ill-advised purchases?

Has he shown any defect in memory? Has he remembered his business engagements? Does he recognize his friends or

relatives? Does he mistake persons? Has he kept track of the days of the week and of the month? Has he known where he has been?

Moral and Legal Laxness:

Has the patient offended against the law; against morality?

How did he so offend and with what result?

Insight:

Has he understood that he has been mentally different than he is normally? Does he appreciate the nature of his disorder?

Miscellaneous:

Has the patient any indications of stereotypy, or of catalepsy, of apparent playfulness, of impulsive actions?

Add any other information that the informant can give regarding mental changes in the patient.

Note the name and address of the informant, and the relation he bears to the patient.

IV. GENERAL OBSERVATION OF THE PATIENT.

Is he in bed, about the ward, on parole?

Facial Expression:

Does the patient look sad, fearful, gay, hostile, suspicious, visionary, expressionless, intent, arrogant, sleepy, cyanotic, demented?

Movements:

Are there movements of the body, of the head, of the face? Is there Schnauzkrampf? Are there rhythmic quiverings of the mouth? Are there wrinklins of the forehead? Are there stereotyped movements?

Does the patient walk straight and to some purpose? Does he walk irregularly or go from one thing to another? Does he go slowly or quickly?

Appearance and Demeanor:

How does he carry his hands? Is his hair tidy or unkempt? Is he fully dressed, half-dressed, or naked? Is his clothing well kept? Does it show that he has been untidy in feeding and in drinking? Do the clothes fit the patient?

Mental Observations:

Did he voluntarily complain of ill-being, or ill-treatment, or speak of his delusions, or his feelings?

Was he coherent?

Was it difficult to keep him on the line of questioning?

Did he coöperate in the mental and physical examinations, or did he raise objections to them?

How did he receive the visits of the physicians?

V. SPECIAL EXAMINATIONS OF THE PATIENT.

A. PHYSICAL EXAMINATION.

Status Corporis.

Form, nutrition.

Skin, scars (penis), inside of mouth (mucous patches, scars on side of tongue from teeth, absence of papillæ).

Decubitis.

Bones and joints.

Respiratory system, lungs.

Circulatory system, heart, œdema, cyanosis of dependent parts.

Genito-urinary system, urinalysis (always).

Gastro-intestinal organs, stomach contents.

Glands.

Blood, pressure, hæmoglobin, erythrocytes, leucocytes.

Abdomen.

B. NEUROLOGICAL EXAMINATION.

Sensation.

Touch:

touch threshold on the head, neck, arms, hands, legs, feet, abdomen, chest.

accuracy of localization on the head, neck, arms, legs, feet, abdomen, chest.

double point threshold on the head, neck, arms, hands, legs, feet, abdomen, chest.

Pressure:

discrimination.

Pain:

threshold on the head, neck, arms, hands, legs, feet, abdomen, chest.

Temperature :

- perception of temperatures.
- perception of differences.

Stereognostic sense.

Joint and muscle sense :

- passive movements.
- active movements.

Organic sensations :

- hunger.
- thirst.
- fatigue.
- sexual.
- desire for urination.
- desire for defecation.

Subjective organic sensations :

- formication.
- hyperesthesia.
- hyperalgesia.
- anesthesia.
- analgesia.
- feeling of reality.

Movement:

- a. rapidity of movement.
- b. accuracy of movement.
- c. force of movement.
- d. limited movements.
- e. movements of special parts.
 - gait—spastic, steppage, ataxic, cerebellar, hemiplegic, propulsive.

CRANIAL NERVES.

I. *Olfactory*.

Smell :

- tests with solutions.
- subjective smells, referred to self or environment?

II. *Optic*.

Vision :

- visual acuity.
- visual fields ; hemianopia, contractions?

color vision.
 entoptic phenomena.
 ophthalmoscopic examination.
 hallucinations, character?

III, IV, VI. *Oculo-motor, Patheticus, Abducens.*

Movements of eyes in all directions.

Squint.

Diplopia.

Ptosis.

Nystagmus:

horizontal.

vertical.

rotary.

Pupils:

size.

outline, regular or irregular.

reaction to light.

reaction to accommodation.

consensual reflex.

sympathetic reflex.

V. *Trigeminus.*

Corneal, conjunctival, palpebral reflexes.

Supraorbital, infraorbital, mental points of exit
 sensitive or not.

Chewing movements.

Taste:

bitter, sweet, salt, sour.

subjective tastes, before or after meals.

VII. *Facial.*

Facial symmetry—in repose, in smiling, in
 wrinkling forehead, in showing teeth.

Naso-labial folds. are both equally marked?

Whistling, puffing cheeks.

Movements of lips in showing teeth (tremor).

Tremor about mouth under emotion or in say-
 ing difficult words (test phrases).

Atrophy.

Paralysis.

VIII. *Acoustic.*

Hearing:

acute, subacute, or deaf?
 test of air and bone conduction.
 high and low tones.
 subjective noises, voices?

Vertigo:

subjective.
 objective.

IX, X, XI. *Glossopharyngeal, Vagus, Accessory.*

Palate at rest, in phonation.
 Swallowing.
 Pharyngeal reflex.

XII. *Hypoglossal.*

Movements of tongue on protrusion (hesitation—trombone tongue).
 Position of protruded tongue.
 Tremor—fibrillary or en masse?
 Atrophy.

UPPER EXTREMITY.

Atrophy.

Hypertrophy.

Muscular spasm or hypotonia.

Muscular force—dynamometer.

Tremor: at rest, intention.

F. N. T. finger nose test.

F. F. T. finger finger test.

Reflexes: triceps, radial periosteal.

Sense of position of joints.

Stereognosis.

Adiadokokinesis.

Sensitiveness of nerve trunks.

TRUNK.

Atrophy.

Hypertrophy.

Paresis.

Dermographia.

Reflexes: cremasteric, epigastric, bladder, anal.

Tender points: vertebræ, breast, ovarian.

Boisseau.

LOWER EXTREMITY.

Atrophy.

Hypertrophy.

Muscular spasm or hypotonia.

Muscular force.

Reflexes: patellar, contralateral adductor, Achilles tendon, plantar.

Babinski toe sign.

Ankle clonus.

Nerve trunk sensitiveness.

Lesègue.

Romberg.

K. H. T.: knee heel test.

Sense of position of joints.

Gait—eyes open and closed.

C. MENTAL EXAMINATION OF PATIENT.

General Memory and Orientation:

What is your full name?

Where were you born? Where do you live?

What is your age?

In what year were you born?

What year is this? What month is this? What day of the month? What day of the week is it?

(If the answers to the foregoing questions are not consistent, try to get the patient to explain the discrepancy.)

What city is this? What place is this? How far from your home is this?

When did you come here? How long have you been here?

Who brought you here? How did you come?

What did you do when you arrived?

Whom did you see when you arrived? Did you ever see me before? What is my name? What is his (other physician's) name?

When did you get up this morning? Did you have breakfast? What did you have? Did you have

dinner? Did you have supper? What did you have for those meals?

Has anyone visited you? Who was it? Is he a relative? When did he come?

General Understanding and Insight:

What kind of a place is this? What kinds of people are here? Who are they (patients)?

Who are they (nurses and attendants)? Who am I, or who are we (physicians)?

Why are you here? Did you want to come?

Is there anything wrong with you? Are you sick?

Do you feel quite well? Is your mind all right?

Special Memory:

Family: What are the names of your parents? Are they living? Where do they live? What was the name of your mother before she was married? How many brothers and sisters did you have? Give their names? Are they all living? Which ones are dead? Of what did they die? How old were they at time of death? Where do those living live? What do they do?

School: Where did you first go to school? What age were you at that time? What other schools did you attend? Give the names of some of your teachers.

Occupations: What is your occupation? When did you first go to work? What age were you? What year was that? What other work have you done? Give the dates and the time for each position that you have had, and tell why you left each place?

Marriage and Children: Are you married? When were you married? How long ago is that? What was your wife's (or your) maiden name? Have you children? When were they born? How many are now living? How old are those now living? What are their names? Where do they live? How many are dead? How old were those that died? Of what diseases did they die?

Has your wife (or you) had miscarriages or abortions?

Diseases: What diseases did you have as a child? Did you ever have convulsions? In these did you lose consciousness? Did you ever have a blow on the head or a fall? Have you had syphilis? Were you treated for this? How long ago did you have it and how long did the treatment continue? Did your hair fall out? Did you have sores on your penis (or vulva) and other parts of the body? Other details of the effects of the syphilis.

Alcohol: Do you take alcohol in any form? How much do you take (number of glasses a day or week)? Have you ever been drunk? Have you ever had delirium tremens?

Other Drugs: Have you ever taken cocaine or morphine? How long have you taken them? How much have you taken in a day?

SPECIAL EXAMINATION ABOUT THE PRESENT CONDITION :

SPECIAL INSIGHT INTO THE CONDITION :

Emotional: Do you feel all right, or depressed, or excited, or indifferent? Are you always this way? If not, how are you at other times? How were you six months ago? When did this feeling begin? What was the cause of it? Did it come on suddenly? Are you sad or afraid?

- a. Have you had any peculiar experiences?
- b. Is anything being done to you or has anything been done to you to make you sad or afraid?
- c. If not, why are you sad or afraid?
- d. What do you fear?
- e. Do you think you are being watched, or talked about?
- f. Have people been persecuting you, or have they tried to poison you, or to rob you, or to influence your mind, or to compel you to do things that you do not wish to do?
- g. Who are trying to do these things?

- h. Why do they do it?
- i. How have your companions and your friends treated you? How has your wife (or husband) treated you?
- j. Has this been planned out?
- k. What makes you think so? (Get a full account of the systematization of the delusions and note especially the retrospective interpretations and the falsifications of the same.)

Bodily: Is your bodily condition good? Do you feel physically well? (Get a voluntary account of any peculiar bodily feeling of the patient, and if this is not possible carefully question, using as few leading questions as possible, to bring out any localized or general feeling of bodily change, etc.)

Head: Does your head feel all right? How is your mind? (If there is insight into the condition, get a full account from the patient of what he thinks regarding the changed conditions.)

- a. Do you have peculiar thoughts?
- b. Do thoughts to do or say things spring up in your mind?

Auditory Hallucinations:

- a. Do you hear things?
- b. Are they noises?
- c. When do you usually hear them? Are they heard oftener when you are alone, or with other people?
- d. Where do they come from? From the people about you, or from the walls and ceilings, or from other rooms?
- e. If voices, can you recognize them? Are they plain? Are they real voices or only thoughts? Do you hold conversations with them? Do you reply to their questions or to what they say? Do you reply aloud, or do you only think the reply? Do they say pleasant or disagreeable things? Do the voices or noises go on continually? Do they stop when other

people talk with you, or when you talk, or when you listen to other things, for example, music?

Visual Hallucinations:

- a. Do you see things? Are they people, or animals, or things?
- b. When do you usually see them, in daylight, in the dark, when you are in bed, when your eyes are open or shut?
- c. Do they move or remain in one place? Do they seem to be in special places on the floor, in the corners of the room?
- d. Do they always seem to be in front of your eyes? Can you get rid of them by turning your head?
- e. Do they seem natural? Are they the colors you would expect such things to have? Are they transparent, so that you can look through them?
- f. Can you get them to disappear? How do you do this?

Memory: Is your memory good? Has it always been good (or poor) as it is now? Have you difficulty in remembering any special things?

Attention: Can you attend to things as well now as you could?

Thinking: Can you think well? Do you understand readily what is said to you? Does it take you some time to think out the answer to questions? Do you understand what you read?

Capability: Can you do things as well now as you could? Do you have any difficulty in fixing your mind on a thing? Have you any difficulty in starting to do things? Do you feel more disinclined to get up in the morning than you used to? Have you any difficulty in dressing, in eating, in speaking, in walking? Do you feel able to go to work?

Sleep: Do you sleep well? How many hours at

night? Do you ever sleep in the daytime? Do you feel rested after your sleep?

Dreams: Do you dream? How often do you dream?

- a. Do you dream of things that have happened to you recently, or some time ago?
- b. Do you dream of seeing things, or of hearing things, or of things tasted, smelled, touched, etc.?
- c. Do you dream of imaginary and of impossible things?
- d. Does the same dream come twice or more? Do they change every time?
- e. Are the dreams pleasant or disagreeable? Get the patient to describe as accurately as he can one or more of his dreams and if he cannot at the time remember them, tell him that you will ask him again about them and to try to remember any that occur until you ask him again.

Explanation: Bring up before the patient some of the things mentioned in the history of his case as obtained from his relatives or physician, and get him to explain the events.

- a. Impulsive or peculiar actions.
- b. Suicidal or homicidal attempts.
- c. Hallucinations and delusions.
- d. Moral laxness.
- e. Lack of judgment.

SPECIAL TESTS:

Speech:

Motor-Vocal:

Does the patient answer quickly or slowly? Does he stammer, or stutter, or slur, or jumble his words? Is there "jargon" speech?

Have him repeat some of the following words and phrases, and describe the character of the repetition, whether normal, slurring, etc. Third riding artillery brigade.

Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled peppers.

Conservative.	Perturbation.
Statistical.	Fastidiousness.
Irretrievable.	Autobiography.

Are there twitchings of the facial muscles, of the lips, etc., while the patient is speaking?
Are there tremors?

Motor-Written:

Have the patient write his name, the date of his birth, the city in which he lives, the name of the present place, and the date.

Have him write from dictation a short sentence or phrase; *e. g.*,

The United States of America.

The evening has come.

Contentment is a pearl of great price.

Where shall I find hope?

Have him copy one or more typewritten phrases or words.

Sensory-Hearing:

Does the patient understand what is said to him readily?

Does he obey simple commands, *e. g.*, stand up, show your tongue, cross your legs, squeeze my hand? If not, is it because he does not understand you or is it because he will not?

If he obeys the simple commands, does he do so as readily the more complicated ones?

E. g., Walk to the other end of the room, turn about quickly, walk back, turn your chair around, sit down and cross your legs.

Sensory-Visual:

Does he read words aloud correctly? Does he read numbers, sentences, etc., correctly?

Does he name colors (differentiate between color blindness and inability to find the name for a common color, *e. g.*, black, red, white), objects, and pictures correctly?

Does the patient use wrong words (paraphasia)?

Does he have difficulty in getting the name or the word for a thing?

Does he have a tendency to repeat certain words, and do certain words recur throughout the examination?

Apprehension and Apperception:

Summarize the results of the examination of the patient up to this point in respect to his ability to apprehend and to comprehend the situation; how much insight into his condition he has, whether he has been quick or slow to grasp the meaning of questions, whether or not he seems able to take in more than one thing at a time.

Have the patient read aloud one of the following stories, ask him to give the point of it in his own words. Note how well he does the original reading, and record accurately what he says in giving the content of the story.

Cowboy Story.—A cowboy from Arizona went to San Francisco with his dog, which he left at a dealer's while he purchased a new suit of clothes. Dressed finely, he went to the dog, whistled to him, called him by name and patted him. But the dog would have nothing to do with him in his new hat and coat but gave a mournful howl. Coaxing was of no effect, so the cowboy went away and donned his old garments, whereupon the dog immediately showed his wild joy on seeing his master as he thought he ought to be.

Gilded Boy Story.—It is related that at the coronation of one of the popes about three hundred years ago a little boy was chosen to act the part of an angel; and in order that his appearance might be as gorgeous as possible he was covered from head to foot with a coating of gold foil. He was soon taken sick and although every known means was employed for his recovery, except the removal of his fatal golden covering, he died in a few hours.

Polar Bear Story.—A female polar bear with two cubs was pursued by sailors over an ice field. She urged

her cubs forward by running before them, and as it were, begging them to come on. At last in dread of their capture she pushed, then carried and pitched each before her, until they actually escaped. The polar bear is a wonderful swimmer and diver. In the capture of seals lying on the ice, it dives some distance off and swimming underneath the water, suddenly comes up close to the seals, cutting off their retreat to the sea.

Shark Story.—The son of a governor of Indiana was first officer on an Oriental steamer. When in the Indian Ocean the boat was overtaken by a typhoon and was violently tossed about. The officer was suddenly thrown overboard. A life preserver was thrown to him, but, on account of the heavy sea, difficulty was encountered in launching a boat. The crew, however, rushed to the side of the vessel to keep him in sight, but before their shuddering eyes the unlucky young man was grasped by one of the sharks encircling the steamer and was drawn under the water, leaving only a dark streak of blood. (Adapted from Ziehen.)

Good Girl Story.—Once upon a time there was a girl, whose father and mother were dead, and who was so poor that finally she had nothing but the clothes on her back and a little piece of bread in her hand. She was deserted by everybody, but since she was good and honest she went into the world with confidence in God. As she went along she was met by a poor old man who said, "Give me something to eat, I am hungry." The girl gave him the piece of bread and went on farther. Soon afterwards she encountered a little girl freezing and almost naked, who begged for clothes. The good girl gave the poor child the warmest of her garments. Night came on, the good girl was tired, cold and hungry. She traveled into the woods, and, wandering off the road, she knelt and prayed to God. As she knelt she saw the stars falling all about her, and when she looked she found they were many bright gold dollars. (Adapted from Ziehen.)

Show the patient for an instant one of the cards with collections of figures, letters, pictures, etc., such as are illustrated below, and have him tell you what is on the card, giving the content in full and the relative positions of the different elements.

The following apperception test may be used if it seems desirable. In this test the patient is given a sheet on which is printed an anecdote, story or description, but in which certain words are left blank. The patient is to be instructed to go over the paper carefully and after having once gone over it to fill in the spaces with words that will appropriately give the meaning to the story.

1. Once upon a time — heard a — chirruping in the —. Ah, he said to himself, if I could — like that, how — I should be. So he bowed low to the —, and said, kind friend, what — do you eat to make your — so sweet? I drink the evening dew, replied the —. The foolish — tried to live on the same —, and died of —.
2. Monkeys are — and — creatures when —, but become — and — as they grow —, especially the males. They pass most of their time in alternate — and —; after a violent — they change to the other extreme, and behave as if they were the most — of creatures. Animals at one moment living in perfect — and — become in an instant deadly —, ready to — each other to —.
3. During the early centuries of Christian Spain the conditions of the — were such that every — was obliged to defend his — to the throne against the — of his family, so that almost constant — were being waged among the nearest kin and it was practically impossible that several — of weak and incompetent — should not have been wrested from the throne.

1 4 9

3 6
1 4

3 7 4
9 1 5

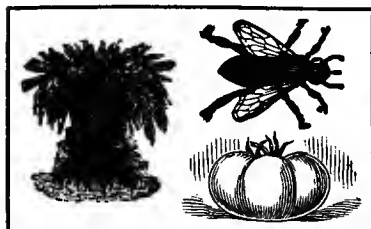
B N V

O T
R C

HOUSE

GREEN TREE

DOG
MOUSE
CAT



Attention:

Summarize the results of the observations made during the examination of the patient. Describe the character of any apparent attention disorder, and if possible give examples to show the character. In the summary try to differentiate between what is known as "distractibility," wandering attention, or the shifting of the attention to successive new impressions, and the lack of, or the fluctuations of the attention such as is found in senile and alcoholic (Korsakow's syndrome) conditions.

Should there be an apparent fluctuation of the attention try one of the following tests, to bring out the condition in a more graphic manner.

1. Read to the patient the following series of numbers at the rate of one each half second, or the series of letters in the same way and have him tap with a pencil each time the number 6 or the letter C is read as the case may be.

4 3 6 8 5 9 6 3 4 6 5 2 4 7 6 5 8 6 7 2
 3 6 6 3 7 6 3 9 3 8 6 7 3 6 9 3 5 6 4 8
 8 6 9 4 6 8 9 4 6 7 9 7 8 4 6 8 5 9 8 6
 5 3 2 8 6 9 8 3 6 9 7 2 8 6 7 6 4 3 8 5
 7 9 2 6 5 7 2 8 6 2 8 7 6 9 6 4 3 7 2 8
 T C Q N D C B K C J C H A F L C O S M B
 C R F K C L H D A C J Q S M T C C N F O
 B J C M K R C T A H C D L Q C R N C O J
 C A C F K O Q H C M L F D C S R C N T B
 S F C T J L C H N A Q C R T C K C D B S

Note each time a letter or a number is not properly responded to, and see if there is a rhythm in the failure to make the response.

2. Have the patient tap on the tapping apparatus, which is a mechanical counter, for thirty seconds and record the number of taps that he makes in different periods of five seconds.

Or, have him make taps on a sheet of paper to and fro for thirty seconds, and note how long it takes him to tap along one line.

Or, have him make the taps in the squares of a sheet of cross section paper (having each square about half an inch wide), noting how long it takes him to make the successive ten taps, in the total series of 100 taps.

Memory:

Summarize the results of the questions which indicate the memory grasp of the patient. Include under separate headings accounts of the following:

1. Recent and remote events.
2. Names of persons, including members of his family, the physicians, nurses and attendants, and other parties.
3. Date and time.
4. Places.

Should there appear to be any memory defect try the following tests:

1. Have the patient read aloud a number of four digits, or read the number to him, speaking each digit separately. This will give respectively the visual and the auditory memories.

5632	9764	3521
8629	5941	7368
6214	9826	5327

2. If the patient can retain all of the four digits try him with the six or eight digit combinations.

487631	736491	751924
955217	972864	249837
276384	845193	516724
45319628	19362874	29317586
35984271	92576438	83264519
97125684	63258914	87635219

3. Give combinations of three associated words and have the patient repeat them after you as well as he can.

Cloak, hat, and gloves.

Enemy, battle, and peace.

Station, train, and conductor.

Deer, horn, and hoof.

Wall, brick, and ivy.

4. Another test that may be tried is the use of two or more pairs of associated words of which the patient is to remember the second one of the pair. The pairs are read to the patient, he is required to repeat them, and after the series (which may be made up of two, three, four or more pairs) has been gone over he is given the first word of a pair and asked what word goes with it. The following pairs of words may be used in any combination of two, three, four, etc.

Well—pump.	Soap—towel.
Cent—dime.	Book—paper.
Roast—stew.	Child—doll.
Oak—pine.	Friend—companion.
Drug—medicine.	Bees—ants.
Game—sport.	Red—brown.
Bridge—river.	Law—judge.
Dust—sand.	Duck—water.
Thumb—toe.	Square—round.
Cow—horse.	Face—beard.
Water—ice.	Actor—theater.
Barrel—bottle.	Glove—hand.
Porch—chair.	Potatoes—fish.
Glue—wood.	Stone—earth.
Street—house.	Tea—sugar.

5. Have the subject repeat the following, and record exactly what he says:

The alphabet.
 The names of the months.
 The days of the week.
 The names of the seasons.
 The Lord's prayer.

6. Examine the patient in regard to his memory of school subjects, especially geography and history.
 Which is the longest river in the U. S.?
 What is the capital of the U. S.?
 Name some of the most important countries in Europe.

Name the largest cities in the U. S. and in the different countries of Europe.

Give the dates of the most important wars of the United States, and with what countries were they fought.

Name some of the most noted presidents, etc., etc.

7. In addition to the anecdotes that were used in the apperception and apprehension tests, which give a good idea of the memory grasp, have the subject give the substance of one or more of the following sentences or anecdotes:

The game of base-ball is fast taking hold of the people of Canada, who hitherto have been satisfied with the English games of cricket and foot-ball.

The Hindoos believe that the gradual darkening of the sun during an eclipse means that the jaws of a dragon are gradually eating it up.

Without map or compass the swallows come back each year to the places that have previously sheltered them.

The advocates of universal peace will go to all sorts of extremes to get their views accepted, for they will fight those who dare to disagree with them.

Pen, ink, pencil and paper have been the most potent factors in the advancement of the world in every way.

Association:

The associations of the patient may be determined from the general examination, from the accounts of the stories used in the tests of apperception and apprehension, especially the test of filling in the blank spaces on p. 278, from the mistakes made in answer to the memory tests on pp. 281, 282, and 283. For more extensive tests the following series of words may be used. The patient should be instructed to say the first word

or idea that comes into his mind when he hears the test word that is given him. It is advisable often to make note of the time between the giving of the test word and the response of the patient. This can be obtained sufficiently accurately by observing the second hand of a watch at the time of the experiment. In this work it is very important that the replies of the patient be recorded exactly as they are given. If there seems to be no apparent connection between the association of the patient and the test word that has been given to him, try to get him to trace for you the connection that has gone on in his mind; for example, should you give him the word "apple" and he replied "foot," the connection is not one that can readily be recognized, but if on questioning you find that the word "apple" suggested to him a time when he was under an apple tree and he walked on a number of rotting apples with his bare feet, the association is more easily understood.

1. White. Red. Gray. Dark. Light.
2. Pain. Rest. Cold. Sweet. Beautiful.
3. Head. Poor. Man. King. Hair.
4. Chair. Bed. House. Lamp. Stairs.
5. Mountain. River. Sea. Sun. Star.
6. Tree. Leaf. Grass. Bush. Flower.
7. Luck. Sick. Hate. Fear. Right.

Determination of Submerged Complexes:

The method of procedure is to take a list of words, from one to two hundred, and then while reading the words to the patient, he having been told to tell immediately what comes into his mind after hearing the word, record the time taken in forming the association. The most practical way for recording the time is by a stop-watch graduated to fifths of a second. After the list has been completed it may be repeated in the same way, the patient being asked, however, to give the same associations he did the first time if he can recall them. The time need not be recorded for the repetition.

When one of the words in the list touches a complex, is a complex indicator, marked disturbances in association are noted. These disturbances are: (1) Increased length of re-

action time; (2) superficiality of the association; (3) forgetting of the association on repetition; (4) peculiarity of the type of reaction, *i. e.*, the association may have some direct association with the complex but no apparent association with the word given; (5) the irradiation of the disturbance to the next one or two associations. Other disturbances occur, but these are the principal ones.

The following shows some of the disturbances. The patient was suicidal, having made several attempts at self-destruction. Her average reaction time was about 1.6 sec.

<i>Stimulus word.</i>	<i>Reaction.</i>	<i>Time.</i>	<i>Reproduction.</i>
To harm	self	6.6	any one
stork	large	4.4	large
false	true	1.8	not true

In this example the extreme length of reaction time is shown (6.6 sec.), inability to recall the reaction on repetition, and irradiation of the disturbance to the next two reactions as shown by their increased length.

The same patient had been made very unhappy on one occasion by the arrest of her brother, his arraignment in court, and the necessity of giving bond for him. Note the following reactions: prison—cell—4.2 sec.: barn (understood as *bond*)—pay—4.6 sec.: judge—to be judged—4 sec.

The following words may be used, interspersing words here and there, if thought desirable, which are believed to have special significance.

1 Head:	16 Sick:	31 Sympathy:
2 Green:	17 Proud:	32 Yellow:
3 Water:	18 To boil:	33 Mountain:
4 To prick:	19 Ink:	34 To play:
5 Angel:	20 Angry:	35 Sail:
6 Long:	21 Needle:	36 New:
7 Ship:	22 To swim:	37 Custom:
8 To plough:	23 Journey:	38 To ride:
9 Wool:	24 Blue:	39 Wall:
10 Friendly:	25 Bread:	40 Stupid:
11 Table:	26 To threaten:	41 Volume:
12 To carry:	27 Rich:	42 To despise:
13 Insolent:	28 Lamp:	43 Teeth:
14 To dance:	29 Tree:	44 Correct:
15 Lake:	30 To sing:	45 Crowd:

46 Book:	71 Wild:	96 Colored:
47 Unjust:	72 Bright:	97 Dog:
48 Frog:	73 Family:	98 To talk:
49 To cut:	74 To wash:	99 Carriage:
50 Hunger:	75 Cow:	100 Sky:
51 White:	76 Stranger:	101 Straw:
52 Ring:	77 Luck:	102 Baby:
53 To listen:	78 To tell:	103 To lie:
54 Pencil:	79 Hesitation:	104 Blood:
55 Woods:	80 Narrow:	105 Duty:
56 Apple:	81 Brother:	106 Bed:
57 To meet:	82 To harm:	107 To rent:
58 Law:	83 Stork:	108 Sorrow:
59 Love:	84 False:	109 Mirror:
60 Glass:	85 Anxiety:	110 Prison:
61 To quarrel:	86 To kiss:	111 Knee:
62 Goat:	87 Fire:	112 To live:
63 Large:	88 Dirty:	113 Change:
64 Potato:	89 Door:	114 Barn:
65 To paint:	90 To choose:	115 Snake:
66 Part:	91 Hay:	116 To uncover:
67 Old:	92 Quiet:	117 Policeman:
68 Flower:	93 Scorn:	118 Wagon:
69 To strike:	94 To sleep:	119 Judge:
70 Box:	95 Month:	120 Night:

Thinking:

In a previous section the patient has described his feeling regarding his ability to think properly and easily. These feelings may or may not correspond to the actual state of affairs. There may be a feeling of ability without the ability of performance, and there may be the feeling of inability without any actual change in the real ability. The calculation tests of age, date of birth, etc., may be used to get some idea of the ability of the patient to think well, but these figures are so often used that it is not necessarily true that if he gives them correctly he retains his normal thinking ability. For further testing the following calculations are easy tests to apply.

Addition.

Add 73 and 22

Add 90 and 18

Add 84 and 25

Add 106 and 17

Add 137 and 64

Subtraction.

Subtract 7 from 63

Subtract 16 from 192

Subtract 24 from 87

Subtract 35 from 257

Subtract 19 from 96

Division.

Divide 63 by 7

Divide 45 by 5

Divide 132 by 11

Divide 192 by 16

Divide 15 by 3

Multiplication.

Multiply 7 by 9

Multiply 9 by 13

Multiply 12 by 15

Multiply 14 by 11

Multiply 8 by 13

In cases in which it is possible to give the following logical tests, these may very well be used to determine any defect in thinking. The patient is to be instructed to read carefully the passages which are given on the sheet, and to say whether or not the conclusion of each of them is correct. No attempt need be made to get him to name or to correct the logical errors, but if the corrections are volunteered they should be noted.

1. All roses are beautiful; lilies are not roses; therefore lilies are not beautified.
2. Nothing is better than wisdom; dry bread is better than nothing; therefore dry bread is better than wisdom.
3. None but savages were in America when it was discovered; Hottentots are savages, and must,

therefore, have been in America when it was discovered.

4. Repentance is a good quality; wicked men abound in repentance, and, therefore, abound in what is good.
5. The object of war is durable peace; therefore soldiers are the best peacemakers.
6. No soldiers should be brought into the field who are not well qualified to perform their duty; none but veterans are well qualified to perform their part, and, therefore, none but veterans should be brought into the field.

ETHICAL QUESTIONS.

If you saw a man drop a \$10 bill on the sidewalk, what would you do?

What do you understand is the difference between right and wrong?

Why is it wrong to steal?

EXAMINATION OF STUPOROUS CASES.

General attitude:

Position of body:
sitting.

lying—on back, side, face.

Disposition of limbs.

Evidences of paralysis—hemiplegia, facial, ocular?

Voluntary musculature—flaccid, contracted?

Evidences of catatonic rigidity?

Tremors.

Face:

Expression—changeable or fixed, mask-like, pained?

Grimacing—Schnauzkrampf?

Position of eye-balls—rolled up under lid?

Reflexes:

Superficial and deep. Compare two sides.

Pupillary.

Winking.

Tickling.

Reactions:

Can the patient be brought to maintain a position requiring volitional control?

Does the patient voluntarily correct uncomfortable positions?

Does the patient show any emotional (expressive, vasomotor, circulatory, respiratory) response to bad news, jokes?

Do patient's eyes follow examiner?

Does patient take food?

Are his actions the same when apparently not observed as when under observation?

Does patient respond to calls of nature?

Does he retain saliva? Drooling?

Are there any spontaneous acts? Why?

CHAPTER XX.

A MINIMUM MENTAL EXAMINATION.

In hospitals that admit large numbers of patients annually and in which the personnel of the medical staff is continually changing it becomes necessary to adopt some standard scheme of examination of the patients for several reasons. Of the innumerable things that might be required in such an examination many have only occasional value and many, in the nature of the case, could not be required at all. It, therefore, becomes necessary in outlining any scheme for general application to have in view only a minimum requirement. In other words, so much at least shall be done in every case and as much more as the examiner desires or the necessities of the case indicate.

A standard examination soon becomes familiar to all. In using it one is less likely to leave out essentials, as very often happens when the examination is conducted in a desultory way without any plan of procedure. Certain portions of the examination, as for example the stories, can merely be referred to by name and do not have to be repeated each time, such as the cowboy story, the good girl story, etc. (See Table VII.) Every one knows these tests by heart and the response of the patient is all that needs to be recorded. Then again the standard examination gives a better basis of comparison between different patients, particularly those suffering from similar conditions. It is also a means of calibrating, so to speak, the individual patient at different periods of his malady. The same mental tests gone through with at different times gives an excellent idea of whether the patient's condition is changing or not and indicate, too, something of the nature of the change. With a standard method it is much easier to initiate new men as they come on the staff. They find the scheme in full operation and soon fall into using it. This renders them highly valuable at a time when they would be comparatively useless if merely permitted to drift and suit their own inclinations. This last reason is a particularly strong one in hospitals for the insane,

where the whole problem is so different from that in the general hospital.

The principal value that a scheme of examination may have, however, is in formulating tests that call for an actual record of the patient's reaction and not the conclusions of the examiner. Our mental examinations are filled with such remarks as "the patient shows lack of judgment" or is "disoriented" or has "failure of memory." All of these are conclusions and by no means records of fact. Such histories are useless to any one except perhaps the person who wrote them. The reader of a history is entitled to a statement of the facts on which the conclusion is based and then he is at liberty to form his own conclusion from the identical premises. How much better and more accurate than the statement "defective memory" would be this test: The patient in the course of the examination is given the address, 375 Oxford St. After five minutes he is asked to recall it. He gives the number 176, but cannot give the name of the street at all. Here is a definite fact. A multiplicity of such facts gives any one a basis for conclusions about the patient. Of such statements should the record of an examination be composed.

The following scheme, which is largely the work of Dr. S. I. Franz, is the one now in use in the Government Hospital for the Insane.

It is recommended, for hospitals for the insane, that the following tables be prepared in chart form and hung up in the examination room:

I. FAMILY HISTORY.

INFORMANT: (name, relationship to patient, address).

GRANDPARENTS: PARENTS: (uncles and aunts), SIBLINGS:

CHILDREN: (with abortions and miscarriages).

In securing the family history it must be remembered that it is equally important to get a record of all the normal members of the family as well as the abnormal and not stop with securing the latter, as is often done. The patient's relation to hereditary tendencies can only be determined by securing information about his ancestors. For example, Heron² has shown that the liability to

²David Heron, M.A.: A First Study of the Statistics of Insanity and the Inheritance of the Insane Diathesis. Eugenics Laboratory Memoirs, II. University of London.

insanity in children from insane stock is greatest among the earlier born and falls off rapidly, particularly after the fourth child.

II. HISTORY OF PATIENT.

FULL NAME: ADDRESS: OCCUPATION:

BIRTH: CHILDHOOD DISEASES: LEARNED TO WALK AND TALK:

DISEASES: (especially convulsions, delirium, heady-injury, gonorrhœa, syphilis, rheumatism, neuritis).

HABITS: (alcohol, drugs and sexual).

MARRIAGE: MENSTRUATION: GYNECOLOGICAL:

PREVIOUS ATTACKS: (special attention to so-called hysterical, to breakdown, and to melancholic periods).

CRIMES AND MISDEMEANORS:

MENTAL MAKE-UP:

The history of the patient is especially important for getting a comprehensive idea of the sort of person the patient was before becoming insane. A given mental disorder cannot be fully understood without understanding, not only the circumstances that gave rise to it, but the other and more important factor, the make-up of the individual in whom the disorder occurs.

III. PRESENT ILLNESS.

ONSET: CAUSE: PHYSICAL: MENTAL AND MORAL CHANGES:

EMOTIONAL CONDITION: HALLUCINATIONS AND DELUSIONS:

JUDGMENT: MEMORY: SUICIDE AND HOMICIDE: INSIGHT:

Under this head is made an inquiry into all the circumstances surrounding and conditioning the onset of the psychosis and the patient's attitude toward them and his insight. He should be asked frankly whether he believes himself insane; if not, how is it that he has been sent to a hospital for the insane; what he may have done or said to lead others to think him insane; what is his explanation of the whole situation and how it all came about.

IV. GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

FACIAL EXPRESSION: APPEARANCE AND Demeanor: MOVEMENTS:

SPEECH: MENTAL:

The general observation of the patient is, of course, always important: whether he appears silly, resentful, indifferent; whether

he has mannerisms, etc. It is particularly important, however, in stuporous and delirious patients who either will not speak or are not responsive and, therefore, not accessible. These patients should be observed particularly as to their general attitude of body and limbs, the expression of the face, the reflexes, and the reactions—volitional, emotional, and organic (hunger, sexual, responding to calls of nature, etc.).

V. GENERAL PHYSICAL EXAMINATION.

FORM: NUTRITION: WEIGHT: HEIGHT: SKIN: BONES AND JOINTS:

DECUBITUS: SCARS: (especially penis and mouth).

RESPIRATORY SYSTEM:

CIRCULATORY SYSTEM: HEART-POSITION; SIZE AND SOUNDS; BLOOD-PRESSURE:

GENITO-URINARY SYSTEM:

GASTRO-INTESTINAL TRACT: STOMACH CONTENT: (if indicated): GLANDS:

ABDOMEN:

SPUTUM: (if indicated). BLOOD COMPOSITION: (if indicated).

CEREBROSPINAL FLUID: (if indicated).

URINE: (always).

It is hardly necessary to insist upon the necessity for a thorough physical examination in every case. It is especially important in the deliria in which the mental disorder may be the expression of an obscure physical condition.

VI. NEUROLOGICAL EXAMINATION.

ATROPHY: HYPERTROPHY:

MOVEMENTS, VOLUNTARY: activity; rapidity; accuracy; force; (especially paresis); limitations.

MOVEMENTS, INVOLUNTARY: rigidity; tremor (at rest, intention); spasms; convulsions.

REFLEXES: *KK*,^a *TA*; contralat. add.; plantar; cremasteric (inguinal); bladder; anal; epigastric; triceps; ulnar; radial; jaw; clonus; (ankle, patellar and wrist).

NERVE-TRUNK SENSITIVENESS: TENDER AREAS: (especially vertebræ, breast, ovarian).

COORDINATION: FN; FF; FT; KH; station (eyes open and closed, one and both feet); gait.

SENSATIONS: touch; pain; organic; paresthesia; hypesthesia; hyperesthesia; anesthesia; analgesia; sense of position; feeling of reality.

^a *KK* = knee kick. *TA* = tendo-Achilles. *FN* = finger nose. *FF* = finger finger. *FT* = fingers thumb. *KH* = knee heel.

CRANIAL NERVES:

1. Smell: solutions and subjective.
2. Hemipia: fundus; hallucinations.
- 3, 4, 6. Eye movements (all directions): squint; diplopia; ptosis; nystagmus (horizontal, vertical, rotary).
Pupils: size; outline; direct light; consensual light; accommodation; sympathetic.
5. Corneal reflex: chewing movements; taste; solutions and subjective.
7. Facial symmetry: (whistling); tremors; test-phrases.
8. Hearing: objective and subjective vertigo.
- 9, 10, 11. Swallowing: pharyngeal reflex.
12. Protrusion of tongue.

In a condition which admittedly involves the central nervous organs, particularly the brain, the neurological examination becomes of the greatest importance. Especial importance should be paid to the cranial nerve distributions and to the presence of paralyses or anesthetics, which might have localizing significance.

VII. MENTAL EXAMINATION.

ORIENTATION: time; place; people.

GENERAL MEMORY: family; school; occupation; marriage; children; diseases.

EMOTIONAL STATUS: insight; sleep; dreams.

HALLUCINATIONS: auditory; visual; other senses.

SPEECH: voluntary; naming; writing; (name, date, the U. S. A., the Commonwealth of Mass.); auditory; visual; test-phrases. (Statistical, perturbation, 3d Riding Artillery Brigade.)

STORIES: (Cowboy, Gilded Boy, Polar Bear, Shark, Good Girl).

SPECIAL MEMORY: (Civil War; name of two generals; three European countries; capital of native State; President; 45319628; 35984271; 487631; 955217; 7368; 9826; 487; 352; 375 Oxford Street; (after 3 or 5 minutes)).

MASSELO: (hunter, dog, gun, forest, rabbit; man, wood, coal, stove, dinner; needle, thread, button, vest; pipe, match, smoke; pen, ink, letter).

ZIEHEN: (horse and ox; dwarf and child; lie and mistake; water and ice).
7 × 6; 56 — 18; 23 — 14; 81 — 9; x — 5 = 17; x — 8 = 13; have 50c.; buy cherries 12c., butter 7c., bread 10c.; how much change?

FORWARD AND BACKWARD ASSOCIATIONS: (month; days of week; 752186, 35729, 6418, 265, 497).

GENERAL INFORMATION: cost of postage; color of stamps; holidays and meaning: (Christmas, Easter, 4th of July).

FINCKH: ("The early bird catches the worm"; "Lies have short legs"; "Set a thief to catch a thief"; "Burn a candle at both ends").

ETHICAL QUESTIONS:

DRAWING DIAGRAM: (after 5 seconds' exposure).

Here especial caution is needed to avoid recording conclusions. For example: Under orientation the patient's actual answers to such questions as, When were you born? How old are you? What day is this? etc., should be put down.

The stories which are used have been selected with great care. They are especially valuable. It is remarkable the amount of information that one can obtain from getting a patient to repeat one or two. Defects of memory and attention show immediately, while the manic tendency to elaborate is characteristic. They should never be omitted. The cowboy story is usually the easiest, while the good girl story is hard, because of the great amount of detail. The emotional feature of the "streak of blood" in the shark story is particularly impressive and may be about the only feature of the story reproduced.

In the special memory test, of course, different people will have to be treated differently. A Polish immigrant just landed would hardly know about the Civil War. The important thing, however, is to record actual question and answer.

In the Masselon tests the patient is asked to incorporate such words as pen, ink, letter, into a sentence. In the Ziehen test the patient is asked to tell the difference between horse and ox, dwarf and child, etc.

The problem of calculating the change left from 50c. after making certain purchases is an excellent example of the usefulness of standard questions. Every one on the staff knows that the answer is 21c.; and although this is a little thing, when multiplied many times it makes a great deal of difference in the ease with which one can go over a history or appreciate it when read.

The forward and backward associations are valuable as roughly quantitative. The average person should be able to give six numbers forward and five numbers backward. This test will disclose just how many the patient can give and is one of the valuable tests for repeating from time to time during the course of the psychosis. It is also very valuable in detecting the malingerer. A definite intention to blunder is usually readily distinguishable from a natural blunder.

In the Finckh test the patient is asked the meaning of the several sayings such as "The early bird catches the worm."

Such ethical questions can be asked as What would you do if you saw a man drop a \$10 bill?

In addition to the tests given in the table we frequently use the Ebbinghaus test which consists of having the patient complete a sentence in which certain words have been left out, such as: I got up in the . . . , and after washing my . . . went to . . . Or better often is Ziehen's modification of this test. The patient is asked to complete such a sentence as this: If it rains . . . because . . . in spite of . . . The Bourdon test is very valuable as a measure of attention. It consists of getting the patient to strike out certain recurring letters or numbers in a standard page and timing the result. A similar test is the tapping test—timing the number of taps that can be made in a given time, say thirty seconds.

Of course the cases will be numerous in which it will be found desirable or necessary to pursue the examination further in some direction. No scheme can cover all possibilities and would be useless if it did, because impossible to carry out. Much must of necessity be left to the judgment of the examiner. By following this plan, however, it is believed that the general and important features necessary for a case record will be covered in the large majority of cases.

It is useful, after completing the examination, to accent the significant features in a short summary, which might include a provisional diagnosis if the facts warranted.

CHAPTER XXI.

THE BINET-SIMON SCALE.

The object of the Binet-Simon tests is to determine the psychological age of the child. Their use has produced already a large and critical literature. No attempt will be made here to discuss the merits of the many questions that have been raised. The important point is that this scale is the most efficient means we now have for determining the mental development of the child. The tests will be given as modified to suit American children by GODDARD, who has probably had more extensive experience in its use than anyone else in this country.

All the questions under an age must be answered to pass that age. The tests are as follows:

CHILDREN OF THREE YEARS.

1. WHERE IS YOUR NOSE? YOUR EYES? YOUR MOUTH?

One of the best signs of awakening intelligence in young children is the comprehension of spoken words. We test this by asking these questions which can be answered by a gesture.

2. REPETITION OF SENTENCES OF SIX SYLLABLES.

It rains. I am hungry (6 syllables).

Experiment proves that it is easier for a child to repeat words than to speak a word of his own. If a child does not respond one may try him with two syllables ("*mama*"), then four, etc.

A child of three repeats six syllables but not ten. There must not be a single error.

3. REPETITION OF FIGURES "7, 2."

A child of three can repeat two figures. Figures require closer attention than words because they mean nothing to him. Pronounce the figures distinctly, one-half second apart and without emphasis on any one figure.

4. DESCRIBING PICTURES.

A picture is shown to the child with the question, "*What do you*

¹ Goddard, H. H.: *Binet's Measuring Scale for Intelligence, The Training School, Jan., 1910.*

see?" The pictures must be chosen with some care. Each one must represent some *people* and a *situation*. Binet uses three pictures. The first is a man and a boy drawing a cart loaded with furniture. The second, a woman and an old man sitting on a bench in a park in winter. The third, a man in prison looking out of the window; a couch, chair and tables.

A child of three names the things—enumerates. He does not describe any actions in the pictures.

5. NAME OF THE FAMILY.

All children of three know their *first* name. They sometimes know the *family name* but not always.

CHILDREN OF FOUR YEARS.

1. SEX OF CHILD. *Are you a little boy or a little girl?*

Children of three do not know. Children of four always do.

2. NAMING FAMILIAR OBJECTS.

One takes from his pocket *a key, a knife, and a penny*.

The answers should indicate that the child knows what each is. This is a more difficult use of language than naming objects in the picture because there the child chose his own object to name; here we say, "*What is that thing?*"

3. REPETITION OF THREE FIGURES. "7, 4, 8."

4. COMPARISON OF TWO LINES. "*Which is the longer line?*"

Draw two parallel lines three centimeters apart, the one 5 centimeters and the other 6. Hesitation is failure.

CHILDREN OF FIVE YEARS.

1. COMPARISON OF TWO WEIGHTS. "*Which is the heavier?*"

Use weighted blocks of wood of equal size and appearance.

Compare 3 grammes with 12 grammes and 6 grammes with 15 grammes. Note the curious and interesting errors that are made.

2. COPYING A SQUARE.

Draw a square of 3 or 4 centimeters. Have child copy it with ink—not pencil. Pen makes it harder. It is satisfactory if one can recognize the square.

3. REPEAT: *His name is John. He is a very good boy.*

4. COUNTING FOUR PENNIES.

Place four pennies in a row. Insist that child count them with his finger.

At three years a child does not know how to count four: at four half succeed: at five all succeed.

5. GAME OF PATIENCE WITH TWO PIECES.

Cut a visiting card diagonally. Place a whole card on the table. Nearer the child place the two pieces with the two hypotenuses away from each other. Ask the child to make a figure like the uncut card. One child in twelve fails.

Be careful (1) that child does not fail because he is too indolent to reach out and try; (2) that one of the pieces does not get turned over—because then it is impossible; (3) that you do not show by a look whether the child is right or wrong.

CHILDREN OF SIX YEARS.

1. DISTINCTION BETWEEN MORNING AND AFTERNOON. "*Is this morning or is it afternoon?*"

It should be remembered that a certain type of child will always answer the *last* of two alternatives. Therefore if the time is afternoon it is well to put the question, "*Is this afternoon or morning?*" Not before six do children know this.

2. DEFINITION OF KNOWN OBJECTS. "*What is a fork? a table? a chair? a horse? a mama?*"

There are three kinds of response. (1) Silence, simple repetition or gesture; e. g., "*A fork is a fork,*" or pointing says, "*That is a chair.*" (2) Definition in terms of use, "*A fork is to eat with.*" (3) Definitions *better* than by use. This includes all answers that describe the thing or even begin with "*it is a thing*"—"it is an animal," etc., all of which expressions are not so childlike as the simple "*use*" definitions. In deciding which type of answer we shall credit to the child, we accept three out of five.

At four years half the children define by "*use*"; it increases a little at five and at six practically all define this way. Not before nine do the majority give the definitions that are "*better than by use.*"

3. EXECUTION OF THREE SIMULTANEOUS COMMISSIONS.

"*Do you see this key? Put it on that chair. Then shut the*

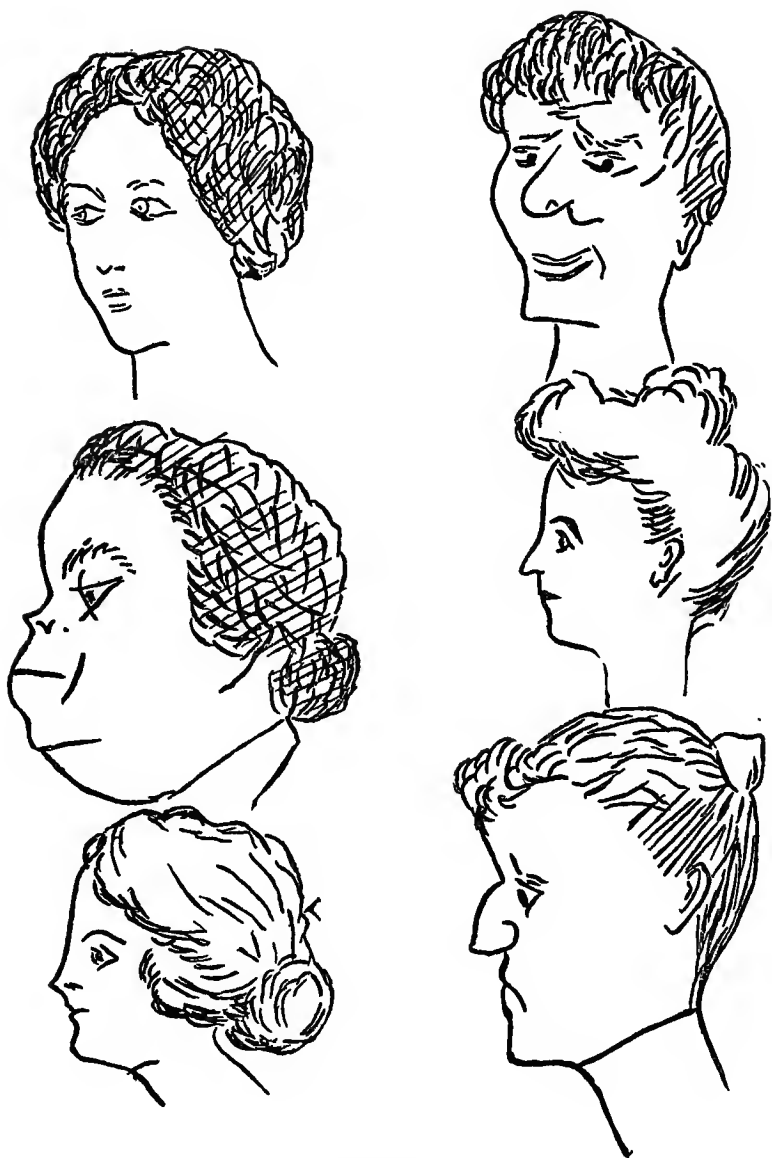


FIG. 5. BINET TEST AGE VI. No 5.

door. *After that bring me the box that is on the chair. Remember, first the key on the chair, then close the door, then bring in the box. Do you understand? Well, then, go ahead.*"

Such are the directions. They must all be done without further help, hint or suggestion. At four years almost none can do this; at five about half; at six all, or nearly all, succeed.

4. RIGHT HAND. LEFT EAR.

One says to child, "*Show me your right hand,*" and when that is done, "*Show me your left ear.*" There are, in the main, three kinds of response. (1) Does not know right and left. Shows right hand because of natural tendency. Shows right ear also. (2) Knows but is not sure. Shows right hand, then right ear, but corrects himself at once. (3) Knows and without hesitation touches right hand and left ear. (2) and (3) are considered satisfactory. If child touches one hand with the other in such a way that one cannot tell which hand he means, ask him to hold his right hand up high. Be very careful in this test to give no hint by look or word. At four years no child points to left ear; at five half of the children make a mistake; at six all succeed.

5. ESTHETIC COMPARISON.

"Which is the prettier?"

Binet uses six heads of women in three pairs, the one pretty and the other ugly or even deformed, Fig. 1. Care is taken that the pretty one is now at the left and now at the right. At six all choose correctly; at five about half.

CHILDREN OF SEVEN YEARS.

1. COUNTING THIRTEEN PENNIES.

Pennies must be placed in a row and counted with the finger. Finger must touch the piece at the same time that the child names the number. No piece must be counted twice and none omitted. The number thirteen must be given exact. At six years two thirds fail; at seven they make no errors.

2. DESCRIPTION OF A PICTURE.

Same picture as used in age three. Child now *describes* things instead of simply enumerating.

3. UNFINISHED PICTURES.

One shows four sketches of such as Fig. 2. Ask the child,

"*What is lacking in that picture?*" Child must answer three out of four correctly. At five years none are correct; at six errors number two thirds; at seven the great majority are accurate.

4. COPYING A DIAMOND.

Draw a rhombus about the size of the square used for age five. Have child copy this with pen. The result is satisfactory if it would be recognized as intended for a diamond shaped figure.

5. NAME FOUR COLORS.

Use red, blue, green and yellow papers, in pieces about 1 x 3 inches. Touching each color with the finger ask, "*What is that color?*" It will be seen this is a test of color names, not of discrimination. It should be done in six seconds.

CHILDREN OF EIGHT YEARS.

1. COMPARE TWO THINGS FROM MEMORY.

"*What is the difference between a butterfly and a fly?*" "*Wood and glass?*" "*Paper and pasteboard (or cloth)?*"

The question may be differently put so as to make it intelligible as possible; e. g., "*Why are they not alike?*" etc.

Two at least out of the three pairs should be answered correctly. If it takes more than two minutes it is a failure.

At six a third of the children do this test; at seven nearly all; at eight all.

2. COUNT BACKWARDS FROM 20 TO 1.

This should be done within twenty seconds, and only one mistake allowed of omission or transposition.

3. THE DAYS OF THE WEEK.

These must be given in order without omission within ten seconds.

4. COUNT NINE "SOUS" (3 SIMPLES AND 3 DOUBLES).

(Our two-cent piece is now so rare that we use one-cent and two-cent postage stamps.) Arrange in order, 1, 1, 1, 2, 2, 2. "*How much are they worth?*" ("*How much money to buy them?*") "*Count.*"

It should be done within ten seconds without any error. There are three ways of counting. One child says 1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 9. Another says 1, 2, 3, 4-5, 6-7, 8-9. The third says 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6,

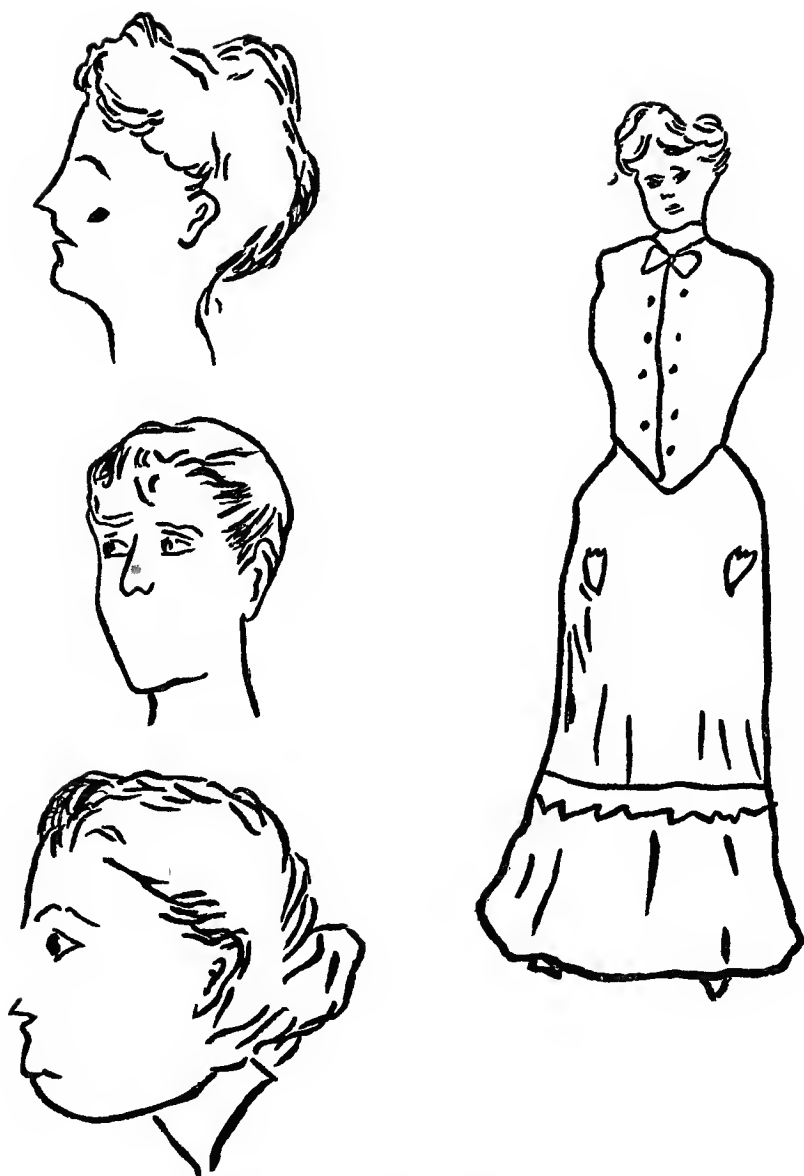


FIG. 6. BINET TEST AGE VII. No. 3.

which is of course wrong. A large majority do this test at seven years. But all do it at eight.

5. REPETITION OF FIVE FIGURES. "4-7-3-9-5."

Same method of procedure as given above, age three. Only three fourths of the children succeed.

CHILDREN OF NINE YEARS.

1. MAKE CHANGE—4 CENTS OUT OF 20.

Play store, using real money.

If child's cash consists of 25 pennies, 5 nickels, and 2 dimes, interesting degrees of intelligence will be discovered by noticing the coins he uses in making change. Child is storekeeper. One buys something that costs 9 cents. Child must actually give 16 cents as well as say it.

At seven no one can do this test; at eight a good third succeed; at nine all do it.

2. DEFINITION BETTER THAN BY "USE."

This was explained under age six. Accept any definition that is more than simply "use," *e. g.*, chair has four legs, table is made of wood, etc. At ages seven and eight, half the children give definitions of this kind; at nine they all do.

3. NAME THE DAY OF THE WEEK, THE MONTH, THE DAY OF THE MONTH AND THE YEAR.

The test is passed even if the day of the month is as much as three days wrong. Children least often know the year.

4. THE MONTHS OF THE YEAR.

Recited in order within fifteen seconds. Allow one omission or transposition.

5. ARRANGEMENT OF WEIGHTS.

Use five wooden cubes of same size and appearance but loaded so as to weigh 6, 9, 12, 15, 18 grammes. (Metal pill boxes may be used.) Place the five boxes on table in front of child and explain that they do not all weigh alike and he is to lift one at a time and put them in order from the lightest to the heaviest. (The initial of each weight written on the bottom of each box makes it easy to see if they are right.) Record the exact order in which the child has placed them. Three trials are made. Two must be

absolutely correct. The whole operation must not take over three minutes.

CHILDREN OF TEN YEARS.

1. NAMING NINE PIECES OF MONEY.

One may use cent, nickel, dime, quarter, half dollar, dollar, two dollars, five dollars, and ten dollars.

Pieces should be on table in a row but not in regular order of value. Point with finger, and name as he points.

2. COPY DESIGN.



Expose ten seconds.

3. REPEATS SIX FIGURES.

854726, 274681, 941738.

4. QUESTIONS OF COMPREHENSION. FIRST SERIES.

What ought one to do

1. When one has missed the train?
2. When one has been struck by a playmate who did not do it purposely?
3. When one has broken something that does not belong to one?

At seven and eight half respond correctly; at nine three fourths; at ten all. If two questions out of three are answered correctly the test is passed.

SECOND SERIES.

What ought one to do

1. When he is detained so that he will be late for school?
2. What ought one to do before taking part in an important affair?
3. Why does one excuse a wrong act committed in anger more easily than a wrong act committed without anger?
4. What should one do when asked his opinion of some one whom he knows only a little?

5. Why ought one to judge a person more by his acts than by his words?

Allow at least 20 seconds to each question. Three of the five must be answered correctly. At seven and eight no one responds to a majority of this second series; at ten half are successful; it is therefore a transition between ten and eleven years.

5. USING THREE WORDS IN A SENTENCE.

Binet uses the words *Paris, fortune, river*. We should say *Philadelphia, money, river*. This is the first time in these tests that we have required the child to "invent" his own expression. There are three forms of answers. (1) Three separate sentences. (2) Two ideas united by a conjunction. (3) A single idea involving the three words. Only the last two are satisfactory for the test. We allow one minute. At eight no one succeeds. At nine one third and at ten one half get it right.

In this test may be seen a distinction between intelligence and judgment. Some children give a complete sentence with the three words but they do not make sense.

CHILDREN OF ELEVEN YEARS.

1. CRITICISM OF SENTENCES.

These are sentences that contain some absurdity or ridiculous expression. Binet explains that formerly he used sentences like "*Is snow red or black?*" but he found that many bright children fell into the trap and others through confidence in the questioner failed to look for an absurdity. Therefore he has changed the plan and now says to the child, "*I am going to give you some sentences in which there is nonsense. You listen carefully and see if you can tell me where the nonsense is.*" Then he reads the sentence very slowly.

These are the sentences:

1. *An unfortunate cyclist has had his head broken and is dead from the fall: they have taken him to the hospital and they do not think that he will recover.*
2. *I have three brothers, Paul, Ernest and myself.*
3. *The police found yesterday the body of a young girl cut into eighteen pieces. They believe that she killed herself.*
4. *Yesterday there was an accident on the railroad. But it was not serious: the number of deaths is only 48.*

5. *Some one said "If in a moment of despair I should commit suicide, I should not choose Friday, because Friday is an unlucky day and it would bring me ill luck."*

The test should last about two minutes. Three at least of the questions should receive good answers. At nine years hardly any child gets them; at ten scarcely a fourth; at eleven a half.

2. THREE WORDS IN A SENTENCE. (Given under age ten.)

At eleven all succeed.

3. 60 WORDS IN 3 MINUTES.

"Say as many words as you can in 3 minutes; as table, board, beard, shirt, carriage." We tell him that some children have named 200 words.

This test gives a splendid opportunity to appreciate the intelligence of a child. At least 60 words must be given.

4. RHYMES.

Explain what is meant by one word rhyming with another. Illustrate. Then ask for as many words as the child can think of, that rhyme with a given word, *e. g.*, *day* or *spring* or *mill*.

One minute is allowed. Three rhymes with one word should be found in the given time.

5. WORDS TO PUT IN ORDER.

"Make a sentence out of these words."

Hour—for—we—good—at—park—a—started—the.

To—asked—exercise—my—have—teacher—correct—my—I.

A—defends—dog—good—his—courageously—master.

Place the printed words before the child. He gives the sentence orally.

Time limit is one minute for each sentence. At least two must be given correctly.

CHILDREN OF TWELVE YEARS.

1. REPETITION OF SEVEN FIGURES. 2, 9, 4, 6, 3, 7, 5. 1, 6, 9, 5, 8, 4, 7. 9, 2, 8, 5, 1, 6, 4.

Tell the child there will be seven figures. Give three trials. One success is sufficient.

2. ABSTRACT DEFINITIONS.

"What is charity? justice? goodness?"

Two good definitions must be given. It is often somewhat difficult to decide if the definition is passable. If it contains the essential idea it must be accepted however badly it is expressed. At ten years a third succeed; at eleven they are generally successful.

3. REPEATS.

I saw in the street a pretty little dog. He had curly hair, short legs and a long tail.

4. RESISTS SUGGESTION.

Binet's description of this test is as follows:

Prepare a little booklet of six pages. On first page draw in ink two lines horizontal: the one to the left two inches (4 cm.) long, the one to the right two and a half inches. On second page, left line is two and a half, right, three inches. Third page, left line three and right one three and a half inches. On three remaining pages all lines are three and a half inches long. The lines on each page are in same straight line and separated by a half inch.

The idea of the test is this: Child having said the right-hand one is longer for three times, will he continue even when he comes to those that are alike, or will he "resist the suggestion" and say they are alike?

Care must be exercised in asking the question. For the first two pages ask "Which is the longer line?" but for the others say merely, "And there?"

5. PROBLEM OF VARIOUS FACTS. (*What is it?*)

"A person who was walking in the forest at Fontainebleau suddenly stopped much frightened and hastened to the nearest police and reported that he had seen hanging from the limb of a tree a ———" (after a pause) "what?"

(2) *"My neighbor has been having strange visitors. He has received one after the other a physician, a lawyer and a clergyman. What has happened at the house of my neighbor?"*

Both questions should be answered correctly.

The answer to the first is "a dead man." Some object to this story as too gruesome. Others say that children are not so sensitive to such things as we think. Aside from that question it would seem that the picture is hardly familiar enough in America to make the answer certain. A substitute better be found.

CHILDREN OF FIFTEEN YEARS.

1. INTERPRETS PICTURE.

1. Use same pictures as in age three, test four, and age seven, test two. The test is credited in XV if subject "*interprets*" the feeling of the picture—usually expressed by some word of sympathy, fear, sorrow, joy or other feeling.

2. CHANGE HANDS OF CLOCK.

Interchange the hands of a clock for (1) the hour 6:20 and (2) 2:56. (Child must not see a watch or clock. It is a test of imaging power.)

3. CODE. *Come quickly.*

This test was suggested by Dr. William Healy, of Chicago. It was used by the Southern army in the Civil War.

The diagrams shown below are to be constructed while the child gives close attention. He notes the arrangement of the letters, in alphabetical order vertically in first and second, and counter-clockwise in a third and fourth diagram. Two and four differ from one and two in having a dot in each section. Once knowing the scheme, the letters may be left out and a cipher dispatch written by using for each letter the part of the diagram in which the letter is placed in the key. For example "war" would be written $\nabla _ \sqcap$.

Having made it perfectly clear, remove the key and have child write on back of record sheet, "Caught a spy," in this code. In crediting allow one error. Every wrong or incomplete symbol is an error.

A	D	G	J	M	P		
B	E	H	K	N	Q		
C	F	I	L	O	R		

4. OPPOSITES.

Ask child to write the opposites of the following words: (1) good; (2) outside; (3) quick; (4) tall; (5) big; (6) loud; (7) white; (8) light; (9) happy; (10) false; (11) like; (12) rich;

(13) sick; (14) glad; (15) thin; (16) empty; (17) war; (18) many; (19) above; (20) friend.

Besides the obvious answers, the following are accepted as right or half right:

(2) in or indoors (half); (3) lazy or slowly (half); (4) little or low (half); (5) short (half); (6) soft or low (right), whisper (half); (9) sorry or sorrow (half); (10) right or truth (half); (11) dislike, unlike or hate (right); (13) healthy (right); (14) mad (right); (15) broad (half); (16) filled (right); (18) none (right); (19) under (right).

It is best to have the words printed on a slip of paper in vertical column, with space for child to write the "opposite" at the right.

The equivalent of 17 correct answers must be given.

ADULT.¹

1. CUTTING OUT.

Get the child's attention and let him see you fold a sheet of paper in four. Then with the scissors cut a small triangle from one edge—the edge which does not open. Ask him to draw a picture of the paper as it will look when unfolded. Do not unfold or allow another sheet to be folded. It is a difficult test. If a child does it the first time always ask him if he has seen it before.

2. THE REVERSED TRIANGLE.

Cut a visiting card along the diagonal. Ask child to describe the resulting shape if one of the triangles was turned about and placed so that its short leg was on the other hypotenuse and its right angle at the smaller of the two acute angles.

3. DIFFERENCES.

Ask the difference between

Pleasure and honor.

Evolution and revolution.

Event and advent.

Poverty and misery.

Pride and pretention.

4. Say to the subject: "There are three differences between the President of a Republic and a King. What are they?"

¹ Adult is used here in the sense of over fifteen years of age.

The answer should contain the three ideas, Royalty is (1) hereditary, (2) lasts for life, and (3) the monarch has extended powers. The President is (1) elected, (2) for a definite time, and (3) his powers are usually less extensive than those of a king.

5. GIVE SENSE OF A SELECTION READ.

Explain to the subject that you are about to read a selection to him, and that then you will ask him to tell you the substance of what you have read. He should give close attention.

Read slowly, in a clear voice and with expression, the following:

"One hears very different judgments on the value of life. Some say it is good, others say it is bad. It would be more correct to say that it is mediocre; because on the one hand it brings us less happiness than we want, while on the other hand the misfortunes it brings are less than others wish for us. It is the mediocrity of life that makes it endurable; or, still more, that keeps it from being positively unjust."

It is correct if the subject gives the central thought in his own words; *e. g.*, "Life is neither good nor bad, but mediocre, because it is inferior to what we wish and not as bad as others wish for us."

INDEX.

- Actions, 4
- Affects, 5
- Akoasms, 46
- Alcoholic epilepsy, 203
 - hallucinoses, 204
- Alcoholism, 195
 - chronic, 202
 - course, 210
 - pathology, 211
 - treatment, 211
- Allopsychoses, 56
- Amnesia, 68
- Anger, 67
- Anxiety, 172
 - neurosis, 248
- Apoplecticiform seizures, 124
- Apoplexy, 225
- Apperception, tests for, 276
- Apprehension, tests for, 276
- Aprosexia, 68
- Argyll-Robertson pupil, 119
- Arterio-sclerosis, 225
- Association, clang, 61
 - salutary, 147
 - tests, 283
- Astasia abasia, 247
- Ataxia, itrapyschic, 143
 - noo-thymopsychic, 143
- Attention, disorders of, 68
 - tests of, 280
 - voluntary, 145
- Automatism, 12, 67, 156
- Autopsychoses, 56
- Auto-toxic psychoses, 230

- Bath, continuous, 31
- Bestiality, 251
- Binet-Simon scale, 297
- Catalepsy, 66, 156
- Catatonias, 155
- Catatonic excitement, 156
 - stupor, 155
- Causes of mental disorder, 20
- Character, study of, 17
 - epileptic, 220, 249
 - hysterical, 249
 - manic-depressive, 249
 - neurasthenic, 249
 - paranoiac, 77
 - post-traumatic, 249
 - psychasthenic, 249
 - "shut in", 142, 249
 - unresistive, 249
- Chloral, 34
- Chloralamid, 34
- Chorea, Huntington's, 232
 - Sydenham's, 232
- Circumscribed psychosis, 94
- Circumstantiality, 63
- Clang association, 61
 - in mania, 105
- Classification of the psychoses, 15, 18
 - of causes of mental disorder, 21
- Cocainism, 215
- Complex, 71
 - dormant, 74
 - submerged, 284
 - determination of, 284
- Compulsion, 64
 - neurosis, 248
- Concepts, classification of, 56
 - imperative, 60
- Conduct, definition of, 5
- Confabulation, opportune, 207
 - suggestion, 208
- Confusion, 173
 - acute hallucinatory, 193
 - definition of, 189
 - primary, 193

- Confusion, secondary, 194
 in mania, 107
 senile, 183
 Consciousness, clouding of, 51
 double, 71
 threshold of, 51
 wave of, 52
 Constitutional inferiority, 250
 Conversion, 73, 239
 Cranks, 249
 Cretinism, 231
 Criminal, 250
 Cyclothymia, 111

 Decortication, 133
 Degenerates, insanity of, 87
 Degeneration, stigmata of, 97
 Delirium, abstinence, 199
 collapse, 192
 definition of, 189
 febrile, 191
 of interpretation, 89
 of negation, 70
 occupation, 201
 of revindication, 90
 senile, 184
 sine delirio, 201
 tremens, 198
 febrile, 201
 Delusional control, 173
 Delusions, 53
 changeable, 54
 endogenous, 55
 exogenous, 55
 of explanation, 80
 fixed, 54
 of grandeur, 175
 hypochondriacal, 175
 nihilistic, 175
 of persecution, 80
 of possession, 175
 of poverty, 175
 retrospective explanatory, 82
 of sin, 172
 systematized, 55
 unsystematized, 54

 Dementia, alcoholic, 202
 Dementia precox, 140
 general characteristics, 140
 etiology, 140
 general symptomatology, 142
 mental, 142
 physical, 148
 modes of onset, 148
 varieties, 149
 heboidophrenia, 149
 hebephrenia, 151
 catatonia, 155
 paranoid, 160
 mixed states, 162
 course, 162
 progress, 162
 diagnosis, 163
 pathology, 166
 nature of, 166
 treatment, 168
 prophylaxis, 169
 Depersonalization, 70
 Depression, 67
 apprehensive, 172
 psychogenic, 250
 Deterioration, senile, 182
 Diabetes, 231
 Dipsomania, 210
 Disorientation, 53
 Displacement, 73, 248
 Distractibility, 62
 in mania, 105
 Dotard, 181
 Dreams, 73
 Dream states, 52
 alcoholic, 209
 epileptic, 220
 hysterical, 239
 Drunkenness, 197
 pathological, 198

 Echolalia, 66, 156
 Echopraxia, 66, 156
 Emotion, definition of, 5
 disorders of, 67

- Emotional depression in paranoia,
 77, 79
 deterioration, 67
 in dementia precox, 145
 exaltation in mania, 106
- Epilepsy, 219
 alcoholic, 203
 arterio-sclerotic, 221
 diagnosis, 221
 early, 219
 late, 219
 nocturnal, 222
 pathology, 222
 psychic, 220
 sexual characteristics in, 221
 toxic, 221
 traumatic, 221
 syphilitic, 221
- Epileptic automatism, 220
 character, 220
 dementia, 221
 dream states, 220
 equivalent, 220
 furor, 220
 ill-humor, 221
 sexuality, 221
 voice, 222
- Epileptiform seizures in paresis, 123
- Epochal psychoses, 188
- Ethical questions, 288
- Exaltation, 67
- Examination, mental, 269, 294
 neurological, 265, 293
 physical, 265, 293
 special, 271
 standard minimum, 290
 of stuporous cases, 288
- Exhaustion psychoses, 192
- Exhibitionism, 251
- Exophthalmic goitre, 231
- Falsification, retrospective, 82
 of memory, 82, 207
- Febrile psychoses, 190
- Feeble-mindedness, 252
- Feeling of unreality, 70, 175
- Feelings, 5
- Fetichism, 251
- Flexibilitas cerea, 66, 156
- Flight of ideas, 61
 sensory, 201
- Food, refusal of, 32
- Furor, epileptic, 220
- Ganser's symptom, 71
- Goal idea, 61
- Grimaces, 156
- Hallucination, 43
 apperception, 44
 auditory, 46
 in paranoia, 80
 in depression, 109
 haptic, 47
 hypnagogic, 45
 in mania, 106
 motor, 48
 organic, 48
 pseudo, 44
 psychic, 44
 reflex, 48
 of smell, 47
 of taste, 47
 visual, 47
- Heart disease, 233
- Heredity, 20
 dissimilar, 24
 similar, 24
- History of family, 259, 291
 of illness, 262, 292
 of patient, 260, 292
- Homosexuality, 250, 251
- Hydrotherapy, 30
- Hyoscyamus, 34
- Hypermnnesia, 68
- Hyperprosexia, 69
- Hypochondriacal ideas in depres-
 sion, 108
 in paranoia, 79
 in paresis, 126
- Hysteria, 237
 degenerative, 242

- Hysterical insanity, 242
- Ideas, autochthonous, 60
 definition of, 4
 fixed, 58
 flight of, 61
 goal, 61
 of grandeur, 175
 hyperquantivalent, 57
 imperative, 60
 of insignificance, 175
 of reference, 79
 retrospective, 82
 leveling of, in mania, 105
 poverty of, 153
 of self-importance in paranoia, 81
 of unworthiness, 175
- Idiocy and imbecility, 252
 causes, 253
 general considerations, 253
 course, 256
 prognosis, 256
 treatment, 257
- Idiocy, 253
 amaurotic family, 254
 epileptic, 255
 hydrocephalic, 254
 inflammatory, 255
 microcephalic, 254
 paralytic, 255
 sclerotic, 255
 sensorial, 255
 thyroigenous, 254
 traumatic, 255
- Idio-imbecility, 253
- Idiots-savants, 256
- Idiots, apathetic, 254
 excitable, 254
 rhythmic, 254
- Illusion, 43
- Imbecility, 252, 253
 moral, 250, 252
- Impulsion, 64
- Infantilism, 256
- Infection-exhaustion psychoses, 189
- Infection-exhaustion psychoses, di-
 agnosis, 193
 treatment, 194
- Insanity of degenerates, 87
- Insomnia, treatment of, 34
- Intellect, 2
- Involution melancholia, 171
 general considerations, 171
 general characterization, 171
 etiology, 171
 symptomatology, 172
 melancholia vera, 174
 anxietas præsenilis, 174
 depressio apathetica, 174
 course, 175
 prognosis, 175
 termination, 175
 pathology, 177
 treatment, 177
 differential diagnosis 178
- Judgment, definition of, 4
- Korsakow's psychosis, 206
 syndrome in paresis, 126
 in senility, 182, 185
- Lactational psychoses, 188
- Liar, pathological, 249
- Mania, acute delirious, 107
- Mania, chronic, 107
- Manias, 64, 247
- Manic-depressive psychoses, 98
 etiology, 98
 general symptomatology, 99
 hypomania, 102
 acute mania, 105
 delirious mania, 106
 simple retardation, 107
 acute melancholia, 108
 depressive stupor, 109
 maniacal stupor, 112
 agitated depression, 112
 unproductive mania, 112
 depressive mania, 112

- Manic-depressive psychoses, general
 depression with flight
 of ideas, 112
 akinetie mania, 112
 course, 113
 prognosis, 113
 differential diagnosis, 114
 pathology, 114
 treatment, 114
 prophylaxis, 115
- Mannerisms, 158
- Masochism, 251
- Masturbation, 251
- Melancholia, agitated, 173
 involution, 171
- Memory, definition of, 5
 in dementia precox, 147
 disorders of, 68
 falsification of, 68
 tests of, 281
- Mental disorder, causes of, 20
 classification of, 15, 18
 as type of reaction, 10
- Mood, definition of, 6
- Moron, 253
- Motorium, 2
- Multiple sclerosis, 232
- Muscular tension, 155
- Mutism, 155
- Myxedema, 231
- Narcissism, 251
- Necrophilia, 251
- Negativism, 66
 in dementia precox, 155
- Neurasthenia, 235
- Nihilistic delusions, 175
 ideas, 175
- Observation, general, 264
- Obsessions, 59
 emotional, 246
 volitional, 247
 intellectual, 247
 aboulie, 247
- Opiumism, 212
- Paralexia, 201
- Paraldehyde, 34
- Paralysis agitans, 232
 of thought, 64
- Paralytic dementia, 122
 psychosis, 122
- Paramnesia, 68
- Paranoia, 75
 general characteristics, 75
 of Magnan, 79
 of Krafft-Ebing, 84
 of Kraepelin, 88
 of Freud, 95
 varieties:
 hallucinatoria, 84
 combinatoria, 84
 early or original, 84
 late or acquired, 84
 querulous or litigious, 85
 persecutory, 85
 expansive, 85
 inventive, 85
 reformatory, 85
 religious, 85
 erotic, 85
 secondary, 95
 acute, 94
 course, 96
 prognosis, 96
 differential diagnosis, 96
 pathology, 97
 treatment, 97
- Paranoid states, 94
- Paraphasia, 201
- Paresis, 116
 etiology, 116
 general characterization, 116
 general considerations, 117
 forms:
 tabetic, 123
 Lissauer's type, 123
 galloping, 125
 demented, 125
 excited, 125
 agitated, 125
 depressed, 126

- Paresis forms: juvenile, 132
 gross pathology, 133
 histopathology, 133
 diagnosis, 135
 course, 138
 prognosis, 138
 treatment, 138
 Paretic seizures, 123
 Passion, definition of, 5
 Pellagra, 232
 Perception, 2
 definition of, 4
 disorders of, 43
 Perseveration, 65, 158
 Personality, in depression, 108
 disorders of, 69
 multiple, 70
 transformation of, 70, 82
 Phobias, 59, 246
 Phonemes, 46
 Photomata, 47
 Pithiatism, 238
 Plasma cells, 133
 Polyneuritis, 232
 Post-febrile psychoses, 191
 Pre-febrile psychoses, 190
 Presbyophrenia, 182, 185
 Pre-senile dementia, 181
 Pressure of activity, 106
 Prophylaxis, 41
 Pseudologia phantastica, 249
 Pseudo-paranoia, alcoholic, 206
 Pseudo-paresis, alcoholic, 203
 Pseudo-reminiscences, 208
 Pseudo-stupor, 67
 Psychasthenia, 244
 Psyche, splitting of, 144
 fragmentation of, 168
 Psychoanalysis, 35
 Psychomotor activity, 64
 decreased, 64
 increased, 64
 Psychoneuroses, 235
 Psychopathic constitution, 249
 Psychoses, circumscribed, 94
 periodical, 109
 Psychoses, prison, 96, 250
 Psychotherapy, 35
 Puerperal psychoses, 188
 mania, 188
 Reasoning, 4
 Reflex, light, 119
 consensual, 120
 sympathetic, 120
 Retardation, 63
 Retrospective delusions, 82
 falsification of memory, 82
 Sadism, 251
 Schizophrenia, 140
 Schnauzkrampf, 156
 Seizures, paretic, 123
 Senile confusion, 183
 delirium, 184
 deterioration, 182
 paranoid states, 183
 Senile psychoses, 179
 causes, 179
 symptomatology, 179
 course, 184
 prognosis, 184
 diagnosis, 184
 involution, 180
 pathology, 186
 treatment, 187
 Senium precox, 179
 Sensation, definition of, 2
 Sensorium, 2
 Sentiments, definition of, 5
 Sexual inversion, 250
 perversion, 251
 Somato psychoses, 56
 Speech, tests of, 274
 Stäbchenzellen, 134
 Stereotypy, 65, 158
 Stupor, 67
 catatonic, 155
 depressive, 109
 Suggestibility, 66, 156
 Sulfonal, 34
 Swindler, 249

- Symbolism, 73
Syphilis, 223
Temperament, definition of, 6
Thinking, 2
 definition of, 4
 difficulty of, 63
 tests of, 286
Thought, content of, 145
 deprivation, 147
 dilapidation of, 146
 looseness of train of, 152
 paralysis of, 64
Thyroigenous psychoses, 231
Toxic psychoses, 195
Traumatism, 227
Treatment, 30
Trional, 34
Tumor, 223
Uremia, 230
Verbigeration, 65, 157
Veronal, 34
Volition, 2
 definition of, 5
 disorders of, 64
Wahnsinn, 94
Wet-brain, 211
Witselsucht, 223
Word salad, 146, 154

